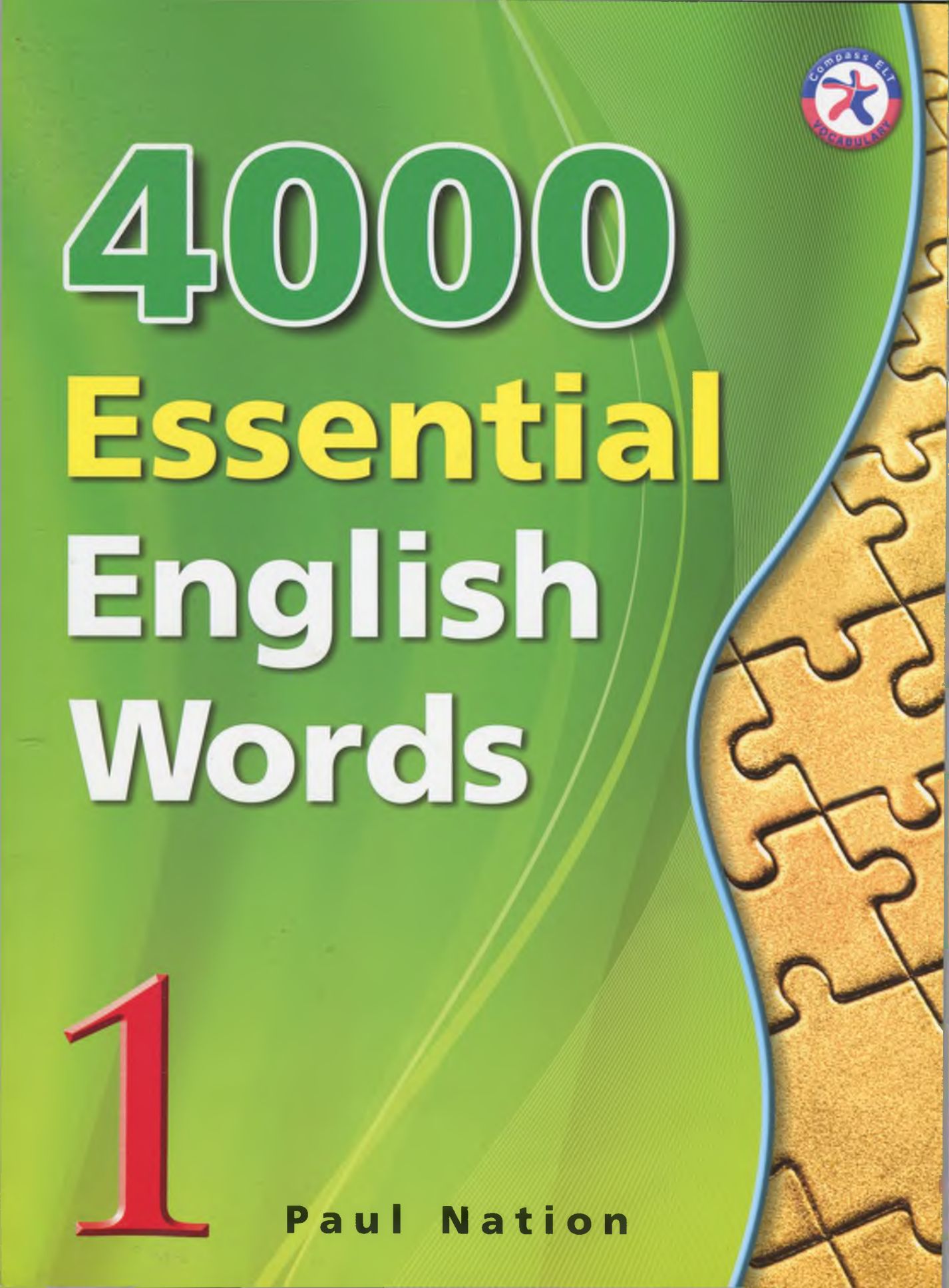


4000 Essential English Words

1

Paul Nation

4000 Essential English Words 1

Paul Nation

© 2009 Compass Publishing

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without prior permission in writing from the publisher.

Acquisitions Editor: Fidel Cruz
Project Coordinator: Annie Cho
Design: Design Plus

email: info@compasspub.com
http://www.compasspub.com

ISBN: 978-1-59966-402-6

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
12 11 10 09

Photo Credits
All images © Shutterstock, Inc.

4000 Essential English Words 1

4000 Essential English Words 1

Paul Nation

© 2009 Compass Publishing

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without prior permission in writing from the publisher.

Acquisitions Editor: Fidel Cruz
Project Coordinator: Annie Cho
Design: Design Plus

email: info@compasspub.com
http://www.compasspub.com

ISBN: 978-1-59966-402-6

10
12

Photo Credits

All images © Shutterstock, Inc.

Compass Publishing

4000 Essential English Words

1

Paul Nation

Table of Contents

Introduction		6
Unit	**Target Words**	**Page**
1	afraid, agree, angry, arrive, attack, bottom, clever, cruel, finally, hide, hunt, lot, middle, moment, pleased, promise, reply, safe, trick, well	8
2	adventure, approach, carefully, chemical, create, evil, experiment, kill, laboratory, laugh, loud, nervous, noise, project, scare, secret, shout, smell, terrible, worse	14
3	alien, among, chart, cloud, comprehend, describe, ever, fail, friendly, grade, instead, library, planet, report, several, solve, suddenly, suppose, universe, view	20
4	appropriate, avoid, behave, calm, concern, content, expect, frequently, habit, instruct, issue, none, patient, positive, punish, represent, shake, spread, stroll, village	26
5	aware, badly, belong, continue, error, experience, field, hurt, judgment, likely, normal, rare, relax, request, reside, result, roll, since, visible, wild	32
6	advantage, cause, choice, community, dead, distance, escape, face, follow, fright, ghost, individual, pet, reach, return, survive, upset, voice, weather, wise	38
7	allow, announce, beside, challenge, claim, condition, contribute, difference, divide, expert, famous, force, harm, lay, peace, prince, protect, sense, sudden, therefore	44
8	accept, arrange, attend, balance, contrast, encourage, familiar, grab, hang, huge, necessary, pattern, propose, purpose, release, require, single, success, tear, theory	50
9	against, beach, damage, discover, emotion, fix, frank, identify, island, ocean, perhaps, pleasant, prevent, rock, save, step, still, taste, throw, wave	56
10	benefit, certain, chance, effect, essential, far, focus, function, grass, guard, image, immediate, primary, proud, remain, rest, separate, site, tail, trouble	62
11	anymore, asleep, berry, collect, compete, conversation, creature, decision, either, forest, ground, introduce, marry, prepare, sail, serious, spend, strange, truth, wake	68
12	alone, apartment, article, artist, attitude, compare, judge, magazine, material, meal, method, neighbor, professional, profit, quality, shape, space, stair, symbol, thin	74
13	blood, burn, cell, contain, correct, crop, demand, equal, feed, hole, increase, lord, owe, position, raise, responsible, sight, spot, structure, whole	80
14	coach, control, description, direct, exam, example, limit, local, magical, mail, novel, outline, poet, print, scene, sheet, silly, store, suffer, technology	86
15	across, breathe, characteristic, consume, excite, extreme, fear, fortunate, happen, length, mistake, observe, opportunity, prize, race, realize, respond, risk, wonder, yet	92

Unit	Target Words	Page
16	academy, ancient, board, century, clue, concert, county, dictionary, exist, flat, gentleman, hidden, maybe, officer, original, pound, process, publish, theater, wealth	98
17	appreciate, available, beat, bright, celebrate, determine, disappear, else, fair, flow, forward, hill, level, lone, puddle, response, season, solution, waste, whether	104
18	argue, communicate, crowd, depend, dish, empty, exact, fresh, gather, indicate, item, offer, price, product, property, purchase, recommend, select, tool, treat	110
19	alive, bone, bother, captain, conclusion, doubt, explore, foreign, glad, however, injustice, international, lawyer, mention, policy, social, speech, staff, toward, wood	116
20	achieve, advise, already, basic, bit, consider, destroy, entertain, extra, goal, lie, meat, opinion, real, reflect, regard, serve, vegetable, war, worth	122
21	appear, base, brain, career, clerk, effort, enter, excellent, hero, hurry, inform, later, leave, locate, nurse, operation, pain, refuse, though, various	128
22	actual, amaze, charge, comfort, contact, customer, deliver, earn, gate, include, manage, mystery, occur, opposite, plate, receive, reward, set, steal, thief	134
23	advance, athlete, average, behavior, behind, course, lower, match, member, mental, passenger, personality, poem, pole, remove, safety, shoot, sound, swim, web	140
24	block, cheer, complex, critic, event, exercise, fit, friendship, guide, lack, passage, perform, pressure, probable, public, strike, support, task, term, unite	146
25	associate, environment, factory, feature, instance, involve, medicine, mix, organize, period, populate, produce, range, recognize, regular, sign, tip, tradition, trash, wide	152
26	advice, along, attention, attract, climb, drop, final, further, imply, maintain, neither, otherwise, physical, prove, react, ride, situated, society, standard, suggest	158
27	actually, bite, coast, deal, desert, earthquake, effective, examine, false, gift, hunger, imagine, journey, puzzle, quite, rather, specific, tour, trip, value	164
28	band, barely, boring, cancel, driveway, garbage, instrument, list, magic, message, notice, own, predict, professor, rush, schedule, share, stage, storm, within	170
29	advertise, assign, audience, breakfast, competition, cool, gain, importance, knowledge, major, mean, prefer, president, progress, respect, rich, skill, somehow, strength, vote	176
30	above, ahead, amount, belief, center, common, cost, demonstrate, different, evidence, honesty, idiom, independent, inside, master, memory, proper, scan, section, surface	182

Appendix 188 Index 192

Introduction

About the Vocabulary

The 600 words in each book of this series along with the additional target words presented in the appendices included in the first three books of the series are the most useful words in English. They were found by analysis of a collection of English course books from various levels in the primary, secondary and tertiary school systems. The words included in this series were chosen because they occurred many times in different levels of these materials. Because of the way that they were chosen, these words have the following characteristics:

1 They are useful in both spoken and written English. No matter what English course you are studying, the words in these books will be of value to you.

2 Each word in these books is a high-frequency word. This means that the effort in learning the words is well repaid by the number of times learners have a chance to encounter or use them.

3 These books as a whole cover a large proportion of the words in any spoken or written text. They cover at least 80% of the words in newspapers and academic texts, and at least 90% of the words in novels. They also cover at least 90% of the words in conversation.

About the Books

The activities in these books are specially designed to make use of important learning conditions. Firstly, the words are introduced using sentence definitions and an example sentence. The activities that follow in the units encourage learners to recall the meanings and forms of the words. Some activities also make the learners think about the meaning of the words in the context of a sentence—a sentence different from the sentences that occurred in the introduction of the words. Moreover, each unit ends with a story containing the target words. While reading the story, the learners have to recall the meanings of the words and suit them to the context of the story. Such activities help learners develop a better understanding of a common meaning for a given word which fits the different uses.

Illustrations for each target word are provided to help learners visualize the word as it is being used in the example sentence. These word/image associations aim to help students grasp the meaning of the word as well as recall the word later.

It should be noted that words have more than one grammatical category. However, this series focuses on the word's most common form. This is mentioned to remind learners that just because a word is labeled and utilized as a noun in this series does not mean that it can never be used in another form such as an adjective. This series has simply focused on the word in the form that it is most likely to be expressed.

Supporting Learning with Outside Activities

A well-balanced language course provides four major opportunities for learning: learning through input, learning through output, deliberate learning, and fluency development. The highly structured activities in these books support all four types of learning opportunities. In addition, learning can further be supported through the following activities:

1 Have students create vocabulary cards with one word from the unit on one side of the card and the translation of the word in the student's first language on the other side. Students should use the cards for study in free moments during the day. Over several weeks, students will find that quick repeated studying for brief periods of time is more effective than studying for hours at one sitting.

2 Assign graded readers at students' appropriate levels. Reading such books provides both enjoyment as well as meaning-focused input which will help the words stick in students' memory.

3 Practice reading fluency to promote faster recall of word meaning for both sight recognition and usage. Compass Publishing's *Reading for Speed and Fluency* is a good resource for reading fluency material.

4 Include listening, speaking, and writing activities in classes. Reinforcement of the high-frequency vocabulary presented in this series is important across all the four language skills.

Author **Paul Nation**

Paul Nation is professor of Applied Linguistics in the School of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies at Victoria University of Wellington, New Zealand. He has taught in Indonesia, Thailand, the United States, Finland, and Japan. His specialist interests are language teaching methodology and vocabulary learning.



UNIT 1

Word List



afraid [əfréid] *adj.*

When someone is **afraid,** they feel fear.

→ *The woman was **afraid** of what she saw.*



agree [əgrí:] *v.*

To **agree** is to say "yes" or to think the same way.

→ *A: The food is very good in that restaurant. B: I **agree** with you.*



angry [æŋgri] *adj.*

When someone is **angry,** they may want to speak loudly or fight.

→ *She didn't do her homework, so her father is **angry**.*



arrive [əráiv] *v.*

To **arrive** is to get to or reach some place.

→ *The bus always **arrives** at the corner of my street at 4:00.*



attack [ətǽk] *v.*

To **attack** is to try to fight or to hurt.

→ *The man with the sword **attacked** the other man first.*



bottom [bɑ́təm] *n.*

The **bottom** is the lowest part.

→ *The **bottom** of my shoe has a hole in it.*



clever [klévər] *adj.*

When someone is **clever,** they can solve a hard puzzle or problem.

→ *The **clever** boy thought of a good idea.*



cruel [krú:əl] *adj.*

When someone is **cruel,** they do bad things to hurt others.

→ *The **cruel** man yelled at his sister.*



finally [fáinəli] *adv.*

If something happens **finally,** it happens after a long time or at the end.

→ *He **finally** crossed the finish line after five hours of running.*



hide [haid] *v.*

To **hide** is to try not to let others see you.

→ *The other children will **hide** while you count to 100.*



hunt [hʌnt] *v.*

To **hunt** is to look for or search for an animal to kill.

→ *Long ago, people **hunted** with bows and arrows.*



lot [lɑt] *n.*

A **lot** means a large number or amount of people, animals, things, etc.

→ *There are a **lot** of apples in the basket.*



middle [mídl] *n.*

The **middle** of something is the center or halfway point.

→ *The Canadian flag has a maple leaf in the **middle** of it.*



moment [móumənt] *n.*

A **moment** is a second or a very short time.

→ *I was only a few **moments** late for the meeting.*



pleased [pli:zd] *adj.*

When someone is **pleased**, they are happy.

→ *She was **pleased** with the phone call she received.*



promise [prámis] *v.*

To **promise** is to say you will do something for sure.

→ *He **promised** to return my key by tomorrow.*



reply [riplái] *v.*

To **reply** is to give an answer or say back to someone.

→ *She asked him what time his meeting was. He **replied**, "at three."*



safe [seif] *adj.*

When a person is **safe**, they are not in danger.

→ *Put on your seat belt in the car to be **safe**.*



trick [trik] *n.*

A **trick** is something you do to fool another person.

→ *His card **trick** really surprised us.*



well [wel] *adv.*

You use **well** to say that something was done in a good way.

→ *The couple can dance quite **well**.*

UNIT 2

Word List



adventure [ədvéntʃər] *n.*

An **adventure** is a fun or exciting thing that you do.

→ *Riding in the rough water was an **adventure**.*



approach [əpróutʃ] *v.*

To **approach** something means to move close to it.

→ *The boy **approached** his school.*



carefully [kɛ́ərfəli] *adv.*

Carefully means with great attention, especially to detail or safety.

→ *The baby **carefully** climbed down the stairs.*



chemical [kémikəl] *n.*

A **chemical** is something that scientists use in chemistry.

→ *The scientist mixed the **chemicals**.*



create [kriéit] *v.*

To **create** means to make something new.

→ *She **created** an igloo from blocks of snow.*



evil [í:vəl] *adj.*

Evil describes something or someone bad or cruel, not good.

→ *The **evil** figure scared us all.*



experiment [ikspérəmənt] *n.*

An **experiment** is a test that you do to see what will happen.

→ *The student did an **experiment** in science class.*



kill [kil] *v.*

To **kill** someone or something is to make them die.

→ *I **killed** the fly with a fly swatter.*



laboratory [lǽbərətɔ̀:ri] *n.*

A **laboratory** is a room where a scientist works.

→ *My mother works in a **laboratory**.*



laugh [læf] *n.*

Laugh is the sound made when someone is happy or a funny thing occurs

→ *The sound of their **laugh** filled the room.*



loud [laud] *adj.*

If a sound is **loud**, it is strong and very easy to hear.

→ *The man's voice was so **loud** that we all could hear him.*



nervous [nə́:rvəs] *adj.*

When a person is **nervous**, they think something bad will happen.

→ *The boy became **nervous** when he heard the news.*



noise [nɔiz] *n.*

A **noise** is an unpleasant sound.

→ *The crying baby made a loud **noise**.*



project [prədʒékt] *n.*

A **project** is a type of work that you do for school or a job.

→ *His afternoon work **project** was to paint the room green.*



scare [skɛə:r] *v.*

To **scare** someone is to make them feel afraid.

→ *My uncle was **scared** by what he saw in the room.*



secret [si:krit] *n.*

A **secret** is something that you do not tell other people.

→ *The two boys were sharing a **secret**.*



shout [ʃaut] *v.*

To **shout** is to say something loudly.

→ *My boss **shouted** at me because I was late for work.*



smell [smel] *v.*

To **smell** something means to use your nose to sense it.

→ *The two friends **smelled** the flower.*



terrible [térəbəl] *adj.*

If something is **terrible**, it is very bad.

→ *The way he treated his classmate was **terrible**.*



worse [wə:rs] *adj.*

If something is **worse**, it is of poorer quality than another thing.

→ *Business was **worse** this month than last month.*

UNIT 3

Word List



alien [éiljən] *n.*

An **alien** is a creature from a different world.

→ *The **alien** came in peace.*



among [əmʌ́ŋ] *prep.*

If you are **among** certain things, they are all around you.

→ *There was a red apple **among** the green ones.*



chart [tʃɑ:rt] *n.*

A **chart** is a list of information.

→ *We used a **chart** to see how we had improved.*



cloud [klaud] *n.*

A **cloud** is a group of water drops in the sky.

→ *The sky was filled with white **clouds**.*



comprehend [kɑ̀mprihénd] *v.*

To **comprehend** something is to understand it.

→ *Henry could not **comprehend** the message.*



describe [diskráib] *v.*

To **describe** is to say or write what someone or something is like.

→ *They **described** their tree as colorful with gold ribbon and a star.*



ever [évər] *adv.*

Ever means at any time.

→ *Going skiing last winter was the most fun I've **ever** had.*



fail [feil] *v.*

To **fail** means you do not succeed in what you try to do.

→ *Since he **failed** to get the job, he was sad.*



friendly [frɛ́ndli] *adj.*

Friendly is behaving in a pleasant, kind way toward someone.

→ *The **friendly** animals came up to the girl.*



grade [greid] *n.*

A **grade** is a score or mark given to someone's work.

→ *I managed to get good **grades** on my report card.*



instead [instéd] *adv.*

Instead means in place of.

→ *He ate the carrot **instead** of the ice cream.*



library [láibrèri] *n.*

A **library** is a place where you go to read books.

→ *The **library** at school is full of books.*



planet [plænət] *n.*

A **planet** is a large round thing in space.

→ *Saturn is the **planet** with the ring around it.*



report [ripɔ́:rt] *n.*

A **report** is something students write for school.

→ *Karen had trouble writing her **report**.*



several [sévərəl] *adj.*

Several is more than two but not many.

→ *He had to read **several** books for class.*



solve [salv] *v.*

To **solve** something is to find an answer to it.

→ *All the students could easily **solve** the math problem.*



suddenly [sʌ́dnli] *adv.*

If something happens **suddenly**, it happens quickly and unexpectedly.

→ *I was **suddenly** surprised by the cake my friends brought me.*



suppose [səpóuz] *v.*

To **suppose** is to guess.

→ *I **suppose** I should go home now.*



universe [jú:nəvə̀:rs] *n.*

The **universe** is the known or supposed objects in space.

→ *The **universe** is so large that it cannot be measured.*



view [vju:] *v.*

To **view** is to look at something.

→ *Michael likes to **view** himself in the mirror.*

UNIT 4

Word List



appropriate [əpróuprièit] *adj.*

When a thing is **appropriate**, it is right or normal.

→ *It's **appropriate** to wear a suit when you go to the office.*



avoid [əvɔ́id] *v.*

To **avoid** something is to stay away from it.

→ ***Avoid** the broken bottle on the floor.*



behave [bihéiv] *v.*

To **behave** is to act in a particular way, especially to be good.

→ *She always **behaves** well when her father is around.*



calm [kɑ:m] *adj.*

When someone is **calm**, they do not get excited or upset.

→ *A nice warm bath makes me feel so **calm**.*



concern [kənsə́:rn] *n.*

Concern is a feeling of worry.

→ *I was filled with **concern** after reading the newspaper.*



content [kəntént] *adj.*

To be **content** is to be happy and not want more.

→ *The baby looked very **content** sitting on the floor.*



expect [ikspékt] *v.*

If you **expect** something to happen, you believe it will happen.

→ *I **expect** the bus to be here very soon.*



frequently [frí:kwəntli] *adv.*

When something happens **frequently**, it happens often.

→ *We meet **frequently**, either at the beginning or ending of the week.*



habit [hæbit] *n.*

A **habit** is a thing that you do often.

→ *Smoking is a bad **habit** that can kill you.*



instruct [instrʌ́kt] *v.*

To **instruct** is to teach.

→ *My teacher **instructs** us in several subjects.*



issue [íʃu:] *n.*

An **issue** is an important topic.

→ *The men spoke about **issues** that were important to the people.*



none [nʌn] *pron.*

None means not any of someone or something.

→ *He spent all his money. There is **none** left.*



patient [péiʃənt] *adj.*

If a person is **patient**, they don't become angry or upset easily.

→ *I had to be **patient** and wait until 5 o'clock to leave.*



positive [pάzətiv] *adj.*

If something is **positive**, it is good.

→ *She has a **positive** future ahead of her after finishing college.*



punish [pʌ́niʃ] *v.*

To **punish** means to make someone suffer for breaking the rules or laws.

→ *To **punish** me, my teacher had me stand in the corner.*



represent [rèprizént] *v.*

To **represent** is to speak or act for a person or group.

→ *My lawyer will **represent** me in court.*



shake [ʃeik] *v.*

To **shake** is to move back and forth or up and down quickly.

→ *When people **shake** hands, it usually means they agree.*



spread [spred] *v.*

To **spread** is to move quickly to more places.

→ *I like to **spread** butter on my toast.*



stroll [stroul] *v.*

To **stroll** means to walk slowly and calmly.

→ *My dog and I **strolled** through the park today.*



village [vílidʒ] *n.*

A **village** is a very small town.

→ *There are only a few houses in my **village**.*

UNIT 5

Word List



aware [əwɛ̀ər] *adj.*

If you are **aware** of something, you know about it.

→ *I was not **aware** of the ringing phone.*



badly [bædli] *adv.*

Badly means in a severe or harmful way.

→ *He hurt his arm **badly** playing with friends.*



belong [bilɔ́(:)ŋ] *v.*

If something **belongs** to you, you own it.

→ *The blue suit **belongs** to Paul.*



continue [kəntínju:] *v.*

To **continue** something is to keep doing it.

→ *She stood under her umbrella as the rain **continued** to fall.*



error [érər] *n.*

An **error** is something you do wrong.

→ *I made an **error** on my report, so my boss was angry.*



experience [ikspiəriəns] *n.*

An **experience** is something you have seen or done.

→ *Rock climbing was a fun **experience**.*



field [fi:ld] *n.*

A **field** is a big area of land.

→ *The **field** of flowers looked so pretty.*



hurt [hə:rt] *v.*

To **hurt** is to do something that makes you feel pain.

→ *She **hurt** her leg falling down the stairs.*



judgment [dʒʌ́dʒmənt] *n.*

Judgment is the ability to form opinions or decisions.

→ *It's good **judgment** to recycle your aluminum cans.*



likely [láikli] *adv.*

If something **likely** happens, it will probably happen.

→ *I will **likely** stay at home and watch TV tonight.*



normal [nɔ́:rməl] *adj.*

If something is **normal**, it is not strange nor surprising to you.

→ *It is **normal** for me to bathe every night.*



rare [rɛə:r] *adj.*

If something is **rare**, you do not see it very often.

→ *It is **rare** for him to miss his flight.*



relax [rilæks] *v.*

To **relax** is to rest.

→ *The frog **relaxed** in the warm sun.*



request [rikwést] *v.*

To **request** something is to ask for it.

→ *The little girl **requested** a special gift from Santa Claus.*



reside [ri:záid] *v.*

To **reside** means to live somewhere permanently or for a long time.

→ *My brother and his family **reside** in a lovely house on the beach.*



result [rizʌ́lt] *n.*

A **result** is something that happens because of something else.

→ *As a **result** of all the rain, the man had to climb on the roof.*



roll [roul] *v.*

To **roll** is to move by turning over and over.

→ *You must **roll** the ball into the pins when you bowl.*



since [sins] *prep.*

Since is used to talk about a past event still happening now.

→ ***Since** 1992, he has been driving that car.*



visible [vízəbəl] *adj.*

If something is **visible**, it can be seen.

→ *The moon and stars were **visible** in the night sky.*



wild [waild] *adj.*

If something is **wild**, it is found in nature.

→ *You should be careful around a fox, because it is a **wild** animal.*

UNIT 6

Word List



advantage [ədvǽntidʒ] *n.*

An **advantage** is something that helps you.

→ *Being tall is an **advantage** to a basketball player.*



cause [kɔ:z] *v.*

To **cause** is to make something happen.

→ *The cold weather **caused** her to get sick.*



choice [tʃɔis] *n.*

A **choice** is the act or possibility of picking something.

→ *I had my **choice** of five doors to open.*



community [kəmjú:nəti] *n.*

A **community** is a group of people who live together.

→ *The kids from my **community** usually play together.*



dead [ded] *adj.*

To be **dead** is to not be alive.

→ *A **dead** person is usually buried in the ground.*



distance [dístəns] *n.*

The **distance** between two things is how far it is between them.

→ *The **distance** between the Earth and the Moon is 384,400 kilometers.*



escape [iskéip] *v.*

To **escape** is to run away from something bad.

→ *The butterfly could not **escape** from the cage.*



face [feis] *v.*

If you **face** a problem, you deal with it.

→ *My sister and I have to find a better way to **face** our differences.*



follow [fɑ́lou] *v.*

To **follow** means to go behind someone and go where they go.

→ *The little boy **followed** his mother home.*



fright [frait] *n.*

Fright is the feeling of being scared.

→ *She was filled with **fright**.*



ghost [goust] *n.*

A **ghost** is the spirit of a dead person.

→ *Many people are afraid of **ghosts**.*



individual [indəvidʒuəl] *n.*

An **individual** is one person.

→ *Only one **individual** could win the bicycle race.*



pet [pet] *n.*

A **pet** is an animal that lives with people.

→ *Out of all my **pets**, the dog is my favorite.*



reach [ri:tʃ] *v.*

To **reach** means to arrive at a place.

→ *I was happy to finally **reach** my destination.*



return [ritə:rn] *v.*

To **return** is to go back to a place.

→ *I was happy to **return** home to my mom after school.*



survive [sərvaiv] *v.*

To **survive** is to stay alive.

→ *My dog **survived** her fall into the water.*



upset [ʌpsēt] *adj.*

To be **upset** is to be unhappy about something.

→ *She was **upset** because she broke her toy.*



voice [vɔis] *n.*

A **voice** is the sound a person makes when they talk or sing.

→ *He used a microphone, so everyone could hear his **voice**.*



weather [wēðə:r] *n.*

The **weather** is the condition of the air: hot, rainy, windy, etc.

→ *The **weather** can be sunny, rainy, or cold.*



wise [waiz] *adj.*

To be **wise** is to use experience and intelligence to make good choices.

→ *Many people believe that owls are very **wise** animals.*

UNIT 7

Word List



allow [əláu] *v.*

To **allow** something to happen means to let it happen.
→ *Having a ticket will **allow** you to enter the show.*



announce [ənáuns] *v.*

To **announce** something is to make it known.
→ *He **announced** to everyone his new idea for the company.*



beside [bisáid] *prep.*

When someone or something is **beside** you, they are next to you.
→ *The two brothers stood **beside** each other.*



challenge [tʃælindʒ] *n.*

A **challenge** is something difficult to complete.
→ *It was a **challenge** to climb to the top of the mountain.*



claim [kleim] *v.*

To **claim** means to say that something is true.
→ *He **claimed** to know why the country's laws were weak.*



condition [kəndíʃən] *n.*

The **condition** of someone or something is the state that they are in.
→ *The patient's **condition** was very good.*



contribute [kəntríbju:t] *v.*

To **contribute** to something means to do something to make it successf
→ *We decided to **contribute** money to the new hospital.*



difference [difərəns] *n.*

A **difference** is a way that something is not like other things.
→ *The biggest **difference** between the birds is the color of their feathers.*



divide [diváid] *v.*

To **divide** something is to make it into smaller parts.
→ *We **divided** the pizza.*



expert [ékspə:rt] *n.*

An **expert** is someone who is very good at doing something.
→ *The wizard was an **expert** at magic.*



famous [féiməs] *adj.*

If someone or something is **famous,** they are known to many people.

→ *The Eiffel Tower in Paris is very **famous**.*



force [fɔːrs] *n.*

Force is a person's strength or power.

→ *He used all his **force** to try and open the door.*



harm [hɑːrm] *n.*

Harm is hurt or problems caused to someone or something.

→ *A hot iron can cause great **harm** if you are not careful.*



lay [lei] *v.*

To **lay** means to put or place in a horizontal or flat position.

→ *Don't **lay** your socks on the floor.*



peace [piːs] *n.*

Peace is a time without war.

→ *A white dove is a symbol for **peace**.*



prince [prins] *n.*

A **prince** is the son of a king.

→ *The **prince** and the princess were married.*



protect [prətékt] *v.*

To **protect** someone is to stop them from getting hurt.

→ *Firemen **protect** us from fires.*



sense [sens] *v.*

To **sense** something is to know about it without being told.

→ *I could **sense** that he was watching me.*



sudden [sʌ́dn] *adj.*

When something is **sudden,** it happens very quickly.

→ *He felt a **sudden** pain in his chest.*



therefore [ðɛ́ərfɔːr] *adv.*

Therefore means for this reason.

→ *He is fat. **Therefore,** he will go on a diet.*

UNIT 8

Word List



accept [æksépt] *v.*

To **accept** something that is offered is to take it.

→ *I **accepted** the girl's very nice gift.*



arrange [əréindʒ] *v.*

To **arrange** things is to put them in the right place.

→ *Please **arrange** the bowling pins in order so we can play.*



attend [ətend] *v.*

To **attend** something is to go to it.

→ *My sister and I **attend** the same school.*



balance [bæləns] *v.*

To **balance** something is to keep it from falling.

→ *We saw an elephant **balance** itself on a ball.*



contrast [kɑ́ntræst] *n.*

A **contrast** is the sharp difference between two things.

→ *The **contrast** between my parents is very noticeable.*



encourage [inkə́:ridʒ] *v.*

To **encourage** someone is to make them want to do something.

→ *My football coach will **encourage** us when we are losing.*



familiar [fəmíljər] *adj.*

If someone or something is **familiar** to you, you know them well.

→ *The two friends were very **familiar** with each other.*



grab [græb] *v.*

To **grab** is to take a hold of someone or something suddenly.

→ *I **grabbed** a pear from the tree.*



hang [hæŋ] *v.*

To **hang** something is to keep it above the ground.

→ *I drew a picture of my family, and my mother **hung** it on the wall.*



huge [hju:dʒ] *adj.*

If something is **huge**, it is very big.

→ *At work, my father drives a **huge** truck.*



necessary [nèsəsèri] *adj.*

If something is **necessary**, you must do it.

→ *It is **necessary** to have a passport when you travel to a foreign country.*



pattern [pætərn] *n.*

A **pattern** is a way in which something is done or organized.

→ *My **pattern** of brushing my teeth is the same as most people's.*



propose [prəpóuz] *v.*

To **propose** something is to say that it should be done.

→ *Santa Claus **proposed** that I try to be a good boy all year.*



purpose [pə́:rpəs] *n.*

A **purpose** is the reason that you do something.

→ *The **purpose** of exercising is to get into shape.*



release [rilí:s] *v.*

To **release** something is to stop holding it.

→ *She **released** the bird from her hands.*



require [rikwáiə:r] *v.*

To **require** something is to say that it is necessary.

→ *We **require** teachers to have a university degree.*



single [síŋgəl] *adj.*

If something is **single**, then there is only one.

→ *I have a **single** key in my hand.*



success [səksés] *n.*

Success is doing something well that you choose to do.

→ *My daughter was a big **success** at school.*



tear [teər] *v.*

To **tear** something means to pull it apart.

→ *It is easy to **tear** paper.*



theory [əí:əri] *n.*

A **theory** is an idea about how something works.

→ *We talked about Einstein's **theory** of relativity in class.*

UNIT 9

Word List



against [əgénst] *prep.*

To be **against** something is to be touching it or opposed to it.

→ *They both leaned **against** the wall.*



beach [biːtʃ] *n.*

The **beach** is a sandy or rocky place by the ocean.

→ *The little girl built a sandcastle on the **beach**.*



damage [dǽmidʒ] *v.*

To **damage** something is to break it.

→ *The car was **damaged** in the accident.*



discover [diskʌ́vər] *v.*

To **discover** something is to find it for the first time.

→ *I **discovered** some new information in this book!*



emotion [imóuʃən] *n.*

An **emotion** is how you feel.

→ *Anger is a common **emotion** that we all feel.*



fix [fiks] *v.*

To **fix** something is to make it work.

→ *My dad has many tools to help him **fix** broken things.*



frank [fræŋk] *adj.*

If you are **frank**, you are being very honest.

→ *The teacher had a **frank** discussion with her students.*



identify [aidéntəfài] *v.*

To **identify** something is to be able to name it.

→ *I used the file to **identify** his name.*



island [áilənd] *n.*

An **island** is land in the middle of water.

→ *Japan is a group of **islands**.*



ocean [óuʃən] *n.*

The **ocean** is all of the salt water that surrounds land.

→ *The **ocean** can make powerful waves.*



perhaps [pərhæps] *adv.*

Perhaps is used when you say that something could happen.

→ ***Perhaps*** *I will eat an apple for lunch.*



pleasant [plĕznt] *adj.*

If something is **pleasant**, you enjoy it.

→ *The character had a* ***pleasant*** *look on its face.*



prevent [privĕnt] *v.*

To **prevent** something is to stop it from happening.

→ *The handcuffs* ***prevented*** *me from moving my hands.*



rock [rak] *n.*

A **rock** is a hard thing in the dirt.

→ *I stacked* ***rocks*** *on top of one another.*



save [seiv] *v.*

To **save** something is to keep it from being hurt.

→ *I want to help* ***save*** *the world.*



step [step] *v.*

To **step** is to walk.

→ *Be careful where you* ***step****.*



still [stil] *adv.*

Still is used when you say that a situation keeps going on.

→ *They are* ***still*** *waiting in line to get tickets.*



taste [teist] *n.*

A **taste** is the flavor something makes in your mouth.

→ *The* ***taste*** *of the fruit was sweet.*



throw [erou] *v.*

To **throw** something is to use your hand to make it go through the air.

→ *The pitcher can* ***throw*** *the baseball very fast.*



wave [weiv] *n.*

A **wave** is a line of water that moves higher than the rest of the water.

→ *The water was filled with large blue* ***waves****.*

UNIT 10

Word List



benefit [bénəfit] *n.*

A **benefit** is a good thing.

→ *Being able to fly is a good **benefit** to birds.*



certain [sə́:rtən] *adj.*

If you are **certain** about something, you know it is true.

→ *I am **certain** that zebras have stripes.*



chance [tʃæns] *n.*

A **chance** is an opportunity to do something.

→ *I had a **chance** to see the Roman Coliseum last summer.*



effect [ifékt] *n.*

An **effect** is a change made by something else.

→ *The medicine had a good **effect** on the boy.*



essential [isénʃəl] *adj.*

If something is **essential**, it is very important and necessary.

→ *It is **essential** to have oxygen when you scuba dive.*



far [fɑ:r] *adj.*

If something is **far**, it is not close.

→ *It's **far** going from the east coast to the west coast of America.*



focus [fóukəs] *v.*

To **focus** on something is to think about it and pay attention to it.

→ *My mom always helps me to **focus** on my school work.*



function [fʌ́ŋkʃən] *n.*

The **function** of something is what it does.

→ *The **function** of a flashlight is to help you see in the dark.*



grass [græs] *n.*

Grass is the green leaves that cover the ground.

→ *The **grass** looked so soft and green.*



guard [gɑ:rd] *v.*

To **guard** something is to take care of it.

→ *The police officer will **guard** us from any harm.*



image [imidʒ] *n.*

The **image** of something is a picture of it.

→ *The **image** of her eye was very clear.*



immediate [imí:diət] *adj.*

If something is **immediate**, it happens quickly.

→ *An **immediate** response came from the pizza place.*



primary [práimeri] *adj.*

If something is **primary**, it is the most important thing.

→ *His **primary** thoughts are about money.*



proud [praud] *adj.*

If someone feels **proud**, they are happy about what they have done.

→ *She is **proud** of the picture she drew of her house.*



remain [riméin] *v.*

To **remain** somewhere is to stay there.

→ *My sister had to **remain** home since she was sick.*



rest [rest] *v.*

To **rest** is to stop being active while the body gets back its strength.

→ *I **rested** on the couch after work.*



separate [sépərèit] *adj.*

If two things are **separate**, they are not together.

→ *New York and Los Angeles are in two **separate** parts of America.*



site [sait] *n.*

A **site** is a place.

→ *We found the perfect **site** for our picnic.*



tail [teil] *n.*

A **tail** is a part of an animal's body, sticking out from its rear or back.

→ *Our dog wags its **tail** when it's happy.*



trouble [trʌ́bəl] *n.*

Trouble is a problem or a difficulty.

→ *I have **trouble** working with my boss.*

UNIT 11

Word List



anymore [ènimɔ́:r] *adv.*

Anymore means any longer.

→ *Her old pants don't fit her **anymore**.*



asleep [əslí:p] *adj.*

When a person is **asleep**, they are not awake.

→ *The baby has been **asleep** for hours.*



berry [bέri] *n.*

A **berry** is a small round fruit that grows on certain plants and trees.

→ *The **berry** looked delicious.*



collect [kəlékt] *v.*

To **collect** things is to group them together all in one place.

→ *I **collected** shells when I was younger.*



compete [kəmpí:t] *v.*

To **compete** is to try to be better than someone.

→ *He will **compete** with very good athletes.*



conversation [kɑ̀nvərséiʃən] *n.*

A **conversation** is a talk between people.

→ *There were two **conversations** going on at once.*



creature [krí:tʃər] *n.*

A **creature** is any living thing.

→ *The **creature** we saw today was either a dolphin or a porpoise.*



decision [disiʒən] *n.*

A **decision** is a choice.

→ *He made the wrong **decision**.*



either [í:ðər] *conj.*

Either is used with "or" to say there are two or more possibilities.

→ *You can choose to be **either** white or black when you play chess.*



forest [fɔ́(:)rist] *n.*

A **forest** is a place with lots of trees and animals.

→ *I love to go walking in the **forest**.*



ground [graund] *n.*

The **ground** is the top part of the Earth that we walk on.

→ *The **ground** under our feet was dry and brown.*



introduce [intrədjú:s] *v.*

To **introduce** someone or something is to say who they are.

→ *I **introduced** myself to our newest co-worker today.*



marry [mæri] *v.*

To **marry** is to legally become husband and wife.

→ *Rose and Henry were **married**, and they lived happily.*



prepare [pripɛ́ər] *v.*

To **prepare** is to get ready for something.

→ *I **prepared** my speech to the class.*



sail [seil] *v.*

To **sail** is to move a boat on the water.

→ *I love to **sail** my boat on the lake.*



serious [siəriəs] *adj.*

When something is **serious**, it is bad or unsafe.

→ *The accident was very **serious**.*



spend [spend] *v.*

To **spend** is to use time doing something or being somewhere.

→ *I like to **spend** my free time fishing.*



strange [streindʒ] *adj.*

When something is **strange**, it is not normal.

→ *Joe had a **strange** look on his face after he saw what happened.*



truth [tru:θ] *n.*

The **truth** is a fact or something that is right.

→ *He was telling the **truth** about seeing a large green snake.*



wake [weik] *v.*

To **wake** is to not be sleeping anymore.

→ *He is always full of energy when he **wakes** in the morning.*

UNIT 12

Word List



alone [əlóun] *adj.*

If someone is **alone**, they are not with another person.
→ *The boy wanted to be **alone** to think.*



apartment [əpɑ́:rtmənt] *n.*

An **apartment** is a set of rooms in a building where people live.
→ *She has a nice **apartment** in the city.*



article [ɑ́:rtikl] *n.*

An **article** is a story in a newspaper or magazine.
→ *Did you read the **article** in the newspaper about the soccer game?*



artist [ɑ́:rtist] *n.*

An **artist** is a person who paints, draws, or makes sculptures.
→ *He went to Paris to become an **artist**.*



attitude [ætitjú:d] *n.*

Someone's **attitude** is the way they feel and think.
→ *John has a bad **attitude**. He's always angry.*



compare [kəmpɛ́ər] *v.*

To **compare** means to say how two things are the same and different.
→ *If you **compare** cats and dogs, you'll see that they're both good pets.*



judge [dʒʌdʒ] *v.*

To **judge** something is to say if it is good or bad.
→ *The boy was going to **judge** how his mother's turkey tasted.*



magazine [mæ̀gəzí:n] *n.*

A **magazine** is a regular publication with news, stories, and articles.
→ *She likes to read fashion **magazines**.*



material [mətíəriəl] *n.*

A **material** is what is used to make something.
→ *Brick is a good **material** for building houses.*



meal [mi:l] *n.*

A **meal** is a time when food is eaten like breakfast, lunch, or dinner.
→ *Breakfast is my favorite **meal** because I enjoy breakfast foods.*



method [méəəd] *n.*

A **method** is the way to do something.

→ *One **method** to remember things is to tie a string around your finger.*



neighbor [néibər] *n.*

A **neighbor** is a person who lives near you.

→ *I like my **neighbor** because he's very friendly.*



professional [prəféʃənəl] *adj.*

If something is **professional**, it deals with work that uses special skills.

→ *If you want to be a pilot, you must have **professional** training.*



profit [práfit] *n.*

A **profit** is the extra money you make when you sell something.

→ *I made a small **profit** from selling my old clothes.*



quality [kwáləti] *n.*

The **quality** of something is how good it is.

→ *The **quality** of his car is very good.*



shape [ʃeip] *n.*

A **shape** is a simple form like a square or circle.

→ *The triangle is my favorite **shape**.*



space [speis] *n.*

A **space** is an empty area.

→ *I don't have much **space** for things in my small house.*



stair [stɛə:r] *n.*

Stairs are the things that are used to go up in a building.

→ *You can take the **stairs** to the second floor.*



symbol [símbəl] *n.*

A **symbol** is a thing that stands for something else.

→ *This **symbol** tells us that we cannot smoke in this area.*



thin [θin] *adj.*

If someone or something is **thin**, they are not fat.

→ *The man was **thin** because he didn't eat much.*

UNIT 13

Word List



blood [blʌd] *n.*

Blood is the red liquid in your body.

→ *I cut my finger and got **blood** on my shirt.*



burn [bəːrn] *v.*

To **burn** something is to set it on fire.

→ *I **burned** some wood in the camp fire.*



cell [sel] *n.*

A **cell** is a small room where a person is locked in.

→ *The jail **cell** was very small.*



contain [kəntéin] *v.*

To **contain** something is to have it inside.

→ *The mailbox **contained** a letter.*



correct [kərékt] *adj.*

To be **correct** is to be right.

→ *All of my answers on the test were **correct**.*



crop [krɑp] *n.*

A **crop** is food that a farmer grows.

→ *Wheat is a **crop** that is made into bread.*



demand [dimǽnd] *v.*

To **demand** something is to say strongly that you want it.

→ *The workers **demanded** to be paid more money.*



equal [íːkwəl] *adj.*

To be **equal** is to be the same.

→ *Both students are **equal** in age.*



feed [fiːd] *v.*

To **feed** is to give food.

→ *Mother **feeds** my baby brother everyday.*



hole [houl] *n.*

A **hole** is an opening in something.

→ *The man was going to jump into the **hole** in the ice.*



increase [inkríːs] *v.*

To **increase** something is to make it larger or more.

→ *They've **increased** the price of gas by 15 cents!*



lord [lɔːrd] *n.*

Long ago, a **lord** was a man in charge of a town.

→ *The **lord** of the town was not kind.*



owe [ou] *v.*

To **owe** is to have to pay or give back something received from another.

→ *I **owed** him twenty dollars, so I paid him back.*



position [pəzíʃən] *n.*

A **position** is the way something is placed.

→ *How can you sit in that **position**?*



raise [reiz] *v.*

To **raise** something is to lift it up.

→ *We had to work together to **raise** the last piece.*



responsible [rispɑ́nsəbəl] *adj.*

If a person is **responsible**, they do the right things.

→ *I try to be **responsible** and save money.*



sight [sait] *n.*

A **sight** is something interesting to see.

→ *I saw the pyramids of Egypt. What a **sight**!*



spot [spɑt] *n.*

A **spot** is a place where something happens.

→ *The kitchen is a good **spot** to eat meals.*



structure [strʌ́ktʃəːr] *n.*

A **structure** is a building.

→ *They just built a beautiful new **structure** downtown.*



whole [houl] *adj.*

Whole means all of something.

→ *I ate the **whole** pie. We don't have any more.*

UNIT 14

Word List



coach [koutʃ] *n.*

A **coach** is a person who teaches sports.

→ *My **coach** gets very excited during games.*



control [kəntróul] *v.*

To **control** something is to make it do what you want.

→ *To **control** the TV, just push the buttons.*



description [diskripʃən] *n.*

A **description** of someone or something says what they are like.

→ *I gave a **description** of the man with the gun and hat to the police.*



direct [dirékt] *adj.*

If something is **direct**, it goes straight between two places.

→ *The green path is a **direct** route to my house.*



exam [igzǽm] *n.*

An **exam** is a test.

→ *I did some practice questions for the math **exam** on the board.*



example [igzǽmpəl] *n.*

An **example** of something is a thing that is typical of it.

→ *Cola is an **example** of a soft drink.*



limit [límit] *n.*

A **limit** is the largest or smallest amount of something that you allow.

→ *My mother put a **limit** on how much I could use the phone.*



local [lóukəl] *adj.*

If something is **local**, it is nearby.

→ *The **local** market in my neighborhood sells all the food we need.*



magical [mǽdʒikəl] *adj.*

Magical describes a quality that makes someone or something special.

→ *The fireworks made the night sky look so **magical**.*



mail [meil] *n.*

Mail is letters and other things sent to people.

→ *I get a lot of **mail** because I have friends all over the world.*



novel [nάvəl] *n.*

A **novel** is a book that tells a story.

→ *He wrote a great **novel** about ancient China.*



outline [άutlàin] *n.*

An **outline** is the plan for a story or essay.

→ *Before I wrote my essay, I made an **outline**.*



poet [pόuit] *n.*

A **poet** is a person who writes poems.

→ *William Shakespeare was one of the greatest **poets**.*



print [print] *v.*

To **print** something is to put it onto paper.

→ *Make sure that you **print** your name clearly.*



scene [si:n] *n.*

A **scene** is one part of a book or movie.

→ *A movie is made up of many short pieces or **scenes**.*



sheet [ʃi:t] *n.*

A **sheet** is a thin flat piece of paper.

→ *I only needed a single **sheet** of paper to do my homework.*



silly [síli] *adj.*

If someone or something is **silly**, they show a lack of thought.

→ *I made a **silly** mistake of dropping mom's vase.*



store [stɔ:r] *n.*

A **store** is a place where you can buy things.

→ *I picked up a few things at the grocery **store**.*



suffer [sʌ́fər] *v.*

To **suffer** is to feel pain.

→ *Her headache made her **suffer** all day.*



technology [teknάlədʒi] *n.*

Technology is new things made by using science.

→ *He loves **technology** such as laptop computers.*

UNIT 15

Word List



across [əkrɔ́:s] *prep.*

To go **across** something is to go to the other side of it.
→ *He walked **across** the board to the other side.*



breathe [bri:ð] *v.*

To **breathe** means to let air go in and out of your body.
→ *We need strong healthy lungs to help us **breathe** well.*



characteristic [kæriktərístik] *n.*

A **characteristic** is something that shows what a person or a thing is like.
→ *One **characteristic** of tigers is their black stripes.*



consume [kənsú:m] *v.*

To **consume** something means to eat or drink it.
→ *Jack **consumed** a whole plate of spaghetti.*



excite [iksáit] *v.*

To **excite** someone means to make them happy and interested.
→ *I heard about the school dance on Friday. This **excited** me.*



extreme [ikstrí:m] *adj.*

If something is **extreme**, it is in a large amount or degree.
→ *His workout was so **extreme** that he was sweating heavily.*



fear [fiər] *n.*

Fear is the feeling of being afraid.
→ *I have a great **fear** of skateboarding.*



fortunate [fɔ́:rtʃənit] *adj.*

If you are **fortunate**, you are lucky.
→ *I was **fortunate** to get a seat.*



happen [hǽpən] *v.*

If someone **happens** to do something, they do it by chance.
→ *I **happened** to meet some new friends at school today.*



length [leŋkə] *n.*

The **length** of something is how long it is from one end to the other.
→ *The **length** of the floor is three meters.*



mistake [mistéik] *n.*

A **mistake** is something you do wrong.

→ *My boss always yells at me when I make a **mistake**.*



observe [əbzə́:rv] *v.*

To **observe** something is to watch it.

→ *Brian **observed** the sun rising over the mountains.*



opportunity [ɑ̀pərtjú:nəti] *n.*

An **opportunity** is a chance to do something.

→ *I had an **opportunity** to take pictures in the jungle.*



prize [praiz] *n.*

A **prize** is something of value that is given to the winner.

→ *I won a **prize** for getting the best grade on my science test.*



race [reis] *n.*

A **race** is a contest to see who is the fastest.

→ *Paul is a fast runner, so he easily won the **race**.*



realize [rí:əlàiz] *v.*

To **realize** is to suddenly understand.

→ *After I left my house, I **realized** that I left the light on.*



respond [rispɑ́nd] *v.*

To **respond** is to give an answer to what someone else said.

→ *When the teacher asked the question, we all **responded**.*



risk [risk] *n.*

A **risk** is a chance of something bad happening.

→ *I took a **risk** and climbed the snowy mountain.*



wonder [wʌ́ndə:r] *v.*

To **wonder** is to ask yourself questions or have a need to know.

→ *The young mother **wondered** if she'd have a boy or a girl.*



yet [jet] *adv.*

Yet is used to say something has not happened up to now.

→ *We can't go out **yet**; we're still eating.*

UNIT 16

Word List



academy [əkædəmi] *n.*

An **academy** is a special type of school.

→ *There are many courses taught at the **academy** that I go to.*



ancient [éinʃənt] *adj.*

If something is **ancient**, it is very old.

→ *I want to see the **ancient** buildings in Rome.*



board [bɔ:rd] *n.*

A **board** is a flat piece of wood.

→ *The sign was made of a few wooden **boards**.*



century [sénʧuri] *n.*

A **century** is one hundred years.

→ *Our company is celebrating a **century** of business in London.*



clue [klu:] *n.*

A **clue** is a fact or object that helps solve a mystery or crime.

→ *The detective found some **clues** on the sidewalk.*



concert [kánsə(:)rt] *n.*

A **concert** is an event where you listen to people play music.

→ *I enjoyed the **concert** last night. The band was very good.*



county [káunti] *n.*

A **county** is the largest political division of a state in the US.

→ *He wanted to represent the citizens of his **county**.*



dictionary [dikʃənèri] *n.*

A **dictionary** is a book that tells you what words mean.

→ *I use the **dictionary** to learn new words.*



exist [igzíst] *v.*

To **exist** is to be real.

→ *Do you really think that unicorns ever **existed**?*



flat [flæt] *adj.*

Flat describes something that is level and smooth with no curved parts

→ *My parents bought a new **flat** screen TV over the weekend.*



gentleman [ʤéntlmən] *n.*

A **gentleman** is a nice man.

→ *My grandfather is a kind and helpful **gentleman**.*



hidden [hídn] *adj.*

Hidden means to be not easily noticed or too hard to find.

→ *The **hidden** camera recorded everything in the parking lot.*



maybe [méibi] *adv.*

Maybe is used to show that something is possible or may be true.

→ *If I focus hard enough, **maybe** I can come up with the right answer.*



officer [ɔ́(:)fisər] *n.*

An **officer** is a leader in the army.

→ *The soldiers followed the orders of the **officer**.*



original [ərídʒənəl] *adj.*

If something is **original**, it is the first one of that thing.

→ *This is the **original** painting of the Mona Lisa.*



pound [paund] *v.*

To **pound** something is to hit it many times with a lot of force.

→ *He **pounded** the nail with the hammer.*



process [práses] *n.*

A **process** is the steps to take to do something.

→ *Making a cake is a long **process**.*



publish [pʌ́bliʃ] *v.*

To **publish** a book is to get it printed and ready to sell.

→ *That company **publishes** daily newspapers.*



theater [ə́i(:)ətə:r] *n.*

A **theater** is a building where you watch plays, shows, and movies.

→ *We went to the **theater** to see a play.*



wealth [welə] *n.*

Wealth is a large amount of money.

→ *One of the most important things to some people is **wealth**.*

UNIT 17

Word List



appreciate [əprí:ʃièit] *v.*

To **appreciate** something is to understand its good qualities.

→ *I can **appreciate** the lovely scenery.*



available [əvéiləbəl] *adj.*

If something is **available**, it means you can get it.

→ *There were many seats **available** in the room.*



beat [bi:t] *v.*

To **beat** someone means to do better than they do.

→ *I managed to **beat** everyone in the race.*



bright [brait] *adj.*

If something is **bright**, it shows a lot of light.

→ *The **bright** light from the explosion hurt my eyes.*



celebrate [séləbrèit] *v.*

To **celebrate** is to do something to show that an event is special.

→ *We all **celebrated** when we heard the great news.*



determine [ditə́:rmin] *v.*

To **determine** means to choose or make a decision.

→ *He tried to **determine** which one to eat first.*



disappear [disəpíər] *v.*

To **disappear** means to go away or not be seen.

→ *The top of the building is **disappearing** in the clouds.*



else [els] *adj.*

If you talk about something **else**, you talk about something different.

→ *I wanted a bike for my birthday, but I got something **else**.*



fair [fɛər] *adj.*

Fair describes treating someone in a way that is reasonable or right.

→ *He sold me his car for a **fair** price.*



flow [flou] *v.*

To **flow** is to move easily and continuously in one direction.

→ *The water **flowed** over the rocks and into the lake.*



forward [fɔ́:rwə:rd] *adv.*

If you move **forward**, you move in the direction in front of you.
→ *When he saw his mother, the baby crawled **forward** to her.*



hill [hil] *n.*

A **hill** is a round area of land. It is higher than the land around it.
→ *The sun was rising above the green **hills**.*



level [lévəl] *n.*

A **level** is a point on a scale that measures something.
→ *Please check the **level** of the temperature.*



lone [loun] *adj.*

If someone or something is **lone**, they are the only one of that kind.
→ *A **lone** man walked along the street.*



puddle [pʌ́dl] *n.*

A **puddle** is a pool of liquid on the ground.
→ *When the ice melted, it formed a **puddle**.*



response [rispáns] *n.*

A **response** is the answer to a question.
→ *He asked if I was sad. My **response** was "No."*



season [sí:zən] *n.*

A **season** is a time of the year: spring, summer, fall or winter.
→ *Fall is a warm **season**, while winter is very cold.*



solution [səlú:ʃən] *n.*

A **solution** is a way to solve a problem.
→ *There are many problems. We need **solutions**!*



waste [weist] *v.*

To **waste** means to carelessly use something all up.
→ *Turn off the water so you don't **waste** it.*



whether [hwéðə:r] *conj.*

You use **whether** when you must choose between two things.
→ *I could not decide **whether** to go left or right.*

UNIT 18

Word List



argue [á:rgju:] *v.*

To **argue** is to angrily speak to someone because you do not agree.

→ *We **argued** about where to go for dinner.*



communicate [kəmjú:nəkèit] *v.*

To **communicate** is to give information by talking, writing, etc.

→ *I **communicated** with Paul about his new ideas.*



crowd [kraud] *n.*

A **crowd** is a large group of people.

→ *A large **crowd** had gathered on the street to see the accident.*



depend [dipénd] *v.*

To **depend** on someone or something is to need them.

→ *Children **depend** on their parents for many things.*



dish [diʃ] *n.*

A **dish** is a plate.

→ *She put a clean white **dish** on the table.*



empty [émpti] *adj.*

If something is **empty**, it does not have anything in it.

→ *My gas tank was almost **empty**, so I couldn't drive my car very long.*



exact [igzǽkt] *adj.*

If something is **exact**, it is just the right amount.

→ *Please use the **exact** amount of sugar for the cake.*



fresh [freʃ] *adj.*

If something is **fresh**, it is new.

→ *I just bought these oranges. They are very **fresh**.*



gather [gǽðər] *v.*

To **gather** is to collect several things usually from different places.

→ *Sam **gathered** some flowers for his mother.*



indicate [índikèit] *v.*

To **indicate** means to show, point or make something clear.

→ *He pointed to his eyes to **indicate** where he had hurt himself.*



item [áitəm] *n.*

An **item** is a thing that you buy or sell.

→ *I have many **items** for school in my bag.*



offer [ɔ́(:)fər] *v.*

To **offer** is to present someone with something.

→ *He **offered** me the keys to his car.*



price [prais] *n.*

The **price** of something is how much it costs.

→ *What is the **price** of this item?*



product [prɑ́dəkt] *n.*

A **product** is something that is made.

→ *My sister has many beauty **products** in her room.*



property [prɑ́pərti] *n.*

Property is something that someone owns.

→ *The house is now my **property**.*



purchase [pə́:rtʃəs] *v.*

To **purchase** something is to buy it.

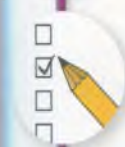
→ *I recently **purchased** a new car.*



recommend [rèkəménd] *v.*

To **recommend** something is to say that someone should do it.

→ *My doctor **recommended** that I get some exercise.*



select [silékt] *v.*

To **select** something is to choose it.

→ *I hope that I **selected** the right answers on the test.*



tool [tu:l] *n.*

A **tool** is something that helps you do a task.

→ *We used a **tool** to fix the window.*



treat [tri:t] *v.*

To **treat** is to act in a certain way toward someone.

→ *The cats **treated** the mouse very nicely.*

UNIT 19

Word List



alive [əláiv] *adj.*

If someone or something is **alive**, they are not dead.

→ *My grandparents are still **alive** even though they are over 90.*



bone [boun] *n.*

A **bone** is a hard part of the body.

→ *I brought home a nice **bone** for my dog.*



bother [bɑ́ðə:r] *v.*

To **bother** is to make the effort to do something.

→ *No one **bothered** to wash the dishes today.*



captain [kæptin] *n.*

A **captain** is the person who leads a ship or airplane.

→ *The **captain** sailed his ship to Australia.*



conclusion [kənklú:ʒən] *n.*

The **conclusion** of something is the final part of it.

→ *At the **conclusion** of the race, the spectators cheered for the winner.*



doubt [daut] *n.*

Doubt is a feeling of not being sure.

→ *I have **doubt** that the story is true.*



explore [ikspló:r] *v.*

To **explore** is to look for new places.

→ *He wants to **explore** the world and see new things.*



foreign [fɔ́(:)rin] *adj.*

If something is **foreign**, it is from a different country.

→ *Mexican food is a popular **foreign** food.*



glad [glæd] *adj.*

If you are **glad**, you are happy.

→ *I am **glad** you came to my party.*



however [hauévər] *adv.*

However means despite or not being influenced by something.

→ *She is a great cook. **However**, she never had professional lessons.*



injustice [indʒʌ́stis] *n.*

Injustice is a lack of fairness or justice.

→ *Putting an innocent person in jail is an act of **injustice**.*



international [intərnǽʃənəl] *adj.*

If something is **international**, it involves more than one country.

→ *The United Nations is a powerful **international** organization.*



lawyer [lɔ́:jə:r] *n.*

A **lawyer** works with the law and represents people in court.

→ *The **lawyer** left the courthouse after the judge made her decision.*



mention [ménʃən] *v.*

To **mention** something is to talk about it.

→ *The doctors **mentioned** the problems that the patient was having.*



policy [pɑ́ləsi] *n.*

A **policy** is a rule.

→ *He told us that his **policy** was to put customers first.*



social [sóuʃəl] *adj.*

If something is **social**, it is about many people in a community.

→ *People should come together and fix the world's **social** problems.*



speech [spi:tʃ] *n.*

A **speech** is something said to a group of people.

→ *She gave a **speech** to the class.*



staff [stæf] *n.*

A **staff** is a group of people working together in a company.

→ *My dad has a **staff** of four people to help him at the office.*



toward [təwɔ́:rd] *prep.*

If you go **toward** something, you go closer to it.

→ *Santa walked **toward** my house with a special tree.*



wood [wud] *n.*

Wood is the thing that trees are made of.

→ *I put the pieces of **wood** in a pile.*

UNIT 20

Word List



achieve [ətʃíːv] *v.*

To **achieve** something is to successfully do it after trying hard.
→ *I was happy that I could **achieve** my goal.*



advise [ədváiz] *v.*

To **advise** someone is to tell them what to do.
→ *My mother often **advises** people about their money.*



already [ɔːlrédi] *adv.*

If something happens **already**, it happens before a certain time.
→ *It is **already** time for the movie to start. Let's go in.*



basic [béisik] *adj.*

If something is **basic**, it is very simple or easy.
→ *I learned some **basic** English skills in school today.*



bit [bit] *n.*

A **bit** is a small amount of something.
→ *I ate a **bit** of chocolate before I went to bed.*



consider [kənsídər] *v.*

To **consider** something means to think about it.
→ *Pete didn't like his job. He **considered** getting a new one.*



destroy [distrɔ́i] *v.*

To **destroy** means to damage something so badly that it cannot be used.
→ *The glass was **destroyed**.*



entertain [èntərtéin] *v.*

To **entertain** someone is to do something that they enjoy.
→ *The clown **entertained** the kids at the party.*



extra [ékstrə] *adj.*

If something is **extra**, it is more than what is needed.
→ *The squirrel had **extra** nuts for the winter.*



goal [goul] *n.*

A **goal** is something you work toward.
→ *Her **goal** was to become a doctor.*



lie [lai] *v.*

To **lie** is to say or write something untrue to deceive someone.
→ *Whenever Pinocchio **lied** to his father, his nose grew.*



meat [mi:t] *n.*

Meat is food made of animals.
→ *This piece of **meat** I'm eating tastes very good.*



opinion [əpínjən] *n.*

An **opinion** is a thought about a person or a thing.
→ *Meg told me her **opinion** of my story. She said it was not funny.*



real [rí:əl] *adj.*

If something is **real**, it actually exists.
→ *The handbag has a stamp on it, so it's **real**.*



reflect [riflékt] *v.*

To **reflect** is when a surface sends back light, heat, sound or an image.
→ *Her face was **reflected** on the smooth glass.*



regard [rigɑ́:rd] *v.*

To **regard** someone or something is to think of them in a certain way.
→ *The boy **regarded** the girl as a good friend.*



serve [sə:rv] *v.*

To **serve** someone is to give them food or drinks.
→ *He **served** us our drinks quickly.*



vegetable [védʒətəbəl] *n.*

A **vegetable** is a plant used as food.
→ *Carrots are my favorite **vegetable**.*



war [wɔ:r] *n.*

A **war** is a big fight between two groups of people.
→ *Many young men died in the **war**.*



worth [wə:rθ] *adj.*

If something is **worth** an amount of money, it costs that amount.
→ *Our house is **worth** a lot of money.*

UNIT 21

Word List



appear [əpíər] *v.*

To **appear** is to seem.

→ *She **appeared** to be sad. She was crying.*



base [beis] *n.*

The **base** is the bottom of something.

→ *The **base** of the table has three legs.*



brain [brein] *n.*

The **brain** is the organ in your head that lets you think.

→ *You must use your **brain** to solve the problem.*



career [kəríər] *n.*

A **career** is a job that you do for a large part of your life.

→ *He was in the hospitality business for most of his **career**.*



clerk [klə:rk] *n.*

A **clerk** is a type of worker. Clerks in a store help customers.

→ *The **clerk** added up her bill for the groceries.*



effort [éfərt] *n.*

Effort is hard work or an attempt to do something.

→ *He always puts a lot of **effort** into his studies.*



enter [éntər] *v.*

To **enter** a place is to go into it.

→ *Two guards greeted me as I **entered** the front door.*



excellent [éksələnt] *adj.*

When something is **excellent**, it is very good.

→ *I got an **excellent** score on my school test.*



hero [hí:rou] *n.*

A **hero** is a brave person who does things to help others.

→ *To children, the man in the blue and red costume was a real **hero**.*



hurry [hə́:ri] *v.*

To **hurry** is to do something quickly.

→ *I **hurried** home on my bike.*



inform [infɔ:rm] *v.*

To **inform** someone is to tell them about something.
→ *I called and **informed** her about my idea.*



later [léitə:r] *adv.*

Later means after the present, expected, or usual time.
→ *She missed the train, so she'll arrive a little **later** than expected.*



leave [li:v] *v.*

To **leave** means to go away from someone or something.
→ *He packed his bag and was ready to **leave** for home.*



locate [lóukeit] *v.*

To **locate** something is to find it.
→ *I could not **locate** my keys in the house.*



nurse [nə:rs] *n.*

A **nurse** is a person who helps sick people in the hospital.
→ *A **nurse** helped me get better.*



operation [ɑ̀pəréiʃən] *n.*

An **operation** is when a doctor replaces or removes something in the body.
→ *The **operation** on my arm was a success.*



pain [pein] *n.*

Pain is the feeling that you have when you are hurt.
→ *His head was full of **pain**.*



refuse [rifjú:z] *v.*

To **refuse** something is to say "no" to it.
→ *The dog **refused** to play with the cat.*



though [ðou] *conj.*

Though is used when the second idea makes the first seem surprising.
→ ***Though** he was overweight, he liked to be active.*



various [vɛ́əriəs] *adj.*

If something is **various**, there are many types of it.
→ *She owned shoes of **various** styles.*

UNIT 22

Word List



actual [ǽktʃuəl] *adj.*

Actual means that something is real or true.

→ *This is the **actual** sword that the King owned, not a fake one.*



amaze [əméiz] *v.*

To **amaze** someone is to surprise them very much.

→ *The news in the paper **amazed** Jack.*



charge [tʃɑ:rdʒ] *n.*

A **charge** is the price to pay for something.

→ *The **charge** for the shirts was $15.00.*



comfort [kʌ́mfərt] *v.*

To **comfort** someone means to make them feel better.

→ *I wanted to **comfort** my friend after I heard the bad news.*



contact [kəntǽkt] *v.*

To **contact** someone is to speak or write to them.

→ *I **contacted** Sue about my party.*



customer [kʌ́stəmər] *n.*

A **customer** is a person who buys something at a store.

→ *The **customer** put a few items in a bag.*



deliver [dilívər] *v.*

To **deliver** something is to take it from one place to another.

→ *The man **delivered** Chinese food to my house.*



earn [ə:rn] *v.*

To **earn** means to get money for the work you do.

→ *He **earns** his living as a chef in a great restaurant.*



gate [geit] *n.*

A **gate** is a type of door. Gates are usually made of metal or wood.

→ *We want to put up a wooden **gate** around our house.*



include [inklú:d] *v.*

To **include** something means to have it as part of a group.

→ *Does this meal **include** a soft drink?*



manage [mǽnidʒ] *v.*

To **manage** something means to control or be in charge of it.
→ *I had to **manage** the meeting myself.*



mystery [místəri] *n.*

A **mystery** is something that is difficult to understand or explain.
→ *The path on the map was a complete **mystery** to me.*



occur [əkə́:r] *v.*

To **occur** means to happen.
→ *When did the thunderstorm **occur**?*



opposite [ápəzit] *n.*

If A is the **opposite** of B, A is completely different from B.
→ *The **opposite** of black is white.*



plate [pleit] *n.*

A **plate** is a flat round thing that you put food on.
→ *I put my **plate** down so I could put some food on it.*



receive [risí:v] *v.*

To **receive** something is to get it.
→ *I **received** a present on my birthday.*



reward [riwɔ́:rd] *n.*

A **reward** is something given in exchange for good behavior or work.
→ *He was given a **reward** for his excellent performance.*



set [set] *v.*

To **set** something is to put it somewhere.
→ *Please **set** the dice down on the table.*



steal [sti:l] *v.*

To **steal** is to take something that is not yours.
→ *The men tried to **steal** money from the bank.*



thief [θi:f] *n.*

A **thief** is someone who quietly takes things that do not belong to them.
→ *A **thief** broke into our home and took my mother's jewelry.*

UNIT 23

Word List



advance [ədvǽns] *v.*

To **advance** is to go forward.

→ *He **advanced** up the ladder slowly.*



athlete [ǽəliːt] *n.*

An **athlete** is a person who plays sports.

→ *Some **athletes** can play many sports very well.*



average [ǽvəridʒ] *adj.*

If something is **average,** it is at a normal level.

→ *I'm not rich or poor; I'm **average**.*



behavior [bihéivjər] *n.*

Your **behavior** is the way you act.

→ *Their **behavior** was good this semester. They didn't cause trouble.*



behind [biháind] *prep.*

Behind means to be at the back of something.

→ *The little girl was hiding **behind** a tree.*



course [kɔːrs] *n.*

A **course** is a class in school.

→ *I took a P.E. **course** in school this year.*



lower [lóuər] *v.*

To **lower** something is to make it go down.

→ *The chart shows how his production has **lowered** over the year.*



match [mætʃ] *v.*

To **match** is to be the same or similar.

→ *The two shoes **matched**. They looked the same.*



member [mémbər] *n.*

A **member** is a person who is part of a group.

→ *Julie is the newest **member** of our team.*



mental [méntl] *adj.*

If something is **mental,** it has to do with your mind.

→ *I made a **mental** picture of the room.*



passenger [pæsəndʒər] *n.*

A **passenger** is a person who rides in a car, train, or airplane.

→ *One **passenger** was standing in the subway train.*



personality [pə:rsənæləti] *n.*

Your **personality** is what you are like and how you behave.

→ *John has a bad **personality**.*



poem [póuim] *n.*

A **poem** is a short kind of writing.

→ *William Shakespeare wrote many **poems**.*



pole [poul] *n.*

A **pole** is a long thin stick made of wood or metal that supports things.

→ *The flag was hanging from the flag **pole**.*



remove [rimú:v] *v.*

To **remove** something is to take it away.

→ *I **removed** the nail from the board.*



safety [séifti] *n.*

Safety means to be the condition of being safe and free from danger.

→ *For his own **safety**, he was placed in a car seat.*



shoot [ʃu:t] *v.*

To **shoot** is to fire something like a bullet at someone or something.

→ *The hunter raised his gun to **shoot** at the target.*



sound [saund] *v.*

To **sound** means to make a noise.

→ *The alarm clock **sounded** and woke us all up.*



swim [swim] *v.*

To **swim** is to move through water.

→ *I love to **swim** in the ocean.*



web [web] *n.*

A **web** is a home made by a spider.

→ *Mom cleaned the spider **webs** out of the garage.*

UNIT 24

Word List



block [blɑk] *n.*

A **block** is a solid piece of wood, stone or ice.

→ *I saw a **block** of ice on the floor.*



cheer [tʃiər] *v.*

To **cheer** is to give a loud shout of approval or encouragement.

→ *The crowd all **cheered** when the home team won.*



complex [kəmpléks] *adj.*

If something is **complex,** it has many small parts. It is hard to understan

→ *A jig-saw puzzle can be **complex** because it has so many pieces.*



critic [krítik] *n.*

A **critic** is someone who give their opinions about movies, books, plays,

→ *The wine **critic** tasted the wine so he could give his opinion.*



event [ivɛ́nt] *n.*

An **event** is something that happens, especially something important.

→ *Finishing high school was a major **event** in his life.*



exercise [éksərsàiz] *v.*

To **exercise** is to run or play sports so that you can be healthy.

→ *You should **exercise** every day.*



fit [fit] *v.*

If something **fits,** it is small enough or the right size to go there.

→ *The colorful eggs **fit** into the box.*



friendship [frɛ́ndʃip] *n.*

Friendship is the relationship between people who are friends.

→ *Michael and Lisa have a very strong **friendship** with each other.*



guide [gaid] *n.*

A **guide** is someone who shows you where to go.

→ *We followed a **guide** at the park.*



lack [læk] *n.*

If there is a **lack** of something, there is not enough of it.

→ *His only problem is a **lack** of money.*



passage [pæsidʒ] *n.*

A **passage** is a long area with walls that goes from one place to another.
→ *The long **passage** led us to the other side of the field.*



perform [pərfɔ:rm] *v.*

To **perform** is to do something in front of people who watch.
→ *He will **perform** a song for the class.*



pressure [préʃər] *n.*

Pressure is what you apply to make someone do something.
→ *They put **pressure** on him to change his mind.*



probable [prɑ́bəbəl] *adj.*

If something is **probable**, it is likely to happen.
→ *It is **probable** that you will get a good grade if you study for the test.*



public [pʌ́blik] *adj.*

If something is **public**, it is meant for everyone to use.
→ *I went to the **public** park to play with my friends.*



strike [straik] *v.*

To **strike** someone or something is to hit them.
→ *She **struck** the other girl in the face.*



support [səpɔ́:rt] *v.*

To **support** something is to like it and help it be successful.
→ *Everyone at work **supports** the new plan.*



task [tæsk] *n.*

A **task** is work that someone has to do.
→ *Who has the **task** of building the brick wall?*



term [tə:rm] *n.*

A **term** is a word for something.
→ *I often use the **term** "oops" when I make a mistake.*



unite [ju:náit] *v.*

To **unite** is to get together to do something.
→ *If we **unite**, we can finish our project faster.*

UNIT 25

Word List



associate [əsóuʃièit] *v.*

To **associate** means to connect something with a person or thing.
→ *Most people **associate** birthday parties with having fun.*



environment [inváiərənmənt] *n.*

The **environment** is the place where people work or live.
→ *Keeping our **environment** clean is important to our health.*



factory [fǽktəri] *n.*

A **factory** is a building where things are made or put together.
→ *We have only one **factory** in our town.*



feature [fí:tʃər] *n.*

A **feature** is an important part of something.
→ *The cell phone has many **features**.*



instance [ínstəns] *n.*

An **instance** is an example of something.
→ *I have never experienced an **instance** of hate. Have you?*



involve [invάlv] *v.*

To **involve** means to be actively taking part in something.
→ *The whole family was **involved** in playing the game.*



medicine [médəsən] *n.*

Medicine is something you take to feel better or treat an illness.
→ *The doctor gave me **medicine** for my cold.*



mix [miks] *n.*

A **mix** is different things put together.
→ *The green **mix** we made in science class spilled onto the table.*



organize [ɔ́:rgənàiz] *v.*

To **organize** is to plan or get ready for an event.
→ *Make a list to help you **organize** the things you need.*



period [píəriəd] *n.*

A **period** is an amount of time when something happens.
→ *In one **period** in Europe, there were many knights.*



populate [pάpjəlèit] *v.*

If people **populate** an area, they live there.

→ *Billions of people **populate** the Earth.*



produce [prədjúːs] *v.*

To **produce** something is to make or grow it.

→ *This tree **produces** apples every year.*



range [reindʒ] *n.*

A **range** is a number or a set of similar things.

→ *I saw a **range** of cars to choose from.*



recognize [rékəgnàiz] *v.*

To **recognize** something is to know it because you have seen it before.

→ *I **recognized** an old friend from many years ago.*



regular [régjələːr] *adj.*

If something is **regular**, it happens often and in equal amounts of time.

→ *Our **regular** lunch time is around noon.*



sign [sain] *n.*

A **sign** is a notice giving information, directions, a warning, etc.

→ *The **sign** indicated that today would be a bad day.*



tip [tip] *n.*

A **tip** is a pointed end of something.

→ *The **tip** of his pen was very sharp.*



tradition [trədíʃən] *n.*

A **tradition** is something people have been doing for a long time.

→ *Marriage is a **tradition** all over the world.*



trash [træʃ] *n.*

Trash is waste material or unwanted or worthless things.

→ *Please take out the **trash**; it smells bad.*



wide [waid] *adj.*

If something is **wide**, it is large from side to side.

→ *The door was as **wide** as my arms.*

UNIT 26

Word List



advice [ədváis] *n.*

Advice is an opinion about what to do.

→ *I don't know how to study for my exams. Can you give me some **advice**?*



along [əlɔ́:ŋ] *prep.*

Along means to move from one part of a road, river, etc. to another.

→ *Walk **along** this tunnel for ten minutes, and you'll see a door on the left.*



attention [ətén∫ən] *n.*

Attention is the notice, thought, or consideration of someone.

→ *His work got the **attention** of two of his co-workers.*



attract [ətrækt] *v.*

To **attract** means to make a person or thing come closer or be interested

→ *The magnet **attracted** the metal.*



climb [klaim] *v.*

To **climb** means to use your hands and feet to go up on something.

→ *The girls **climbed** to the top of the mountain.*



drop [drɑp] *v.*

To **drop** is to fall or allow something to fall.

→ *A small amount of water **dropped** from the bottle.*



final [fáinəl] *adj.*

If something is **final**, it is the last part.

→ *In the **final** part of the film, the man and the woman got married.*



further [fə́:rðə:r] *adj.*

Further is used to say something is from a distance or time.

→ *The escalator is **further** along than I thought.*



imply [implái] *v.*

To **imply** something is to suggest it without saying it.

→ *The man **implied** that he wanted the job, but he didn't say so.*



maintain [meintéin] *v.*

To **maintain** means to make something stay the same.

→ *The balls **maintain** constant movement.*



neither [ni:ðər] *adv.*

You use **neither** to connect two negative statements.

→ ***Neither** the pass on the left nor the pass on the right will lead us home.*



otherwise [ʌðərwàiz] *adv.*

Otherwise means different or in another way.

→ *It's good to stay active; **otherwise**, you'll gain weight.*



physical [fizikəl] *adj.*

If something is **physical**, it is related to your body and not your mind.

→ *Biking is good for your **physical** health.*



prove [pru:v] *v.*

To **prove** something is to show that it is true.

→ *My teacher **proved** the answer on the board.*



react [ri:ækt] *v.*

To **react** is to act in a certain way because of something that happened.

→ *James **reacted** badly to the news.*



ride [raid] *v.*

To **ride** something is to travel on it. You can ride an animal, a bike, etc.

→ *I will **ride** a roller-coaster for the first time today.*



situated [sítʃuèitid] *adj.*

If something is **situated** somewhere, it is in that place.

→ *The white board is **situated** between the two men.*



society [səsáiəti] *n.*

Society is people and the way that they live.

→ ***Society** expects people to be good and honest.*



standard [stændə:rd] *n.*

A **standard** is what people consider normal or good.

→ *This older model TV is below our store's **standards**.*



suggest [səgdʒést] *v.*

To **suggest** something means to give an idea or plan about it.

→ *He **suggested** that we go to see his boss.*

UNIT 27

Word List



actually [æktʃuəli] *adv.*

Actually means in fact or really.

→ *My dad looks a little mean, but **actually** he's very kind.*



bite [bait] *n.*

Bite is the act of using your teeth to cut and tear into something.

→ *The boy took a big **bite** out of his hamburger.*



coast [koust] *n.*

The **coast** is the land by an ocean.

→ *I stayed on the southern **coast** of Australia.*



deal [di:l] *n.*

A **deal** is an agreement that you have with another person.

→ *I made a **deal** with the other company to give us some money.*



desert [dézərt] *n.*

The **desert** is an area of land without many plants or water.

→ *Not many plants grow in the **desert**.*



earthquake [ə́:rəkwèik] *n.*

An **earthquake** is a shaking movement of the ground.

→ *The building shook during the **earthquake**.*



effective [iféktiv] *adj.*

If something is **effective**, it works well.

→ *Swimming is an **effective** way to stay healthy.*



examine [igzǽmin] *v.*

To **examine** something is to look at it carefully.

→ *The doctor **examined** my eyes today.*



false [fɔ:ls] *adj.*

If something is **false**, it is not correct.

→ *If you think the answer is **false**, press the red button.*



gift [gift] *n.*

A **gift** is something you give someone.

→ *Dave received many **gifts** for Christmas.*



hunger [hʌ́ŋgər] *n.*

Hunger is the feeling that you get when you need to eat.

→ *After playing all day long, he was filled with **hunger**.*



imagine [imǽdʒin] *v.*

To **imagine** something is to think of it in your mind.

→ *Sally **imagined** herself winning lots of money.*



journey [dʒə́:rni] *n.*

A **journey** is a long trip.

→ *I went on a **journey** across the country with my parents.*



puzzle [pʌ́zl] *n.*

A **puzzle** is something that is hard to understand.

→ *The question was a **puzzle** to him.*



quite [kwait] *adv.*

Quite is used to say that something is complete or very much.

→ *I think typing on a keyboard is **quite** easy.*



rather [rǽðə:r] *adv.*

Rather is used when you want to do one thing but not the other.

→ *I would **rather** have the red one than the blue one.*



specific [spisífik] *adj.*

If something is **specific,** it is precise or exact.

→ *Please choose a **specific** place on the map.*



tour [tuə:r] *n.*

A **tour** is a short trip in which you see many sights.

→ *I took a **tour** of Asia and Europe.*



trip [trip] *n.*

A **trip** is a journey to a certain place.

→ *Ken took a **trip** to the city yesterday.*



value [vǽlju:] *n.*

If something has **value,** it is worth a lot of money.

→ *Matthew found a treasure of very high **value**.*

UNIT 28

Word List



band [bænd] *n.*

A **band** is a group of people who play music.
→ *My brother is in a rock **band**.*



barely [bɛ́ərli] *adv.*

Barely means by the smallest amount, almost not.
→ *I **barely** had enough money to pay for my bus ticket.*



boring [bɔ́:riŋ] *adj.*

If something is **boring**, it is not fun.
→ *I think the Internet is **boring**.*



cancel [kænsəl] *v.*

To **cancel** means to decide that an event or a request will not happen.
→ *She **cancelled** the rest of her plans because of the rain.*



driveway [dráivwèi] *n.*

A **driveway** is a short private road that leads to a person's home.
→ *The long **driveway** led us to their new house.*



garbage [gɑ́:rbidʒ] *n.*

Garbage is waste material like unwanted or spoiled food, bottles, paper, etc.
→ *The boy cleaned up the **garbage** around his house.*



instrument [ínstrəmənt] *n.*

An **instrument** is something designed to do a certain task like music.
→ *My favorite musical **instrument** is the piano.*



list [list] *n.*

A **list** is a record of information printed with an item on each line.
→ *My mom makes a **list** of groceries to buy.*



magic [mædʒik] *n.*

Magic is the power to do impossible things.
→ *The magician used **magic** to pull a rabbit out of his hat.*



message [mésidʒ] *n.*

A **message** is a set of words that you send to someone.
→ *I left a **message** for you in the envelope.*



notice [nóutis] *v.*

To **notice** something is to see it for the first time.

→ *Did you **notice** the view?*



own [oun] *v.*

To **own** something means to have it. That thing belongs to you.

→ *My grandfather **owns** that house.*



predict [pridíkt] *v.*

To **predict** something is to say that it will happen.

→ *She **predicted** that I would get married next year.*



professor [prəfésər] *n.*

A **professor** is a person who teaches in college.

→ *Mike's science **professor** knows a lot about physics.*



rush [rʌʃ] *v.*

To **rush** is to go somewhere or do something very quickly.

→ *Nancy **rushed** to finish her homework.*



schedule [skédʒu(:)l] *n.*

A **schedule** is a plan that tells you when to do things.

→ *What is your class **schedule** for today?*



share [ʃɛə:r] *v.*

To **share** something is to give some of it to another person.

→ *Jimmy **shared** his apple with me.*



stage [steidʒ] *n.*

A **stage** is a place where actors or musicians act or sing.

→ *A large screen was on the **stage**.*



storm [stɔ:rm] *n.*

A **storm** is very bad weather. There is a lot of rain or snow.

→ *Did that **storm** wake you up last night?*



within [wiðin] *prep.*

You use **within** to say that something is inside another thing.

→ ***Within** the box, there was a pizza.*

UNIT 29

Word List



advertise [ædvərtàiz] *v.*

To **advertise** is to tell people about something on TV, radio, etc.
→ *They used a rabbit to help them **advertise** their product.*



assign [əsáin] *v.*

To **assign** something to someone is to tell them to do it.
→ *I **assigned** the worker an important task.*



audience [ɔ́:diəns] *n.*

An **audience** is a group of people who watch something together.
→ *There was a large **audience** at the game.*



breakfast [brékfəst] *n.*

Breakfast is the first meal of the day.
→ *I eat **breakfast** at 8:00 every morning.*



competition [kὰmpətíʃən] *n.*

A **competition** is a contest to see who is the best at something.
→ *He won the running **competition** over the weekend.*



cool [ku:l] *adj.*

If the weather is **cool**, it is a little bit cold.
→ *The weather is **cool** in the fall.*



gain [gein] *v.*

If you **gain** something, you get more of it.
→ *I **gained** some weight over the summer.*



importance [impɔ́:rtəns] *n.*

Importance means the quality or condition of being needed or valued.
→ *VIPs are people of great **importance**.*



knowledge [nάlidʒ] *n.*

Knowledge is information that you have about something.
→ *A music teacher should have good **knowledge** of music.*



major [méidʒə:r] *adj.*

If something is **major**, it is big or important.
→ *I have a **major** problem. My boss wants me to redo my project!*



mean [mi:n] *adj.*

Mean describes someone who is unkind or cruel.

→ *My co-worker is a very **mean** person. He gets angry very quickly.*



prefer [prifə́:r] *v.*

If you **prefer** something, you want it more than something else.

→ *I **prefer** to take the path that will lead me to a bright future.*



president [prézidənt] *n.*

A **president** is the leader of a country.

→ *The **president** of our country made an important announcement.*



progress [prágrəs] *n.*

Progress is the act of getting closer to doing or finishing something.

→ *Our company made financial **progress** this year.*



respect [rispékt] *n.*

Respect is a good opinion of someone because they are good.

→ *I have great **respect** for firemen.*



rich [ritʃ] *adj.*

If you are **rich**, you have a lot of money.

→ *He's **rich**. He can buy anything he wants.*



skill [skil] *n.*

A **skill** is the knowledge and ability that allows you to do something well.

→ *A snowboarder must have the right **skills** to do well.*



somehow [sʌ́mhàu] *adv.*

Somehow means in a way or by some means which is not known.

→ *He **somehow** had to find a way to reach the life preserver.*



strength [strenkθ] *n.*

Strength is the physical power that you have.

→ *Exercising will increase your **strength** and give you more power.*



vote [vout] *v.*

To **vote** is to officially choose between two or more things.

→ *I **voted** for Billy to be our class president.*

UNIT 30

Word List



above [əbʌ́v] *prep.*

If something is **above**, it is at a higher level than something else.
→ *He straightened the sign that was **above** the crowd.*



ahead [əhéd] *adv.*

If something is **ahead** of something else, it is in front of it.
→ *The blue car drove on **ahead** of us.*



amount [əmáunt] *n.*

An **amount** is how much there is of something.
→ *Can I use my card to pay for the entire **amount**?*



belief [bilíːf] *n.*

A **belief** is a strong feeling that something is correct or true.
→ *A preacher or priest should have a strong **belief** in God.*



center [séntər] *n.*

The **center** of something is the middle of it.
→ *The **center** of a dart board is the most important spot.*



common [kámən] *adj.*

If something is **common**, it happens often or there is much of it.
→ *It is **common** for snow to fall in the winter.*



cost [kɔːst] *v.*

To **cost** is to require expenditure or payment.
→ *These designer shoes **cost** more than the regular ones.*



demonstrate [démənstrèit] *v.*

To **demonstrate** something is to show how it is done.
→ *She **demonstrated** her plan to her co-workers.*



different [dífərənt] *adj.*

Different describes someone or something that is not the same as others.
→ *Each of my sisters has a **different** hair style from one another.*



evidence [évidəns] *n.*

Evidence is a fact or thing that you use to prove something.
→ *He used the pictures as **evidence** that UFOs are real.*



honesty [ánisti] *n.*

Honesty means the quality of being truthful or honest.

→ *A courtroom should be a place of **honesty**.*



idiom [ídiəm] *n.*

An **idiom** is a phrase with a meaning different from its words.

→ *The **idiom** "when pigs fly" means that something will never happen.*



independent [indipéndənt] *adj.*

If something is **independent**, it is not controlled by something else.

→ *She chose to live an **independent** life in the country.*



inside [insáid] *n.*

Inside means the inner part, space or side of something.

→ *The **inside** of the box was empty.*



master [mæstə:r] *n.*

A **master** is a person who is very good at something.

→ *My brother is a **master** of taekwondo.*



memory [méməri] *n.*

A **memory** is something you remember.

→ *The **memory** of my first time in the city will always be the best.*



proper [prápər] *adj.*

If something is **proper**, it is right.

→ *It is not **proper** to throw your garbage on the road.*



scan [skæn] *v.*

To **scan** something is to look at it very carefully.

→ *You must **scan** each person closely.*



section [sékʃən] *n.*

A **section** is a part of something larger.

→ *The green **section** of the graph is the most important part.*



surface [sə́:rfis] *n.*

The **surface** of something is the top part or outside of it.

→ *The **surface** of the moon is very rough.*

Appendix

NUMBERS

Number	Cardinal	Ordinal
0	zero	
1	one	first [1st]
2	two	second [2nd]
3	three	third [3rd]
4	four	fourth [4th]
5	five	fifth [5th]
6	six	sixth [6th]
7	seven	seventh [7th]
8	eight	eight [8th]
9	nine	ninth [9th]
10	ten	tenth [10th]
11	eleven	eleventh
12	twelve	twelfth
13	thirteen	thirteenth
14	fourteen	fourteenth
15	fifteen	fifteenth
16	sixteen	sixteenth
17	seventeen	seventeenth
18	eighteen	eighteenth
19	nineteen	nineteenth
20	twenty	twentieth
30	thirty	thirtieth
40	forty	fortieth
50	fifty	fiftieth
60	sixty	sixtieth
70	seventy	seventieth
80	eighty	eightieth
90	ninety	ninetieth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth
1,000,000	one million	one millionth
1,000,000,000	one billion	one billionth

TIME & DATE

Days of the week

Monday
Tuesday
Wednesday
Thursday
Friday
Saturday
Sunday

Months of the year

January
February
March
April
May
June
July
August
September
October
November
December

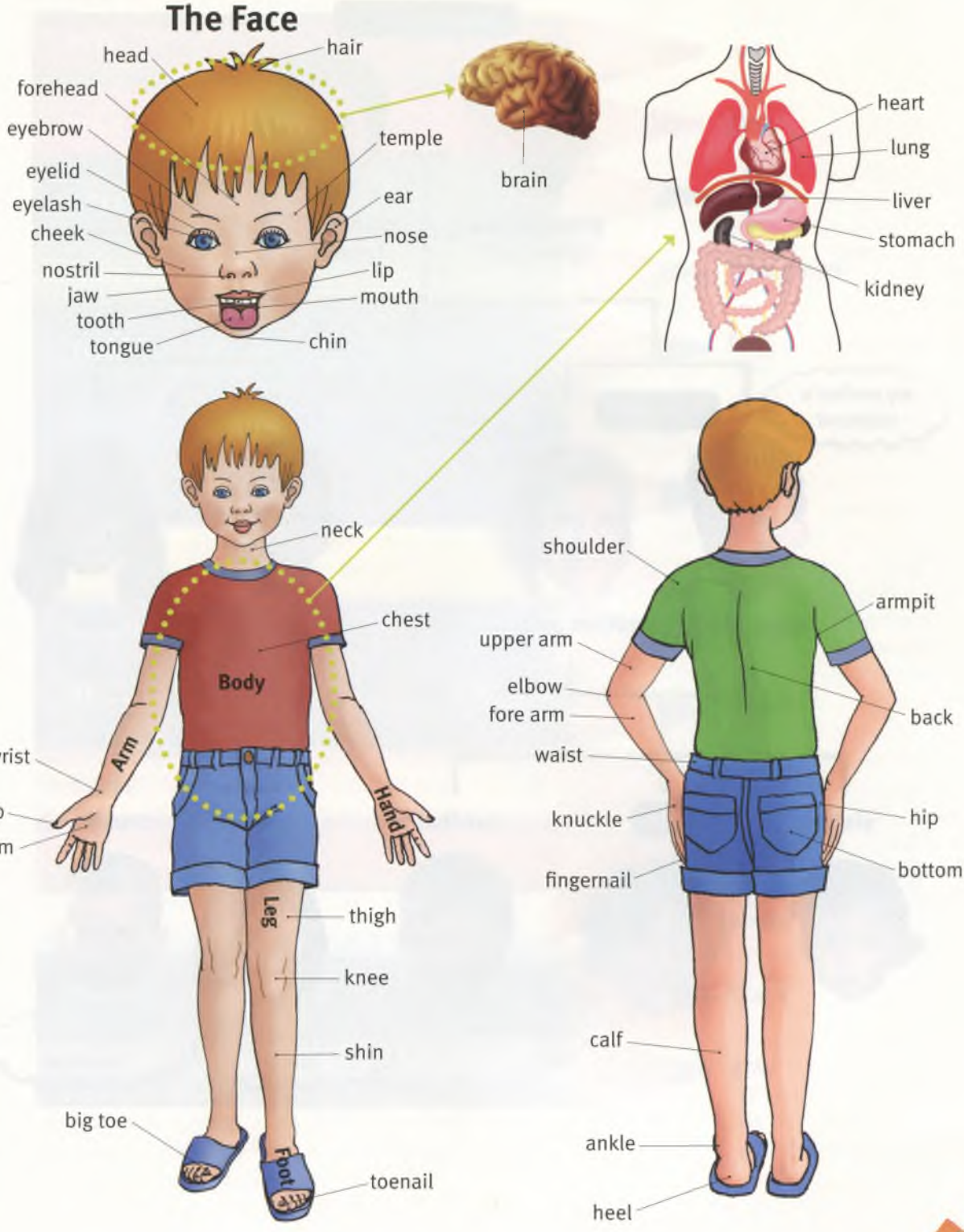
Seasons

Spring
Summer
Autumn
Winter

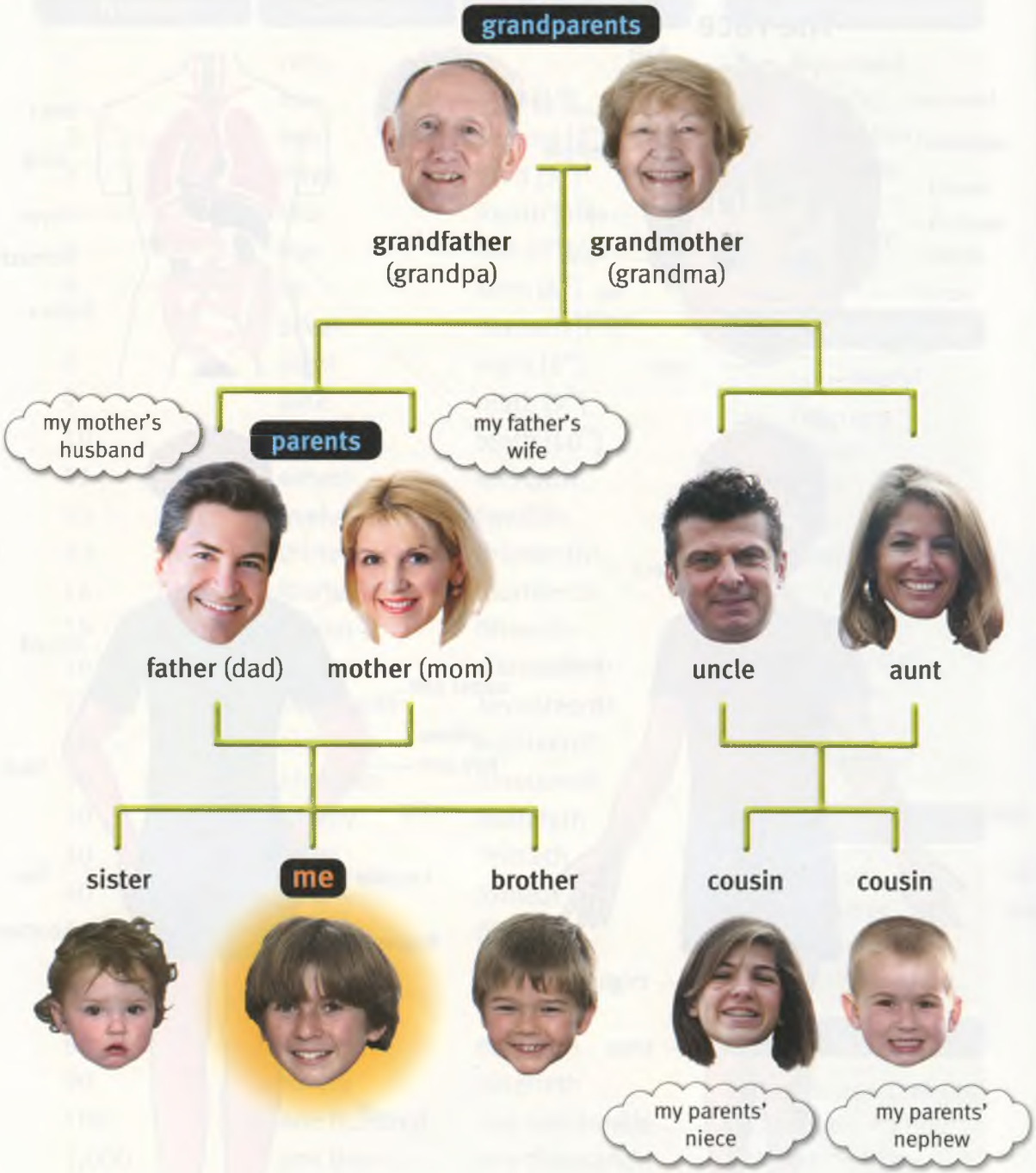
Time

60 seconds = 1 minute
60 minutes = 1 hour
24 hours = 1 day
7 days = 1 week
4 weeks = 1 month
12 months = 1 year

THE HUMAN BODY



THE FAMILY


grandparents
grandfather (grandpa)
grandmother (grandma)
my mother's husband
parents
my father's wife
father (dad)
mother (mom)
uncle
aunt
sister
me
brother
cousin
cousin
my parents' niece
my parents' nephew

COLORS


RED
red
PINK
pink
GREEN
green
LIME GREEN
lime green
TEAL
teal
BLUE
blue
NAVY
navy
YELLOW
yellow
PURPLE
purple
BROWN
brown
BEIGE
beige
ORANGE
orange
WHITE
white
BLACK
black
GRAY
gray

Index

A

above 182
academy 98
accept 50
achieve 122
across 92
actual 134
actually 164
advance 140
advantage 38
adventure 14
advertise 176
advice 158
advise 122
afraid 8
against 56
agree 8
ahead 182
alien 20
alive 116
allow 44
alone 74
along 158
already 122
amaze 134
among 20
amount 182
ancient 98
angry 8
announce 44
anymore 68
apartment 74
appear 128
appreciate 104
approach 14
appropriate 26
argue 110
arrange 50
arrive 8
article 74
artist 74
asleep 68
assign 176
associate 152
athlete 140
attack 8
attend 50
attention 158
attitude 74
attract 158
audience 176
available 104
average 140
avoid 26
aware 32

B

badly 32
balance 50
band 170
barely 170
base 128
basic 122
beach 56
beat 104
behave 26
behavior 140
behind 140
belief 182
belong 32
benefit 62
berry 68
beside 44
bit 122
bite 164
block 146
blood 80
board 98
bone 116
boring 170
bother 116
bottom 8
brain 128
breakfast 176
breathe 92
bright 104
burn 80

C

calm 26
cancel 170
captain 116
career 128
carefully 14
cause 38
celebrate 104
cell 80
center 182
century 98
certain 62
challenge 44
chance 62
characteristic 92
charge 134
chart 20
cheer 146
chemical 14
choice 38
claim 44
clerk 128
clever 8
climb 158
cloud 20
clue 98
coach 86
coast 164
collect 68
comfort 134
common 182
communicate 110
community 38
compare 74
compete 68
competition 176
complex 146
comprehend 20
concern 26
concert 98
conclusion 116
condition 44
consider 122
consume 92
contact 134
contain 80
content 26
continue 32
contrast 50
contribute 44
control 86
conversation 68
cool 176
correct 80
cost 182
county 98
course 140
create 14
creature 68
critic 146
crop 80
crowd 110
cruel 8
customer 134

D

damage 56
dead 38
deal 164
decision 68
deliver 134
demand 80
demonstrate 182
depend 110
describe 20
description 86
desert 164
destroy 122
determine 104
dictionary 98
difference 44
different 182
direct 86
disappear 104
discover 56
dish 110
distance 38

divide 44
doubt 116
driveway 170
drop 158

E

earn 134
earthquake 164
effect 62
effective 164
effort 128
either 68
else 104
emotion 56
empty 110
encourage 50
enter 128
entertain 122
environment 152
equal 80
error 32
escape 38
essential 62
event 146
ever 20
evidence 182
evil 14
exact 110
exam 86
examine 164
example 86
excellent 128
excite 92
exercise 146
exist 98
expect 26
experience 32
experiment 14
expert 44
explore 116
extra 122
extreme 92

F

face 38
factory 152
fail 20
fair 104
false 164
familiar 50
famous 45
far 62
fear 92
feature 152
feed 80
field 32
final 158
finally 8
fit 146
fix 56
flat 98
flow 104
focus 62
follow 38
force 45
foreign 116
forest 68
fortunate 92
forward 105
frank 56
frequently 26
fresh 110
friendly 20
friendship 146
fright 38
function 62
further 158

G

gain 176
garbage 170
gate 134
gather 110
gentleman 99
ghost 39
gift 164
glad 116
goal 122
grab 50
grade 20
grass 62
ground 69
guard 62
guide 146

H

habit 26
hang 50
happen 92
harm 45
hero 128
hidden 99
hide 8
hill 105
hole 80
honesty 183
however 116
huge 50
hunger 165
hunt 9
hurry 128
hurt 32

I

identify 56
idiom 183
image 63
imagine 165
immediate 63
imply 158
importance 176
include 134
increase 81
independent 183
indicate 110
individual 39
inform 129
injustice 117
inside 183
instance 152
instead 20
instruct 26
instrument 170
international 117
introduce 69
involve 152
island 56
issue 27
item 111

J

journey 165
judge 74
judgment 32

K

kill 14
knowledge 176

L

laboratory 14
lack 146
later 129
laugh 14
lawyer 117
lay 45
leave 129
length 92
level 105
library 21
lie 123
likely 32
limit 86
list 170
local 86
locate 129

Index

lone 105
lord 81
lot 9
loud 15
lower 140

M

magazine 74
magic 170
magical 86
mail 86
maintain 158
major 176
manage 135
marry 69
master 183
match 140
material 74
maybe 99
meal 74
mean 177
meat 123
medicine 152
member 140
memory 183
mental 140
mention 117
message 170
method 75
middle 9
mistake 93
mix 152
moment 9
mystery 135

N

necessary 51
neighbor 75
neither 159
nervous 15
noise 15
none 27
normal 33
notice 171
novel 87
nurse 129

O

observe 93
occur 135
ocean 56
offer 111
officer 99
operation 129
opinion 123
opportunity 93
opposite 135
organize 152
original 99
otherwise 159
outline 87
owe 81
own 171

P

pain 129
passage 147
passenger 141
patient 27
pattern 51
peace 45
perform 147
perhaps 57
period 152
personality 141
pet 39
physical 159
planet 21
plate 135
pleasant 57
pleased 9
poem 141
poet 87
pole 141
policy 117
populate 153
position 81
positive 27
pound 99
predict 171
prefer 177
prepare 69
president 177
pressure 147
prevent 57
price 111
primary 63
prince 45
print 87
prize 93
probable 147
process 99
produce 153
product 111
professional 75
professor 171
profit 75
progress 177
project 15
promise 9
proper 183
property 111
propose 51
protect 45
proud 63
prove 159
public 147
publish 99
puddle 105
punish 27
purchase 111
purpose 51
puzzle 165

Q

quality 75
quite 165

R

race 93
raise 81
range 153
rare 33
rather 165
reach 39
react 159
real 123
realize 93
receive 135
recognize 153
recommend 111
reflect 123
refuse 129
regard 123
regular 153
relax 33
release 51
remain 63
remove 141
reply 9
report 21
represent 27
request 33
require 51
reside 33
respect 177
respond 93
response 105
responsible 81
rest 63
result 33
return 39
reward 135
rich 177
ride 159
risk 93
rock 57
roll 33
rush 171

S

safe 9
safety 141
sail 69
save 57
scan 183
scare 15
scene 87
schedule 171
season 105
secret 15
section 183
select 111
sense 45
separate 63
serious 69
serve 123
set 135
several 21
shake 27
shape 75
share 171
sheet 87
shoot 141
shout 15
sight 81
sign 153
silly 87
since 33
single 51
site 63
situated 159
skill 177
smell 15
social 117
society 159
solution 105
solve 21
somehow 177
sound 141
space 75
specific 165
speech 117
spend 69
spot 81
spread 27
staff 117
stage 171
stair 75
standard 159
steal 135
step 57
still 57
store 87
storm 171
strange 69
strength 177
strike 147
stroll 27
structure 81
success 51
sudden 45
suddenly 21
suffer 87
suggest 159
support 147
suppose 21
surface 183
survive 39
swim 141
symbol 75

T

tail 63
task 147
taste 57
tear 51
technology 87
term 147
terrible 15
theater 99
theory 51
therefore 45
thief 135
thin 75
though 129
throw 57
tip 153
tool 111
tour 165
toward 117
tradition 153
trash 153
treat 111
trick 9
trip 165
trouble 63
truth 69

U

unite 147
universe 22
upset 39

V

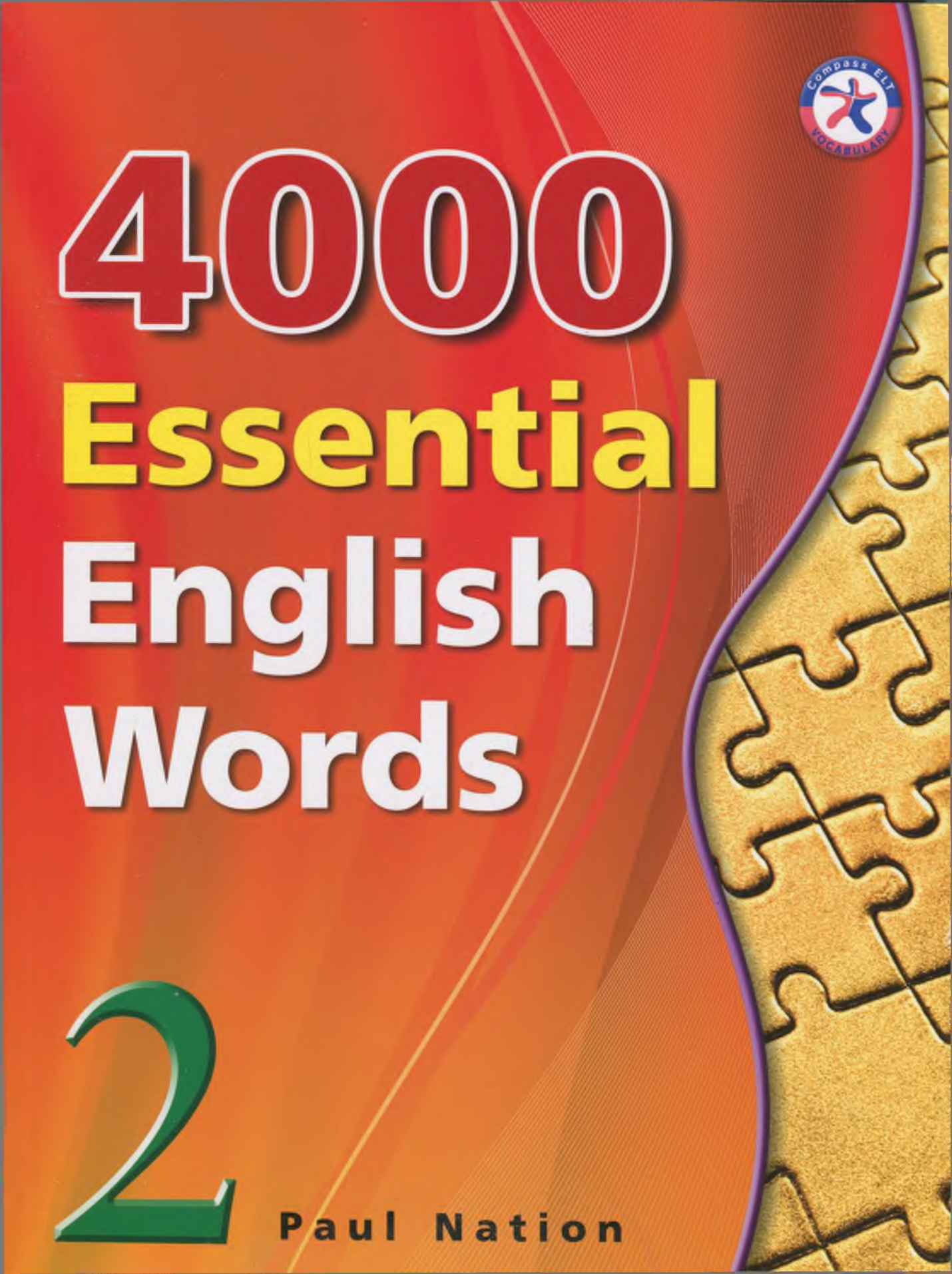
value 165
various 129
vegetable 123
view 21
village 27
visible 33
voice 39
vote 177

W

wake 69
war 123
waste 105
wave 57
wealth 99
weather 39
web 141
well 9
whether 105
whole 81
wide 153
wild 33
wise 39
within 171
wonder 93
wood 117
worse 15
worth 23

Y

yet 93



4000 Essential English Words

2

Paul Nation

4000 Essential English Words 2

Paul Nation

© 2009 Compass Publishing

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without prior permission in writing from the publisher.

Acquisitions Editor: Fidel Cruz
Project Coordinator: Annie Cho
Design: Design Plus

email: info@compasspub.com
http://www.compasspub.com

ISBN: 978-1-59966-403-3

15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8
15 14 13 12 11

Photo Credits

All images © Shutterstock, Inc. except: pp. 36, 42, 48, 90, 162 © iStock International Inc.

Elbarskhan & mmh

mmh

Compass Publishing

4000 Essential English Words

2

Paul Nation

Elbarskhan & mmh

Table of Contents

Introduction		6
Unit	**Target Words**	**Page**
1	anxious, awful, consist, desire, eager, household, intent, landscape, lift, load, lung, motion, pace, polite, possess, rapidly, remark, seek, shine, spill	8
2	bring, castle, command, counsel, ensure, explosion, jewelry, land, meteor, monster, northern, remote, southern, statue, steam, submit, temple, upper, weed, wing	14
3	arrow, battle, bow, brave, chief, disadvantage, enemy, entrance, hardly, intend, laughter, log, military, obey, secure, steady, trust, twist, unless, weapon	20
4	chest, confidence, consequence, disaster, disturb, estimate, honor, impress, marathon, narrow, pale, rough, satisfy, scream, sensitive, shade, supplement, terror, threat, victim	26
5	ancestor, angle, boot, border, congratulate, frame, heaven, incredible, legend, praise, proceed, pure, relative, senior, silent, sink, superior, surround, thick, wrap	32
6	abroad, anger, bride, brief, chase, disappoint, dive, exchange, favor, fee, forever, guy, lovely, mood, palace, permit, protest, sculpture, tribe, youth	38
7	basis, biology, cage, colleague, colony, debate, depart, depress, factual, fascinate, mission, nevertheless, occupation, overseas, persuade, route, ruins, scholar, significant, volcano	44
8	broad, bush, capable, cheat, concentrate, conclude, confident, considerable, convey, definite, delight, destination, dictate, edge, path, resort, shadow, succeed, suspect, valley	50
9	admire, aid, attempt, authority, capital, cooperate, defend, destruction, disorder, division, enable, frustrate, govern, plenty, relieve, reputation, royal, slave, struggle, stupid	56
10	citizen, council, declare, enormous, extraordinary, fog, funeral, giant, impression, income, mad, ought, resist, reveal, rid, sword, tale, trap, trial, violent	62
11	admission, astronomy, blame, chemistry, despite, dinosaur, exhibit, fame, forecast, genius, gentle, geography, interfere, lightly, principal, row, shelf, spite, super, wet	68
12	abuse, afford, bake, bean, candle, convert, debt, decrease, fault, fund, generous, ingredient, insist, mess, metal, monitor, oppose, passive, quantity, sue	74
13	anxiety, army, billion, carve, consult, emergency, fortune, guarantee, hike, initial, intense, lend, peak, potential, pride, proof, quit, spin, tiny, tutor	80
14	apparent, blind, calculate, chat, commit, compose, dormitory, exhaust, greenhouse, ignore, obvious, physics, portion, remind, secretary, severe, talent, thesis, uniform, vision	86
15	absorb, boss, committee, contract, crew, devote, dig, dine, donate, double, elevate, flavor, foundation , generation, handle, layer, mud, smooth, soil, unique	92

Elbarskhan & mmh

Unit	Target Words	Page
16	chamber, deny, document, emphasize, fever, flu, freeze, gesture, interrupt, last, likeness , moreover, perspective, rational, recover, rely, shock, shy, stare, thus	98
17	aim, attach, bet, carriage, classic, commute, confirm, criticize, differ, expense, formal, height, invent, junior, labor, mechanic, prime, shift, signal, sincere	104
18	ability, agriculture, cartoon, ceiling, convince, curious, delay, diary, element, faith, grain, greet, investigate, joy, label, monk, odd, pause, priest, profession	110
19	adopt, beg, beyond, costume, exclaim, extend, fool, forbid, illustrate, indeed, interpret, kindly, motive, nest, origin, reception, reject, silence, stream, tone	116
20	accomplish, approve, approximate, barrier, detect, duty, elementary, failure, gradual, immigrant, insert, instant, poverty, pretend, rank, recognition, refrigerate, rent, retire, statistic	122
21	astronaut, awake, courage, float, grant, gravity, jewel, miner, mineral, participate, permission, pour, presence, raw, satellite, scale, skip, stretch, telescope, underground	128
22	alarm, apart, arrest, award, breed, bucket, contest, convict, garage, journalist, pup, qualify, repair, resume, rob, slip, somewhat, stable, tissue, yard	134
23	alike, annoy, architecture, artificial, chain, distinct, distinguish, dust, excitement, heal, inherit, manner, mount, roof, shortage, solid, stock, substance, tomb, wound	140
24	bath, bend, chew, disabled, fantastic, fiction, flag, inspect, journal, liquid, marvel, nutrient, overcome, recall, regret, soul, sufficient, surgery, tough, tube	146
25	admit, bin, bowl, cabin, cash, criminal, dozen, elder, facial, fence, inspire, mere, neat, occasion, penalty, rude, settle, vehicle, wallet, yell	152
26	accuse, adjust, amuse, coral, cotton, crash, deck, engage, firm, fuel, grand, hurricane, loss, plain, reef, shut, strict, surf, task, zone	158
27	apology, bold, capture, cardinal, duke, expose, guilty, hire, innocent, jail, minister, ordinary, permanent, preserve, pronounce, resemble, symptom, tobacco, twin, witch	164
28	accompany, bare, branch, breath, bridge, cast, dare, electronic, inn, net, philosophy, pot, seed, sharp, sort, subtract, tight, virtual, weigh, whisper	170
29	abstract, annual, clay, cloth, curtain, deserve, feather, fertile, flood, furniture, grave, ideal, intelligence, nowadays, obtain, religious, romantic, shell, shore, wheel	176
30	appeal, assume, borrow, client, downtown, dull, embarrass, fare, former, formula, found, invest, loan, practical, quarter, salary, scholarship, temporary, treasure, urge	182

Appendix 188 Index 192

Introduction

About the Vocabulary

The 600 words in each book of this series along with the additional target words presented in the appendices included in the first three books of the series are the most useful words in English. They were found by analysis of a collection of English course books from various levels in the primary, secondary and tertiary school systems. The words included in this series were chosen because they occurred many times in different levels of these materials. Because of the way that they were chosen, these words have the following characteristics:

1 They are useful in both spoken and written English. No matter what English course you are studying, the words in these books will be of value to you.

2 Each word in these books is a high-frequency word. This means that the effort in learning the words is well repaid by the number of times learners have a chance to encounter or use them.

3 These books as a whole cover a large proportion of the words in any spoken or written text. They cover at least 80% of the words in newspapers and academic texts, and at least 90% of the words in novels. They also cover at least 90% of the words in conversation.

About the Books

The activities in these books are specially designed to make use of important learning conditions. Firstly, the words are introduced using sentence definitions and an example sentence. The activities that follow in the units encourage learners to recall the meanings and forms of the words. Some activities also make the learners think about the meaning of the words in the context of a sentence—a sentence different from the sentences that occurred in the introduction of the words. Moreover, each unit ends with a story containing the target words. While reading the story, the learners have to recall the meanings of the words and suit them to the context of the story. Such activities help learners develop a better understanding of a common meaning for a given word which fits the different uses.

Illustrations for each target word are provided to help learners visualize the word as it is being used in the example sentence. These word/image associations aim to help students grasp the meaning of the word as well as recall the word later.

It should be noted that words have more than one grammatical category. However, this series focuses on the word's most common form. This is mentioned to remind learners that just because a word is labeled and utilized as a noun in this series does not mean that it can never be used in another form such as an adjective. This series has simply focused on the word in the form that it is most likely to be expressed.

Supporting Learning with Outside Activities

A well-balanced language course provides four major opportunities for learning: learning through input, learning through output, deliberate learning, and fluency development. The highly structured activities in these books support all four types of learning opportunities. In addition, learning can further be supported through the following activities:

1 Have students create vocabulary cards with one word from the unit on one side of the card and the translation of the word in the student's first language on the other side. Students should use the cards for study in free moments during the day. Over several weeks, students will find that quick repeated studying for brief periods of time is more effective than studying for hours at one sitting.

2 Assign graded readers at students' appropriate levels. Reading such books provides both enjoyment as well as meaning-focused input which will help the words stick in students' memory.

3 Practice reading fluency to promote faster recall of word meaning for both sight recognition and usage. Compass Publishing's *Reading for Speed and Fluency* is a good resource for reading fluency material.

4 Include listening, speaking, and writing activities in classes. Reinforcement of the high-frequency vocabulary presented in this series is important across all the four language skills.

Author **Paul Nation**

Paul Nation is professor of Applied Linguistics in the School of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies at Victoria University of Wellington, New Zealand. He has taught in Indonesia, Thailand, the United States, Finland, and Japan. His specialist interests are language teaching methodology and vocabulary learning.



UNIT 1

Word List



anxious [ænkʃəs] *adj.*

When a person is **anxious,** they worry that something bad will happen.
→ *She was **anxious** about not making her appointment on time.*



awful [ɔ:fəl] *adj.*

When something is **awful,** it is very bad.
→ *Her performance last night was **awful**.*



consist [kənsíst] *v.*

To **consist** of is to be made of parts or things.
→ *Today's choices for lunch **consisted** of pizza, hamburgers, and hot dogs.*



desire [dizáiər] *v.*

To **desire** is to want something.
→ *My sister **desires** a big house and lots of money.*



eager [í:gər] *adj.*

When a person is **eager** about something, they are excited about it.
→ *The man was **eager** to talk about the good news.*



household [háushòuld] *n.*

A **household** is all the people who live in one house.
→ *Our **household** is made up of my father, my mother and me.*



intent [intént] *n.*

An **intent** is a plan to do something.
→ *Her **intent** is to visit Italy next summer.*



landscape [lændskèip] *n.*

A **landscape** is how an area of land looks.
→ *The **landscape** of the country is very green.*



lift [lift] *v.*

To **lift** something is to move it higher.
→ *The man tried to **lift** the box.*



load [loud] *v.*

To **load** is to put objects into something.
→ *The man **loaded** the boxes into a truck.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



lung [lʌŋ] *n.*

A **lung** is the organ in the body that fills with air when breathing.

→ *Having strong **lungs** is necessary for a healthy life.*



motion [móuʃən] *n.*

A **motion** is a movement that someone makes.

→ *The police officer made a **motion** with his hand.*



pace [peis] *n.*

The **pace** of something is the speed at which it happens.

→ *I ran the race at a slower **pace** than my friend.*



polite [pəláit] *adj.*

When someone is **polite**, they are acting in a thoughtful way.

→ *The boy was very **polite**: he behaved very thoughtfully.*



possess [pəzés] *v.*

To **possess** something is to have it or own it.

→ *My uncle **possesses** three sheep, a chicken, a cow and a dog.*



rapidly [rǽpidli] *adv.*

When something happens **rapidly**, it happens very fast.

→ *The train moved **rapidly** on the tracks.*



remark [rimɑ́:rk] *v.*

To **remark** is to say something.

→ *The teacher **remarked** on how quickly the students were learning.*



seek [si:k] *v.*

To **seek** is to look for something.

→ *If I have a problem, I **seek** my sister's advice.*



shine [ʃain] *v.*

To **shine** is to make a bright light.

→ *The candles are **shining** in the dark room.*



spill [spil] *v.*

To **spill** is to have something fall out of its container.

→ *I **spilled** the coffee on the table.*

Word List



bring [briŋ] *v.*

To **bring** means to take someone or something to a person or place.
→ *Oscar will **bring** in all the boxes.*



castle [kæsl] *n.*

A **castle** is a building with strong walls where royalty usually lives.
→ *The **castle** was built many years ago.*



command [kəmænd] *v.*

To **command** someone is to tell them to do something.
→ *The general **commanded** his army to attack.*



counsel [káunsəl] *v.*

To **counsel** someone is to listen and give advice about a problem.
→ *The teacher **counseled** the girl about her troubles.*



ensure [inʃúər] *v.*

To **ensure** is to make certain that something happens.
→ *Eating good food **ensures** that we stay healthy.*



explosion [iksplóuʒən] *n.*

An **explosion** is a violent burst, usually with a loud sound.
→ *A nuclear **explosion** can cause great damage.*



jewelry [dʒú:əlri] *n.*

Jewelry is something that people wear like earrings or necklaces.
→ *The woman looked beautiful with her nice dress and **jewelry**.*



land [lænd] *v.*

To **land** means to come to the ground usually from a ship or aircraft.
→ *The parachutist **landed** safely on the ground.*



meteor [mí:tiər] *n.*

A ***meteor*** is a rock from outer space that falls to Earth.
→ *We saw a **meteor** in the sky last night.*



monster [mánstər] *n.*

A **monster** is any imaginary frightening creature that looks strange.
→ *The **monster** scared everyone in the village.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



northern [nɔ́:rðə:rn] *adj.*

If something is **northern**, it is in the direction of north.
→ *It is much colder in **northern** countries than it is here.*



remote [rimóut] *adj.*

If something is **remote**, it is very far away and difficult to get to.
→ *It took many days to get to the **remote** island.*



southern [sʌ́ðə:rn] *adj.*

If something is **southern**, it is in the direction of south.
→ *Taegu is located in the **southern** part of the Korean peninsula.*



statue [stǽtʃu:] *n.*

A **statue** is an image of a person or animal made of stone or metal.
→ *I saw a beautiful **statue** of a lion today.*



steam [sti:m] *n.*

Steam is water that has become hot and has turned into a misty gas.
→ *We could see the **steam** rise from the boiling water.*



submit [səbmít] *v.*

To **submit** to someone is to agree to do what they tell you to do.
→ *She **submitted** to her mother's wishes and did her homework.*



temple [témpəl] *n.*

A **temple** is a building that is used for religious purposes.
→ *The people visited the **temple** to pray.*



upper [ʌ́pər] *adj.*

Upper means higher in position or place.
→ *A home's attic is at the **upper** part of the structure.*



weed [wi:d] *n.*

A **weed** is a plant, especially one that is not useful or wanted.
→ *The yard of the house was full of ugly **weeds**.*



wing [wiŋ] *n.*

A **wing** is the part of an animal that lets it fly.
→ *The bird used its **wings** to fly across the water.*

Word List



arrow [ærou] *n.*

An **arrow** is a thin, straight stick shot from a bow.
→ *The **arrow** flew through the air and hit the target.*



battle [bætl] *n.*

A **battle** is a fight between two armies during a war.
→ *The **battle** lasted for many days.*



bow [bou] *n.*

A **bow** is a weapon made of curved wood and string that shoots arrows.
→ *He went hunting with a **bow** and arrow.*



brave [breiv] *adj.*

When people are **brave**, they are not afraid to face pain or danger.
→ *The **brave** firefighter saved the girl from the burning building.*



chief [tʃi:f] *n.*

A **chief** is the leader of a group of people.
→ *The **chief** led the people through the mountains.*



disadvantage [disədvæntidʒ] *n.*

A **disadvantage** is a situation where someone is likely to lose.
→ *Mike had a **disadvantage** in the race since he hurt his knee.*



enemy [énəmi] *n.*

An **enemy** is a country that is fighting another country during a war.
→ *The **enemy** prepared to attack the kingdom.*



entrance [éntrəns] *n.*

An **entrance** is a place where someone can enter an area.
→ *The gate was locked, so Bill had to find a different **entrance**.*



hardly [hɑ́:rdli] *adv.*

If something **hardly** happens, it almost does not happen at all.
→ *I **hardly** saw the concert since I had to leave early.*



intend [intɛ́nd] *v.*

To **intend** to do something means to plan to do it.
→ *I **intend** to finish college in three years.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



laughter [læftə:r] *n.*

Laughter is the sound produced by laughing about something funny.
→ *Susan's joke made her classmates burst into **laughter**.*



log [lɔ(:)g] *n.*

A **log** is a thick piece of wood that is cut from a tree.
→ *The fire was too small, so we added another **log** to it.*



military [militèri] *n.*

The **military** is the armed forces of a country.
→ *I joined the **military** after I finished high school.*



obey [oubéi] *v.*

To **obey** means to follow what a law or a person says you must do.
→ *My little sister did not **obey** my mother. Now she is in trouble.*



secure [sikjúə:r] *v.*

To **secure** something means to get it after a lot of effort.
→ *I was able to **secure** a good grade on my test after weeks of studying.*



steady [stédi] *adj.*

When someone or something is **steady**, they are under control.
→ *The problem was hard but she remained **steady** and solved it.*



trust [trʌst] *v.*

To **trust** is to believe that someone is honest and will do what is right.
→ *I **trust** my friends; they don't tell my secrets to other people.*



twist [twist] *v.*

To **twist** something is to wrap it around itself or another thing.
→ *She **twisted** the spaghetti around her fork.*



unless [ənlés] *conj.*

Unless means if not or except when.
→ ***Unless** you clean your room, you cannot play with your friends.*



weapon [wépən] *n.*

A **weapon** is an object that can be used to hurt people.
→ *Swords have been used as **weapons** for thousands of years.*

Word List



chest [tʃest] *n.*

The **chest** is the front part of a person's body under the neck.

→ *The water in the lake was as high as my **chest**.*



confidence [kánfidəns] *n.*

If you have **confidence** about something, you are sure of it.

→ *I have **confidence** that I did well on the test.*



consequence [kánsikwèns] *n.*

A **consequence** is a result of a choice or action.

→ *As a **consequence** of missing my bus, I had to find another way to work.*



disaster [dizǽstər] *n.*

A **disaster** is a really bad thing that happens.

→ *When the car crashed, it was a **disaster**.*



disturb [distə́:rb] *v.*

To **disturb** someone means to upset them.

→ *The loud noise **disturbed** me while I was working.*



estimate [éstəmèit] *v.*

To **estimate** something means to make a guess about it.

→ *The boy **estimated** that he was one meter tall.*



honor [ánər] *v.*

When you **honor** people or things, you show respect for them.

→ *I **honor** my science teacher by working hard in class.*



impress [imprés] *v.*

To **impress** someone means to make that person proud.

→ *He was able to **impress** the girls with his new dance.*



marathon [mærəθàn] *n.*

A **marathon** is a very long foot race just over 42 kilometers.

→ *I ran a **marathon**, and now my legs are tired.*



narrow [nærou] *adj.*

When something is **narrow**, it is very thin.

→ *The bridge is too **narrow** for a car to drive over.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



pale [peil] *adj.*
When something is **pale**, it does not have a bright color.
→ *The girl's skin was very **pale**.*



rough [rʌf] *adj.*
When something is **rough**, it is not even or smooth.
→ *The **rough** ground hurt my feet.*



satisfy [sætisfài] *v.*
To **satisfy** someone means to make them happy.
→ *It will **satisfy** my teacher if I finish all my homework.*



scream [skri:m] *v.*
To **scream** means to make a loud noise with your mouth.
→ *The girl saw a spider and **screamed**.*



sensitive [sénsətiv] *adj.*
When someone or something is **sensitive**, they are easily hurt.
→ *My teeth are **sensitive** to cold things.*



shade [ʃeid] *n.*
The **shade** is a dark area that something makes when it blocks the sun.
→ *It was hot outside, so the boy sat in the **shade** of a tree.*



supplement [sʌ́pləmənt] *v.*
To **supplement** something is to add something else to it in a good way.
→ *He **supplements** his diet with fresh fruits.*



terror [térə:r] *n.*
When someone feels **terror**, they are scared.
→ *I felt a sense of **terror** when the tiger chased me.*



threat [θret] *n.*
A **threat** is something bad that might happen.
→ *Due to the dark clouds, there was a **threat** of a bad storm.*



victim [víktim] *n.*
A **victim** is a person that had something bad happen to them.
→ *I was a **victim** of a robbery.*

UNIT 5

Word List



ancestor [ǽnsestər] *n.*

An **ancestor** is a family member from the past.
→ *My **ancestors** came from Germany.*



angle [ǽŋgl] *n.*

An **angle** is the direction from which you look at something.
→ *The giraffe turned its head to see from another **angle**.*



boot [bu:t] *n.*

A **boot** is a heavy shoe that goes over your ankle.
→ *He wore **boots** so that his feet wouldn't get wet.*



border [bɔ́:rdər] *n.*

A **border** is the edge of an area.
→ *The postcard had a pretty green **border** of pine needles.*



congratulate [kəngrǽtʃəlèit] *v.*

To **congratulate** someone is to tell them that you are happy for them.
→ *Bill and Angela **congratulated** each other on a job well done.*



frame [freim] *n.*

A **frame** is a border for a picture or mirror.
→ *I have to get a **frame** for my friend's picture.*



heaven [hévən] *n.*

Heaven is the place that some people believe people go when they die.
→ *When I die, I hope that I go to **heaven**.*



incredible [inkrédəbl] *adj.*

If someone or something is **incredible**, it is hard to believe they are true.
→ *I have an **incredible** story to tell you about my vacation.*



legend [lédʒənd] *n.*

A **legend** is a story from the past.
→ *There is a well-known **legend** about a king and his queen.*



praise [preiz] *v.*

To **praise** is to show that you like someone or something.
→ *The coach **praised** both athletes after a good practice.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



proceed [prəsi:d] *v.*

To **proceed** is to go in a certain direction.

→ *My son and I **proceeded** to the beach so we could go fishing.*



pure [pjuər] *adj.*

If something is **pure**, it is very clear and beautiful.

→ *The rose was **pure**. It had no dirt or imperfections.*



relative [rélətiv] *n.*

A **relative** is a family member.

→ *My **relatives** came by to see the new baby.*



senior [sí:njər] *adj.*

If one is **senior**, they are the oldest or have been there the longest.

→ *Because he got his job first, Bob is the **senior** chef.*



silent [sáilənt] *adj.*

If someone or something is **silent**, they make no sound.

→ *Since no one was home, the house was **silent**.*



sink [siŋk] *v.*

To **sink** into something is to slowly fall into it.

→ *The boat had a hole in it, and it **sank** into the ocean.*



superior [səpíəriər] *adj.*

If someone or something is **superior**, they are better than another.

→ *I think cooking outdoors is **superior** to cooking indoors.*



surround [səráund] *v.*

To **surround** something is to close in on it from all sides.

→ *We **surrounded** the suspect on all four sides.*



thick [θik] *adj.*

If something is **thick**, it is wide and solid.

→ *The fog was so **thick** that I couldn't see through it.*



wrap [ræp] *v.*

To **wrap** is to cover something on all sides.

→ *I **wrapped** his gift and put a bow on it.*

Word List



abroad [əbrɔ́:d] *adv.*

If someone goes or travels **abroad**, they go to another country.
→ *My brother wants to go **abroad** next year.*



anger [ǽŋgər] *v.*

To **anger** someone is to make them mad.
→ *It **angers** me when people are rude.*



bride [braid] *n.*

A **bride** is a woman who is getting married or has just gotten married.
→ *The **bride** looked beautiful in her wedding dress.*



brief [bri:f] *adj.*

If something is **brief**, it only lasts for a short time.
→ *The meeting this afternoon was very **brief**.*



chase [tʃeis] *v.*

To **chase** someone or something is to follow them in order to catch them.
→ *I was **chased** by an angry native.*



disappoint [disəpɔ́int] *v.*

To **disappoint** is to make one feel sad or unsatisfied.
→ *I do not want to **disappoint** my family, so I try to do well at school.*



dive [daiv] *v.*

To **dive** is to jump into water.
→ *I will **dive** into the lake once we get there.*



exchange [ikstʃéindʒ] *v.*

To **exchange** means to give something for another thing in return.
→ *I **exchanged** my foreign money for American dollars.*



favor [féivər] *n.*

A **favor** is something you do for someone to help them.
→ *Can you do me a **favor** and turn off the lights?*



fee [fi:] *n.*

A **fee** is an amount of money that a person or company asks for a service.
→ *I had to pay an hourly **fee** to speak with my lawyer.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



forever [fərévəːr] *adv.*
If something lasts **forever**, it means it lasts for all time.
→ *The young couple promised that they would love each other **forever**.*



guy [gai] *n.*
A **guy** is an informal way to call a man.
→ *The **guy** at the flower shop was really helpful today.*



lovely [lʌ́vli] *adj.*
If people or things are **lovely**, they are good-looking or beautiful.
→ *The trees look **lovely** in the fall.*



mood [muːd] *n.*
A **mood** is the way someone is feeling.
→ *I am in a good **mood** because I did well on my math test.*



palace [pǽlis] *n.*
A **palace** is a very large building. It is often the home of a royal family.
→ *The king and queen live in a beautiful **palace**.*



permit [pəːrmít] *v.*
To **permit** something is to let someone do it.
→ *I was sick, so my mother **permitted** me to stay home from school.*



protest [prətést] *v.*
To **protest** something is to argue about it with someone.
→ *The people **protested** the decision of the president.*



sculpture [skʌ́lptʃəːr] *n.*
A **sculpture** is a piece of art that is made from wood, clay, or stone.
→ *We saw an old **sculpture** of Buddha at the museum.*



tribe [traib] *n.*
A **tribe** is a group of people who live in the same culture.
→ *There's a small **tribe** of people who live in the mountains of Spain.*



youth [juːθ] *n.*
Youth is a time in people's lives when they are young.
→ *My mother wanted to be a nurse in her **youth**.*

Word List



basis [bèisis] *n.*

To do something on time's **basis** is how often you do it.
→ *My grandfather gets his hearing checked on a yearly **basis**.*



biology [baiálədʒi] *n.*

Biology is the study of living things.
→ *We learned about the human heart in **biology** class.*



cage [keidʒ] *n.*

A **cage** is something that holds an animal so it cannot leave.
→ *We put the parrots in their **cage** at night.*



colleague [káli:g] *n.*

A **colleague** is somebody you work with.
→ *My **colleague** helped me finish the job.*



colony [kάləni] *n.*

A **colony** is a country controlled by another country.
→ *The USA was at one time a **colony** of Great Britain.*



debate [dibèit] *v.*

To **debate** is to seriously discuss something with someone.
→ *The husband and wife **debated** over which TV to buy.*



depart [dipά:rt] *v.*

To **depart** is to leave some place so you can go to another place.
→ *The plane **departed** for Italy at 3:00 this afternoon.*



depress [diprés] *v.*

To **depress** someone is to make them sad.
→ *The bad news from work **depressed** the man.*



factual [fæktʃuəl] *adj.*

When something is **factual**, it is true.
→ *John learns about history from **factual** books.*



fascinate [fæsənèit] *v.*

To **fascinate** someone is to make them really like something.
→ *The kitten was **fascinated** by the ball of yarn.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



mission [míʃən] *n.*

A **mission** is an important job that is sometimes far away.
→ *The woman's **mission** was to help sick people.*



nevertheless [nèvə:rðəlés] *adv.*

You use **nevertheless** to show that something goes against a fact.
→ *He is usually friendly. **Nevertheless**, he wasn't this afternoon.*



occupation [ɑ̀kjəpéiʃən] *n.*

An **occupation** is a person's job.
→ *My father's **occupation** is a dentist.*



overseas [òuvərsí:z] *adv.*

If you go **overseas**, you go to a country on the other side of an ocean.
→ *John often goes **overseas** for vacations.*



persuade [pə:rswéid] *v.*

To ***persuade*** someone is to make them agree to do something.
→ *The children **persuaded** their parents to buy them gifts.*



route [ru:t] *n.*

A **route** is the way you go from one place to another.
→ *I saw many new houses along the **route** to the city.*



ruins [rú:inz] *n.*

Ruins are old buildings that are not used anymore.
→ *I visited some interesting **ruins** in Greece.*



scholar [skɑ́lə:r] *n.*

A **scholar** is a person who studies something and knows much about it.
→ *The **scholar** knew much about art history.*



significant [signífikənt] *adj.*

When someone or something is **significant**, they are important.
→ *I read many **significant** novels as a literature major in university.*



volcano [vɑlkéinou] *n.*

A **volcano** is a mountain with a hole on top where hot liquid comes out.
→ *When the **volcano** erupted, smoke and heat filled the air.*

Word List



broad [brɔ:d] *adj.*

If something is **broad**, it is wide.

→ *The river is very long and **broad**.*



bush [buʃ] *n.*

A **bush** is a plant with many thin branches. It is smaller than a tree.

→ *My dad and I planted some small **bushes** around the house.*



capable [kéipəbəl] *adj.*

If someone or something is **capable** of something, they can do it.

→ *The Olympic athlete is **capable** of lifting a lot of weight.*



cheat [tʃi:t] *v.*

To **cheat** is to be dishonest so that you can win or do well.

→ *They **cheated** on the test by sharing answers.*



concentrate [kánsəntrèit] *v.*

To **concentrate** on someone or something is to give your full attention.

→ *I could not **concentrate** on my homework because the room was so loud.*



conclude [kənklú:d] *v.*

To **conclude** is to arrive at a logical end by looking at evidence.

→ *I saw crumbs on my dog's face, so I **concluded** that he ate my cookie.*



confident [kánfidənt] *adj.*

Confident means that one believes they can do something without failing.

→ *She was **confident** she could climb the mountain due to her training.*



considerable [kənsídərəbəl] *adj.*

If something is **considerable**, it is large in size, amount or extent.

→ *They paid a **considerable** amount of money for that car.*



convey [kənvéi] *v.*

To **convey** is to communicate or make ideas known.

→ *That picture of a crying child **conveys** a feeling of sadness.*



definite [défənit] *adj.*

If something is **definite**, it is certain or sure to be true.

→ *There is a **definite** connection between hard work and success.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



delight [dilάit] *n.*

Delight is a feeling of being very happy with something.
→ *He felt such **delight** after getting a promotion at work.*



destination [dèstənéiʃən] *n.*

A **destination** is the place where someone or something is going to.
→ *The **destination** of this plane is Munich, Germany.*



dictate [díkteit] *v.*

To **dictate** something is to read it aloud so it can be written down.
→ *He **dictated** his speech so his secretary could write it down.*



edge [edʒ] *n.*

The **edge** of something is the part of it that is farthest from the center.
→ *He ran to the **edge** of the cliff.*



path [pæθ] *n.*

A **path** is a way from one place to another that people can walk along.
→ *We followed a **path** through the woods.*



resort [rizɔ́:rt] *v.*

To **resort** to something is to depend on it in order to solve a problem.
→ *I hope they don't **resort** to violence to end the argument.*



shadow [ʃædou] *n.*

A **shadow** is the dark area that is made when something blocks light.
→ *The man's **shadow** was taller than he was.*



succeed [səksi:d] *v.*

To **succeed** is to complete something that you planned or tried to do.
→ *He will continue to work on the robot until he **succeeds**.*



suspect [səspékt] *v.*

To **suspect** something is to believe that it is true.
→ *I **suspect** that those kids stole the money.*



valley [væli] *n.*

A **valley** is a low area of land between two mountains or hills.
→ *We looked at the **valley** below from the top of the mountain.*

Word List



admire [ədmáiər] *v.*

To **admire** someone is to like them for what they do.
→ *I **admire** my brother for his hard work.*



aid [eid] *v.*

To **aid** someone is to help them when they need something.
→ *The doctor **aided** the boy after his accident.*



attempt [ətémpt] *v.*

To **attempt** something is to try to do that thing.
→ *I am **attempting** to learn English.*



authority [əɔ́:rəti] *n.*

Authority is the power that someone has because of their position.
→ *The policeman has **authority** on the streets.*



capital [kǽpitl] *n.*

A **capital** is an important city where a country's leaders live and work.
→ *We will visit the **capital** to learn about our government.*



cooperate [kouɑ́pərèit] *v.*

To **cooperate** is to work together to do something.
→ *The students **cooperated** to clean up the classroom.*



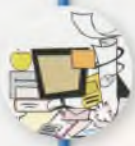
defend [difénd] *v.*

To **defend** someone or something is to protect them from attack.
→ *The soldiers **defended** the town from the invaders.*



destruction [distrʌ́kʃən] *n.*

Destruction is damage to something so bad that it can't be fixed.
→ *After the big fire, there was much **destruction** in the city.*



disorder [disɔ́:rdər] *n.*

Disorder is a lack of order, or a complete mess.
→ *The teacher's desk had many papers in **disorder**.*



division [diviʒən] *n.*

A **division** is the act of making smaller groups out of a larger one.
→ *The chart had six **divisions** which all had different colors.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



enable [inéibəl] *v.*

To **enable** a person is to make it possible for them to do something.
→ *Having the key **enabled** us to open the door.*



frustrate [frʌ́streit] *v.*

To **frustrate** is to prevent someone from fulfilling their desire.
→ *The machine **frustrated** me because I could not fix it.*



govern [gʌ́vərn] *v.*

To **govern** is to control the public business of a country, state, or city.
→ *The United States is **governed** from the White House.*



plenty [plénti] *n.*

To have **plenty** of something is to have more than you need.
→ *The school had **plenty** of books for the students to read.*



relieve [rilíːv] *v.*

To **relieve** someone is to make them feel less pain.
→ *The medicine **relieved** the sick boy.*



reputation [rèpjətéiʃən] *n.*

Reputation is the opinion that people have about someone.
→ *The doctor had a **reputation** for helping people.*



royal [rɔ́iəl] *adj.*

Royal describes something that belongs to a king or queen.
→ *The king sat upon the **royal** throne.*



slave [sleiv] *n.*

A **slave** is a person who is not free and must work for someone else.
→ *The **slave** worked very hard all day long.*



struggle [strʌ́gəl] *v.*

To **struggle** is to fight against someone or something.
→ *The kids **struggled** with each other for the toy.*



stupid [stjúːpid] *adj.*

When someone is **stupid**, they lack intelligence.
→ *He said something **stupid** that made everyone angry at him.*

Word List



citizen [sítəzən] *n.*

A **citizen** is someone who lives in a certain town or city.
→ *Carlos was born in Spain. He is a Spanish **citizen**.*



council [káunsəl] *n.*

A **council** is a group of people who run a city or town.
→ *The **council** met to discuss the new laws for the city.*



declare [diklɛ́ər] *v.*

To **declare** is to say something officially.
→ *I **declared** my love for him.*



enormous [inɔ́:rməs] *adj.*

When people or things are **enormous**, they are very large.
→ *My dog looks **enormous** next to yours.*



extraordinary [ikstrɔ́:rdənèri] *adj.*

When someone or something are **extraordinary**, they are amazing.
→ *The fireman who rescued the girl was **extraordinary**.*



fog [fɔ(:)g] *n.*

Fog is a thick cloud that is near the ground or water.
→ *I did not want to drive in the thick **fog**.*



funeral [fjú:nərəl] *n.*

A **funeral** is a ceremony that takes place after a person dies.
→ *They had a **funeral** for the soldier who died during the war.*



giant [dʒáiənt] *adj.*

When people or things are **giant**, they are very big.
→ *The **giant** truck got in my way.*



impression [impréʃən] *n.*

An **impression** is the way of thinking about someone or something.
→ *Most people's first **impression** of Dr. Giani is that he is mean.*



income [ínkʌm] *n.*

Income is how much money a person or business makes.
→ *Her company pays her a fairly good **income**.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



mad [mæd] *adj.*

When someone is **mad**, they are angry.

→ *Mother got **mad** when I didn't listen to her.*



ought [ɔ:t] *aux. v.*

If someone **ought** to do something, then it is the right thing to do.

→ *I **ought** to take my library books back.*



resist [rizíst] *v.*

To **resist** something is to fight against it.

→ *He **resisted** the treatment at the hospital.*



reveal [riví:l] *v.*

To **reveal** is to show something.

→ *I will **reveal** where I hid the candy bar.*



rid [rid] *v.*

To **rid** is to make a place free from something or someone.

→ *We **rid** our home of mice by using traps.*



sword [sɔ:rd] *n.*

A **sword** is a long sharp weapon.

→ *They used to use **swords** in battles in ancient times.*



tale [teil] *n.*

A **tale** is a story.

→ *She told her two friends about the wild **tale** of her day.*



trap [træp] *v.*

To **trap** people or animals is to capture them so they cannot get away.

→ *We **trapped** butterflies in a net.*



trial [tráiəl] *n.*

A **trial** is the way a court discovers if a person is guilty or innocent.

→ *He went on **trial** for robbing the bank.*



violent [váiələnt] *adj.*

When people are **violent**, they want to hurt someone.

→ *The man was put into jail because he was **violent**.*

Word List



admission [ədmíʃən] *n.*

Admission is the act of allowing to enter a place.

→ *The **admission** ticket to the movie was $5.*



astronomy [əstránəmi] *n.*

Astronomy is the study of the stars and planets.

→ *Harold loved watching the stars, so he decided to study **astronomy**.*



blame [bleim] *v.*

To **blame** someone for something bad is to say they did it.

→ *My mom* **blamed** *me for something I didn't do.*



chemistry [kémistri] *n.*

Chemistry the study of and reaction to substances.

→ *In **chemistry** class, the professor taught us about chemical reactions.*



despite [dispáit] *prep.*

If something happens **despite** what you do, it happens anyway.

→ *We still played the game **despite** the cold weather.*



dinosaur [dáinəsɔ̀:r] *n.*

A **dinosaur** is a very big animal that lived millions of years ago.

→ *I like to see the **dinosaur** bones at the museum.*



exhibit [igzíbit] *n.*

An **exhibit** is a display of interesting things.

→ *There was an animal **exhibit** at the fair.*



fame [feim] *n.*

Fame is reputation one has gained among the public.

→ *He had **fame** and fortune, but he was not happy.*



forecast [fɔ́:rkæst] *n.*

A **forecast** is an idea about what the weather will be like in the future.

→ *The **forecast** says that it will rain all week.*



genius [dʒí:njəs] *n.*

A **genius** is a very smart person.

→ *Since she was a **genius**, she easily passed all of her school exams.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



gentle [dʒéntl] *adj.*

Someone who is **gentle** is kind and calm.

→ *He is very **gentle** with the baby.*



geography [dʒi:ágrəfi] *n.*

Geography is the study of where things are.

→ *I had to draw a map for **geography** class.*



interfere [intərfíər] *v.*

To **interfere** is to cause problems and keep something from happening.

→ *My little sister always **interferes** when I'm trying to study.*



lightly [láitli] *adv.*

To do something **lightly** is to not push very hard.

→ *Draw **lightly** so you do not tear your paper.*



principal [prínsəpəl] *n.*

A **principal** is a person in charge of a school.

→ *My school's **principal** can be very strict with the rules.*



row [rou] *n.*

A **row** is a line of things.

→ *James put all of his toy soldiers into neat **rows**.*



shelf [ʃelf] *n.*

A **shelf** is a place on a wall where you put things.

→ *I keep my clothes on a **shelf** in my closet.*



spite [spait] *n.*

If you do something out of **spite**, you want to be mean.

→ *He snuck into his sister's room and stole her bag out of **spite**.*



super [sú:pər] *adj.*

Super means really good.

→ *My dad said I did a **super** job cleaning the house.*



wet [wet] *adj.*

If something is **wet**, it has water on it.

→ *Since my dog was **wet**, he tried to shake all the water off his body.*

Word List



abuse [əbjúːz] *v.*

To **abuse** someone or something means to hurt them on purpose.
→ *The mean man **abused** his dog when it barked too loudly.*



afford [əfɔ́ːrd] *v.*

To **afford** something means you have enough money to pay for it.
→ *I've been saving my money, so I can **afford** to buy a new bike.*



bake [beik] *v.*

To **bake** means to cook food with heat.
→ *My sister is a good cook. She **bakes** delicious cakes.*



bean [biːn] *n.*

A **bean** is a plant seed that is good to eat.
→ *There are many different kinds of **beans** to eat.*



candle [kǽndl] *n.*

A **candle** is a stick of wax that is lit on fire for light or heat.
→ *When the lights went out, we lit some **candles**.*



convert [kənvə́ːrt] *v.*

To **convert** something means to change it into something else.
→ *The man **converted** his messy field into a garden of flowers.*



debt [det] *n.*

A **debt** is an amount of money that a person owes.
→ *I have not paid my gas bill. I owe a **debt** to the gas company.*



decrease [diːkríːs] *v.*

To **decrease** something is to make it less than it was before.
→ *Hiring more police officers has **decreased** crime in the city.*



fault [fɔːlt] *n.*

A **fault** is a mistake.
→ *It is my **fault** that the cat ran away. I left the door open.*



fund [fʌnd] *n.*

A ***fund*** is an amount of money that people have.
→ *We all put money into our club's **fund**.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



generous [dʒénərəs] *adj.*

When someone is **generous**, they like to give things to people.

→ *The **generous** man donated several new computers to our school.*



ingredient [ingrí:diənt] *n.*

An **ingredient** is something that is part of a food dish.

→ *The main **ingredients** in cake are eggs, sugar and flour.*



insist [insíst] *v.*

To **insist** means to be firm in telling people what to do.

→ *I **insist** that you try some of these cookies.*



mess [mes] *n.*

A **mess** is a condition that is not clean or neat.

→ *Heather's room was a complete **mess**.*



metal [métl] *n.*

Metal is a strong material people use to build things.

→ *Steel is a common **metal** that is used to build buildings.*



monitor [mánitər] *v.*

To **monitor** people or things is to watch them closely.

→ *The teacher **monitors** the students when they take tests.*



oppose [əpóuz] *v.*

To **oppose** something means to dislike it or act against it.

→ *I want to be a police officer because I **oppose** crime.*



passive [pǽsiv] *a.*

If a person is **passive**, they do not take action to solve problems.

→ *Marcie is so **passive** that she never solves her own problems.*



quantity [kwántəti] *n.*

A **quantity** is a certain amount of something.

→ *I have a small **quantity** of milk in my glass.*



sue [su:] *v.*

To **sue** someone is to take them to court for something wrong they did.

→ *I **sued** the company after I slipped on a banana peel in their hallway.*

UNIT 13

Word List



anxiety [æŋzáiəti] *n.*

When someone has **anxiety**, they have a lot of worries and fear.

→ *When I have to climb to high places, I'm filled with* **anxiety**.



army [ɑ́:rmi] *n.*

An **army** is a large group of people who fight in wars.

→ *The* ***army*** *protects all the people in the country.*



billion [bíljən] *n.*

A **billion** is a very large number: 1,000,000,000.

→ *There are* ***billions*** *of stars in outer space.*



carve [kɑ:rv] *v.*

To **carve** means to cut into something.

→ *My father usually* ***carves*** *the turkey for Thanksgiving.*



consult [kənsʌ́lt] *v.*

To **consult** someone means to ask them for help.

→ *I will* ***consult*** *my accountant to find a way to pay for my bills.*



emergency [imə́:rdʒənsi] *n.*

An **emergency** is a time when someone needs help right away.

→ *There is a huge fire in my house! This is an* ***emergency****!*



fortune [fɔ́:rtʃən] *n.*

When someone has good **fortune**, it means they have luck.

→ *I have good* ***fortune*** *when I play cards.*



guarantee [gærəntí:] *v.*

To **guarantee** means to know something will happen.

→ *I* ***guarantee*** *that the sun will come up in the morning.*



hike [haik] *v.*

To **hike** means to walk in the mountains or forest.

→ *I always bring plenty of equipment with me when I* ***hike****.*



initial [iníʃəl] *adj.*

When something is **initial**, it is the first thing.

→ *The* ***initial*** *step when writing a paper is to find a good topic.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



intense [inténs] *adj.*
If something is **intense**, it is very strong.
→ *The skunk made an **intense** odor that filled the air.*



lend [lend] *v.*
To **lend** something is to give it to someone for a short time.
→ *My sister lost her pen, so I will **lend** her mine.*



peak [pi:k] *n.*
The **peak** is the very top of a mountain.
→ *There is snow on the* **peaks** *of those mountains.*



potential [pouténʃəl] *adj.*
Potential means capable of being but not yet in existence.
→ *I've thought of some **potential** problems with your idea.*



pride [praid] *n.*
When you have **pride**, you are happy with yourself.
→ *I take **pride** in getting good grades.*



proof [pru:f] *n.*
Proof is a fact that shows something is real.
→ *They used his fingerprint as **proof** for the crime he committed.*



quit [kwit] *v.*
To **quit** something means to stop doing it.
→ *I **quit** running because I got tired.*



spin [spin] *v.*
To **spin** is to turn around in circles.
→ *The boy kept **spinning** until he fell down.*



tiny [táini] *adj.*
When people or things are **tiny**, they are very small.
→ *A baby's hand is **tiny**.*



tutor [tjú:tər] *n.*
A **tutor** is someone who gives lessons in a certain subject.
→ *My sister is bad at math. So my mother hired a **tutor** to help her.*

Word List



apparent [əpærənt] *adj.*

If something is **apparent,** it is easy to see.

→ *Her happiness was **apparent** from the smile on her face.*



blind [blaind] *adj.*

When people are **blind,** they cannot see.

→ *The **blind** man didn't see the hole and almost fell in.*



calculate [kælkjəlèit] *v.*

To **calculate** is to find an answer using math.

→ *I **calculated** how much money I would need to buy the car.*



chat [tʃæt] *v.*

To **chat** is to talk with someone.

→ *Even though they were far apart, the couple **chatted** every day.*



commit [kəmít] *v.*

To **commit** to something is to promise to do it.

→ *Seth wanted to go home, but he had **committed** to finishing the job.*



compose [kəmpóuz] *v.*

To **compose** something is to make it from smaller parts.

→ *Tonya **composed** her report using many sources of information.*



dormitory [dɔ́:rmətɔ̀:ri] *n.*

A **dormitory** is a school building where students live.

→ *I will move into the **dormitory** at the beginning of the school year.*



exhaust [igzɔ́:st] *v.*

To **exhaust** someone is to make them tired.

→ *John **exhausted** himself by swimming all day.*



greenhouse [grí:nhàus] *n.*

A **greenhouse** is a small glass building that is used to grow plants.

→ *We have a small **greenhouse** in our backyard where we grow plants.*



ignore [ignɔ́:r] *v.*

To **ignore** something is to act like you do not see or hear it.

→ *I **ignored** the message he was making and kept studying.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



obvious [ábviəs] *adj.*

If something is **obvious**, it is clear and easily seen.

→ *It was **obvious** that he was tired. He kept falling asleep.*



physics [fíziks] *n.*

Physics is a science that deals with energy and how it affects things.

→ *In **physics** class, we used Newton's Cradle to learn about energy.*



portion [pɔ́:rʃən] *n.*

A **portion** of something is a part of it.

→ *I only ate a small **portion** of the pizza.*



remind [rimáind] *v.*

To **remind** someone is to tell them to remember to do something.

→ *Nick's dad **reminded** him to do his homework.*



secretary [sékrətèri] *n.*

A **secretary** is a person who works in an office.

→ *Rebecca asked her **secretary** to type a report.*



severe [sivíə:r] *adj.*

If something is ***severe***, it is very bad or serious.

→ *After hitting his hand with the hammer, Sam was in **severe** pain.*



talent [tælənt] *n.*

If someone has a **talent**, they are naturally able to do it well.

→ *Maria has a **talent** for playing the piano.*



thesis [θí:sis] *n.*

A **thesis** is an idea that needs to be proved.

→ *She did not support her **thesis** very well.*



uniform [jú:nəfɔ̀:rm] *n.*

A **uniform** is a piece of clothing worn by people of the same group.

→ *All the members of our marching band wear matching **uniforms**.*



vision [víʒən] *n.*

Vision is the act of seeing.

→ *The eye doctor tested my **vision**.*



absorb [əbsɔ́ːrb] *v.*

To **absorb** a liquid means to take it inside.

→ *He used a sponge to **absorb** the water on the floor.*



boss [bɔ(ː)s] *n.*

A **boss** is a person in charge of other people at work.

→ *My **boss** is a nice person.*



committee [kəmíti] *n.*

A **committee** is a group of people who meet together to make decisions.

→ *The school's **committee** agreed on a new dress code for students.*



contract [kɑ́ntrækt] *n.*

A **contract** is a written agreement between two people.

→ *The woman signed a **contract** when she bought the house.*



crew [kruː] *n.*

A **crew** is a group of workers.

→ *My father has a **crew**. They help him build houses.*



devote [divóut] *v.*

To **devote** time to something means to spend a lot of time doing it.

→ *She **devotes** two hours a day to playing the piano.*



dig [dig] *v.*

To **dig** is to make a hole in the ground.

→ *My dog **digs** in the yard so he can hide his bones.*



dine [dain] *v.*

To **dine** means to eat dinner.

→ *The young couple **dined** at their home.*



donate [dóuneit] *v.*

To **donate** is to give something to a charity or organization.

→ *We **donate** money to Christmas charities every year.*



double [dʌ́bəl] *adj.*

If something is **double**, it is twice as much, or twice as many.

→ *I paid almost **double** the amount for that shirt.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



elevate [éləvèit] *v.*

To **elevate** something is to put it at a higher level.

→ *The man **elevated** the picture so he could see it better.*



flavor [flèivər] *n.*

A **flavor** is the taste of food or drinks.

→ *The **flavor** of the ice cream was very good.*



foundation [faundèiʃən] *n.*

A **foundation** is a group that provides money for research.

→ *The **foundation** raised money to give scholarships to students.*



generation [dʒènərèiʃən] *n.*

A **generation** is a group of people who live at the same time.

→ *My grandparents are from a different **generation** than me.*



handle [hændl] *n.*

A **handle** is the part of an object people hold while using it.

→ *The pot is very hot. So pick it up by the **handle**.*



layer [léiə:r] *n.*

A **layer** covers over something or is between two things.

→ *There was a **layer** of snow on the tops of the houses this morning.*



mud [mʌd] *n.*

Mud is soft, wet dirt.

→ *My brother played rugby in the **mud**. Now he's dirty.*



smooth [smu:ð] *a.*

If something is **smooth**, it has no bumps.

→ *The baby's skin felt very **smooth**.*



soil [sɔil] *n.*

Soil is the top layer of land on the Earth.

→ *The boy planted flowers in the **soil** and watered them every day.*



unique [ju:ní:k] *adj.*

If people or things are **unique**, they are not like the others.

→ *Her dog is **unique**. I've never seen one quite like it.*

Word List



chamber [tʃéimbər] *n.*

A **chamber** is an old word for a bedroom.

→ *The girl was tired. She went to her **chamber** for a nap.*



deny [dinái] *v.*

To **deny** something is to say it is not true.

→ *The boy **denied** that he broke the window.*



document [dάkjəmənt] *n.*

A **document** is an official piece of writing.

→ *He was given an official **document** proving he was a citizen.*



emphasize [émfəsàiz] *v.*

To **emphasize** is to give importance or attention to something.

→ *She **emphasized** the key points by circling them in red ink.*



fever [fí:vər] *n.*

A **fever** is a high body temperature that people get when they are sick.

→ *Lydia had a high **fever** so she didn't go to school.*



flu [flu:] *n.*

The **flu** is a type of sickness that makes you feel weak or your body hurt.

→ *Since he had the flu, he felt miserable.*



freeze [fri:z] *v.*

To **freeze** is to become very cold.

→ *If you don't wear your coat in winter, you will **freeze**.*



gesture [dʒéstʃər] *n.*

A **gesture** is a movement of the hands or body.

→ *My teacher makes a lot of **gestures** when she speaks.*



interrupt [intərʌ́pt] *v.*

To **interrupt** is to briefly stop someone when they are doing something.

→ *My mother **interrupted** me when I was trying to listen to music.*



last [læst] *v.*

To **last** is to continue or go on for an amount of time.

→ *The football match **lasted** for nearly two hours.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



likeness [láiknis] *n.*

Likeness means the state of being like, or resemblance.

→ *Michelle bears a strong **likeness** to her older sister Kate.*



moreover [mɔːróuvəːr] *adv.*

Moreover means besides or in addition to something.

→ *It's cold outside. **Moreover**, the wind is very strong.*



perspective [pəːrspéktiv] *n.*

A **perspective** is the way you think about something.

→ *The man's speech gave me a new **perspective** on our country.*



rational [rǽʃənl] *adj.*

When something is **rational**, it is normal or practical.

→ *It is hard to think in a **rational** way when you are scared.*



recover [rikʌ́vəːr] *v.*

To **recover** is to go back to normal after something bad happens.

→ *I hope the city will **recover** soon after the flood.*



rely [rilái] *v.*

To **rely** on something or someone is to trust or depend on them.

→ *The boy **relied** on his older brother to help him.*



shock [ʃɑk] *v.*

To **shock** people is to surprise them.

→ *The man was **shocked** by the news.*



shy [ʃai] *adj.*

When people are **shy**, they are nervous around people strange to them.

→ *The girl was too **shy** to try out for the play.*



stare [stɛəːr] *v.*

To **stare** at something is to look at it for a long time.

→ *The young couple **stared** into each other's eyes.*



thus [ðʌs] *adv.*

Thus means as a result or for that reason.

→ *The sun was shining. **Thus**, I wore my sunglasses.*

Word List



aim [eim] *n.*

An **aim** is a goal someone wants to make happen.
→ *My **aim** is to become a helicopter pilot.*



attach [ətǽtʃ] *v.*

To **attach** is to put two things together.
→ *I **attached** the socks to the clothesline to dry.*



bet [bet] *v.*

To **bet** is to risk money on the result of a game or a business.
→ *How much will you **bet** that your horse will win?*



carriage [kǽridʒ] *n.*

A **carriage** is a vehicle pulled by a horse.
→ *We took a **carriage** ride in the park.*



classic [klǽsik] *adj.*

If something is **classic**, it is typical.
→ *The athlete made a **classic** mistake – he started running too soon.*



commute [kəmjúːt] *v.*

To **commute** is to travel a long distance to get to work.
→ *I usually **commute** to work on the train.*



confirm [kənfə́ːrm] *v.*

To **confirm** is to make sure something is correct.
→ *Winning the game **confirmed** that James was a good player.*



criticize [krítisàiz] *v.*

To **criticize** is to say you do not like someone or something.
→ *He **criticized** his wife for spending too much money.*



differ [dífər] *v.*

To **differ** is to not be the same as another person or thing.
→ *I **differ** from my brother: he is short, while I am tall.*



expense [ikspéns] *n.*

An **expense** is the money that people spend on something.
→ *She wrote down all the **expenses** for her trip.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



formal [fɔ́:rməl] *adj.*
If something is **formal**, it is done in an official way.
→ *It was a **formal** dinner, so we wore our best clothes.*



height [hait] *n.*
Height is how tall someone or something is.
→ *My **height** is 168 centimeters.*



invent [invént] *v.*
To **invent** something is to create something that never existed before.
→ *My grandfather has **invented** some interesting things.*



junior [dʒú:njər] *adj.*
If someone is **junior** in their job, they do not have a lot of power.
→ *When she started at the company, she was only a **junior** manager.*



labor [léibər] *n.*
Labor is the act of doing or making something.
→ *Building the house took a lot of **labor**.*



mechanic [məkǽnik] *n.*
A **mechanic** is someone who fixes vehicles or machines.
→ *We took the car to the **mechanic** to be fixed.*



prime [praim] *adj.*
If something is **prime**, it is the most important one.
→ *Dirty air is a **prime** cause of illness.*



shift [ʃift] *v.*
To **shift** to something is to move into a new place or direction.
→ *He **shifted** to the other side of the table to eat his breakfast.*



signal [sígnəl] *n.*
A **signal** is a sound or action that tells someone to do something.
→ *The coach blew his whistle as a **signal** to begin the game.*



sincere [sinsíə:r] *adj.*
When people are **sincere**, they tell the truth.
→ *He sounded **sincere** when he apologized to me.*

Word List



ability [əbíləti] *n.*

Ability is the quality of a person being able to do something well.

→ *His swimming **abilities** let him cross the entire lake.*



agriculture [ægrikʌ̀ltʃər] *n.*

Agriculture is the growing of food and animals.

→ *The farmer studied **agriculture** in college.*



cartoon [kɑːrtúːn] *n.*

A **cartoon** is a funny drawing.

→ *Sometimes, people draw **cartoons** for the newspaper.*



ceiling [síːliŋ] *n.*

The **ceiling** is the top of a room.

→ *He painted the **ceiling** with a special roller.*



convince [kənvíns] *v.*

To **convince** someone means to make them sure of something.

→ *She **convinced** me to buy the house.*



curious [kjúəriəs] *adj.*

When you are **curious** about something, you want to know more about it.

→ *I opened up the clock because I was **curious** about how it worked.*



delay [diléi] *v.*

To **delay** means to wait to do something.

→ *I was **delayed** at the airport for over two hours.*



diary [dáiəri] *n.*

A **diary** is a book in which people write their personal experiences.

→ *I do not let anybody read my **diary**.*



element [éləmənt] *n.*

An **element** of something is a particular part of it.

→ *Tackling an opponent is Johnny's favorite **element** of American football.*



faith [feiθ] *n.*

When people have **faith** in something, they believe in it and trust it.

→ *The sick girl had **faith** in doctors. She knew they would make her better.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



grain [grein] *n.*

Grain is food crops such as wheat, corn, rice or oats.

→ *The farmer planted two fields of **grain** this year.*



greet [gri:t] *v.*

To **greet** someone means to meet and welcome them.

→ *When my friend came over, I **greeted** him at the door.*



investigate [invéstəgèit] *v.*

To **investigate** means to search for something or learn about it.

→ *The detective went to **investigate** the crime.*



joy [dʒɔi] *n.*

Joy is a feeling you get when you are really happy.

→ *I love baseball. I feel **joy** when I play.*



label [léibəl] *n.*

A **label** is a tag that tells about something.

→ *The **label** on the back of your shirt will tell you what size it is.*



monk [mʌŋk] *n.*

A **monk** is a religious person who lives a simple life.

→ *The **monks** knew a lot about religion.*



odd [ad] *adj.*

When something is **odd**, it is unusual.

→ *Her cat is **odd**. It walks on two feet.*



pause [pɔ:z] *v.*

To **pause** means to stop doing something for a while.

→ *Since she was so hungry, she **paused** to make a snack.*



priest [pri:st] *n.*

A **priest** is a person trained to perform religious duties.

→ *The **priest** taught us about God.*



profession [prəféʃən] *n.*

A **profession** is a person's job.

→ *He loved sailing, so he chose to work on ships as a **profession**.*

Elbarskhan & mmh

Word List



adopt [ədάpt] *v.*

To **adopt** someone is to make them as a part of one's own family.
→ *The girl was **adopted** by the couple when she was three.*



beg [beg] *v.*

To **beg** is to ask for something one really wants.
→ *The man **begged** for some money.*



beyond [bijάnd] *prep.*

If A is **beyond** B, A is farther away.
→ *John's house is **beyond** that lake.*



costume [kάstju:m] *n.*

A **costume** is a set of clothes people wear for a particular occasion.
→ *The woman wore a mask with her **costume**.*



exclaim [ikskléim] *v.*

To **exclaim** is to say something loudly, usually due to being excited.
→ *"Look at her dress!" Sara **exclaimed**.*



extend [ikstέnd] *v.*

To **extend** is to stretch out or reach.
→ *The boy **extended** his hand to catch the ball.*



fool [fu:l] *n.*

A **fool** is someone who makes unwise choices.
→ *The girl was a **fool** for playing too close to the water.*



forbid [fə:rbíd] *v.*

To **forbid** is to tell someone they cannot do something.
→ *My father **forbids** watching TV while we're eating dinner.*



illustrate [íləstrèit] *v.*

To **illustrate** is to show something by drawing a picture.
→ *The executive **illustrated** the decreasing profits of the company.*



indeed [indíd] *adv.*

Indeed means truly or really.
→ *The birthday party was **indeed** fun last night.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



interpret [intə:rprit] *v.*

To **interpret** is to explain what something means.

→ *The woman **interpreted** what her co-worker was trying to say.*



kindly [kāindli] *adv.*

If people do something **kindly**, they do it in a nice way.

→ *The stranger **kindly** cared for the hurt man.*



motive [mōutiv] *n.*

A **motive** is the reason someone does something.

→ *His **motive** for studying so hard is to get into a good college.*



nest [nest] *n.*

A **nest** is a place where a bird lays its eggs.

→ *The bird laid her eggs in the **nest** that she made.*



origin [ɔ:rədʒin] *n.*

The **origin** of someone or something is where they come from.

→ *The **origin** of the honey that we eat is from a beehive.*



reception [risēpʃən] *n.*

A **reception** is a party to welcome a person or celebrate an event.

→ *We all danced and had a good time at the wedding **reception**.*



reject [ridʒékt] *v.*

To **reject** is to refuse something because you do not want it.

→ *The girl **rejected** the broken cup.*



silence [sāiləns] *n.*

Silence is complete quiet.

→ *The man asked for **silence** while he worked on the problem.*



stream [stri:m] *n.*

A **stream** is a small river.

→ *The boy caught a fish in the **stream**.*



tone [toun] *n.*

Tone is the sound of someone's voice. It shows how they feel.

→ *My father's **tone** told me I had broken the rule.*

Word List



accomplish [əkʌ́mpliʃ] *v.*

To **accomplish** something means to finish it.

→ *He **accomplished** his goal of running ten miles.*



approve [əprúːv] *v.*

To **approve** of something means you like it or are happy about it.

→ *Her co-workers **approved** her new plan.*



approximate [əprɑ́ksəmit] *adj.*

Approximate means to be close to an exact amount, number or time.

→ *My **approximate** height is two meters.*



barrier [bæriər] *n.*

A **barrier** is something that is in your way.

→ *The Great Wall was a **barrier** between China and its enemies.*



detect [ditékt] *v.*

To **detect** something means to notice or find something.

→ *The boy ran to the kitchen when he **detected** the smell of cookies.*



duty [djúːti] *n.*

A **duty** is something that a person has to do.

→ *It is parents' **duty** to take care of their children.*



elementary [èləmɛ́ntəri] *adj.*

When something is **elementary,** it is the first or most simple thing.

→ *Children go to **elementary** school before high school.*



failure [féiljər] *n.*

A **failure** happens when you do not do something right.

→ *My cooking ended in **failure** because I burned the food.*



gradual [grædʒuəl] *adj.*

When something is **gradual,** it happens slowly.

→ *Children learn to read at a **gradual** pace. They do not learn right away.*



immigrant [ímigrənt] *n.*

An **immigrant** is a person who moves to a different country.

→ *My parents were **immigrants**. They came from Poland.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



insert [insə́:rt] *v.*

To **insert** something means to put it in something else.

→ *The mailman **inserted** the letter into the mailbox.*



instant [instənt] *n.*

An **instant** is a very short amount of time.

→ *A microwave oven cooks food in an **instant**.*



poverty [pάvərti] *n.*

Poverty is the state of being poor.

→ ***Poverty** is a problem in many countries around the world.*



pretend [priténd] *v.*

To **pretend** means to make believe something is real.

→ *The boy liked to **pretend** he was a king.*



rank [ræŋk] *n.*

A person's **rank** is their place in an order of people.

→ *The man got to the **rank** of captain in the navy.*



recognition [rèkəgníʃən] *n.*

Recognition is getting praise from other people.

→ *The hero got **recognition** for his brave deed.*



refrigerate [rifrídʒərèit] *v.*

To **refrigerate** something means to make it cold.

→ *Grocery stores **refrigerate** fruit to make it last long.*



rent [rent] *n.*

Rent is the money people pay to someone to live in a certain place.

→ *To live in this house, I have to pay **rent** at the start of each month.*



retire [ritάiə:r] *v.*

To **retire** is to leave a job, usually because of old age.

→ *My father is sixty-five years old. He is about to **retire** from work.*



statistic [stətístik] *n.*

A **statistic** is a number that tells a fact about something.

→ *The **statistics** showed that we did just as well this year as last year.*

Elbarskhan & mmh

Word List



astronaut [æstrənɔ:t] *n.*

An **astronaut** is a person that goes into outer space.

→ *The **astronaut** was walking on the moon.*



awake [əwéik] *adj.*

When you are **awake**, you are not asleep.

→ *Sometimes I lay **awake** in bed because I am not tired.*



courage [kə:ridʒ] *n.*

When you have **courage**, you are not afraid.

→ *The man had the **courage** to touch the lion.*



float [flout] *v.*

To **float** is to move on top of water without sinking.

→ *The boy's toy boat **floated** in the pool.*



grant [grænt] *v.*

To **grant** something is to allow someone to have it.

→ *The teacher **granted** us a break after studying hard all day.*



gravity [grævəti] *n.*

Gravity is the force that makes things fall to Earth.

→ *There is no **gravity** in space.*



jewel [dʒú:əl] *n.*

A **jewel** is a beautiful stone that is worth a lot of money.

→ *A diamond is one of the most expensive **jewels** in the world.*



miner [máinər] *n.*

A **miner** is a person who works in a mine.

→ *The **miner** was looking for gold.*



mineral [mínərəl] *n.*

A **mineral** is a type of substance found in the Earth.

→ *Rocks are made up of different kinds of **minerals**.*



participate [pɑ:rtísəpèit] *v.*

To **participate** is to take part in something.

→ *The students **participated** in the school play.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



permission [pəːrmíʃən] *n.*

Permission means the act of allowing the doing of something.
→ *I have **permission** to drive my mom's car.*



pour [pɔːr] *v.*

To **pour** a liquid means to make it come out of a container.
→ *I **poured** some milk into my sister's cup.*



presence [prézəns] *n.*

Someone or something's **presence** is the fact they are there.
→ *The **presence** of dark clouds meant it would rain.*



raw [rɔː] *adj.*

If a material is **raw**, it is natural and has not been processed.
→ *The company dumped **raw** sewage into the river.*



satellite [sætəlàit] *n.*

A **satellite** is something that is sent into space to get information.
→ *The **satellite** was traveling around the earth.*



scale [skeil] *n.*

The **scale** of something is its size, especially when it is very large.
→ *I was surprised by the **scale** of the buildings in the downtown area.*



skip [skip] *v.*

To **skip** something is to not do it.
→ *He **skipped** work to get more sleep.*



stretch [stretʃ] *v.*

To **stretch** is to make your arms or legs reach out.
→ *She **stretched** her body before exercising.*



telescope [téləskòup] *n.*

A **telescope** is a tool people use to look at the stars.
→ *With a **telescope**, you can see the moon and stars easily.*



underground [ʌ́ndərgràund] *adv.*

When something is **underground**, it is below the surface of the Earth.
→ *Subway trains travel **underground**.*

Word List



alarm [əlɑ́:rm] *n.*

An **alarm** is something that warns people of danger.
→ *When the students heard the fire **alarm**, they left the building.*



apart [əpɑ́:rt] *adv.*

When people or things are **apart**, they are not close together.
→ *The couple decided to live **apart** from each other.*



arrest [ərést] *v.*

To **arrest** someone means to catch them for doing something bad.
→ *The man was **arrested** for breaking the law.*



award [əwɔ́:rd] *n.*

An **award** is a prize someone gets for doing something well.
→ *He got an **award** for having the best grades in class.*



breed [bri:d] *n.*

A **breed** is a group of animals within a species.
→ *I like small dog **breeds**, such as terriers.*



bucket [bʌ́kit] *n.*

A **bucket** is a round container to put things in.
→ *I filled the **bucket** with water.*



contest [kɑ́ntest] *n.*

A **contest** is a game or a race.
→ *The girls had a **contest** to see who could jump higher.*



convict [kənvíkt] *v.*

To **convict** someone means to prove that they did a bad thing.
→ *He was **convicted** of the crime and sent to jail.*



garage [gərɑ́:ʒ] *n.*

A **garage** is the part of a house where people put their cars.
→ *My car does not get dirty because I keep it in the **garage**.*



journalist [dʒə́:rnəlist] *n.*

A **journalist** is a person who writes news stories.
→ *The **journalist** took notes for a story he was writing.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



pup [pʌp] *n.*

A **pup** is a young dog.

→ *All the girl wanted for her birthday was a **pup**.*



qualify [kwɑ́ləfài] *v.*

To **qualify** is to get, or to be declared, adequate or good enough.

→ *He **qualified** to go to the final match by beating the opponent.*



repair [ripɛ́ə:r] *v.*

To **repair** something is to fix it.

→ *I **repaired** the flat tire on my car.*



resume [rizú:m] *v.*

To **resume** something means to start it again after taking a break.

→ *I put the newspaper down to eat breakfast. Then I **resumed** reading.*



rob [rɑb] *v.*

To **rob** a person or place is to take their property by using force.

→ *A thief has **robbed** me of my passport.*



slip [slip] *v.*

To **slip** means to slide and fall down.

→ *The man **slipped** on the wet floor.*



somewhat [sʌ́mhwʌ̀t] *adv.*

Somewhat means to some degree, but not to a large degree.

→ *James was **somewhat** upset when he had to move some boxes.*



stable [stéibl] *adj.*

When something is **stable**, it will not fall over.

→ *The chair is **stable**. Its legs are strong.*



tissue [tíʃu:] *n.*

A **tissue** is a soft piece of paper people use to wipe their noses.

→ *There was a box of **tissue** on the table.*



yard [jɑ:rd] *n.*

A **yard** is the ground just outside of a person's house.

→ *The girls jumped rope in the **yard**.*

Elbarskhan & mmh

Word List



alike [əláik] *adj.*

If two things or people are **alike**, they are similar in some way.

→ *People often think my sister and I look **alike**.*



annoy [ənɔ́i] *v.*

To **annoy** someone means to bother them.

→ *The flies buzzing around John's head **annoyed** him very much.*



architecture [á:rkətèktʃər] *n.*

Architecture is the style or way a building is made.

→ *The **architecture** of the church is amazing.*



artificial [à:rtəfíʃəl] *adj.*

If something is **artificial**, it is made to look like something natural.

→ *That soccer field has **artificial** grass, but it looks real.*



chain [tʃein] *n.*

A **chain** is a series of connected loops often used to keep things in place.

→ *The scary dog was secured with a **chain**.*



distinct [distíŋkt] *adj.*

If something is **distinct**, it is easily noticed or different from other things.

→ *That girl has **distinct** pink hair.*



distinguish [distíŋgwiʃ] *v.*

To **distinguish** is to recognize differences between things.

→ *The twins look exactly the same. It is hard to **distinguish** between them.*



dust [dʌst] *n.*

Dust is very tiny pieces of dirt or other matter.

→ *In the old house, the **dust** was thick on the floor and chairs.*



excitement [iksáitmənt] *n.*

Excitement means to feel a lot of happiness about something.

→ *Did you see the **excitement** in her when the team scored?*



heal [hi:l] *v.*

To **heal** means to make a part of the body healthy again after injury.

→ *After my broken arm **heals**, I can play baseball again.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



inherit [inhérit] *v.*

To **inherit** is to get something from someone who has died.

→ *She **inherited** her mother's gold earrings.*



manner [mænə:r] *n.*

A **manner** is the way someone does something.

→ *His **manner** of not looking at someone while speaking, is a bit rude.*



mount [maunt] *v.*

Something **mounts** when it becomes stronger over time.

→ *His fear **mounted** as the monster crawled out from under his bed.*



roof [ru:f] *n.*

A **roof** is the outside top part of a building.

→ *The **roof** was covered with snow.*



shortage [ʃɔ:rtidʒ] *n.*

A **shortage** is a lack of something you need or want.

→ *Since there was a **shortage** of food, people were hungry.*



solid [sɑ́lid] *adj.*

If something is **solid**, it is made of firm material.

→ *The safe looked to be quite **solid**.*



stock [stɑk] *n.*

A **stock** is a stored amount of something.

→ *They keep a **stock** of rice so they'll always have something to eat.*



substance [sʌ́bstəns] *n.*

A **substance** is any specific material or mixture of materials.

→ *Water is an important **substance** for all living things.*



tomb [tu:m] *n.*

A **tomb** is a grave where a dead person is buried.

→ *Their whole family is buried inside the **tomb**.*



wound [wu:nd] *n.*

A **wound** is an injury to the body.

→ *He had many **wounds** after the car accident.*

Word List



bath [bæθ] *n.*

A **bath** is water in a tub. People take a bath to get clean.

→ *After playing in the dirt, the boy took a **bath**.*



bend [bend] *v.*

To **bend** is to move something so it is not straight.

→ *Lee **bent** over and picked up the paper on the ground.*



chew [tʃu:] *v.*

To **chew** is to move your mouth to break up food.

→ *I always **chew** my food carefully before swallowing it.*



disabled [diséibəld] *adj.*

When a person is **disabled**, they cannot do what a normal person can do.

→ *The **disabled** man used a wheelchair to move around.*



fantastic [fæntæstik] *adj.*

If something is **fantastic**, it is really good.

→ *The student did a **fantastic** job on his project and got an award.*



fiction [fíkʃən] *n.*

Fiction is a story that is not true.

→ *I enjoy reading works of **fiction** because they are very entertaining.*



flag [flæg] *n.*

A **flag** is a piece of colored cloth that represents something.

→ *Our country has a beautiful **flag**.*



inspect [inspékt] *v.*

To **inspect** is to look at something carefully.

→ *The mechanic **inspected** our car to see if it had any problems.*



journal [dʒə́:rnəl] *n.*

A **journal** is a type of magazine that deals with an academic subject.

→ *Mi-young was busy working on an article for an art **journal**.*



liquid [líkwid] *n.*

A **liquid** is a substance that is neither solid nor gas.

→ *Water is the most important **liquid** for life.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



marvel [mɑ:rvəl] *v.*

To **marvel** at something is to feel surprise and interest in it.
→ *We **marveled** at her excellent piano playing.*



nutrient [nju:triənt] *n.*

A **nutrient** is something that a living thing needs to keep it alive.
→ *Vegetables are full of important **nutrients**.*



overcome [ouvərkʌm] *v.*

To **overcome** a problem is to successfully fix it.
→ *She **overcame** her shyness and spoke in front of the class.*



recall [rikɔ:l] *v.*

To **recall** something is to remember it.
→ *She was trying to **recall** what she had told her friend.*



regret [rigret] *v.*

To **regret** something is to wish that it didn't happen.
→ *I **regret** that I was mean to my sister.*



soul [soul] *n.*

A **soul** is a person's spirit.
→ *Some people believe that the **soul** lives after the body dies.*



sufficient [səfiʃənt] *adj.*

When something is **sufficient**, you have enough of it.
→ *After eating a **sufficient** amount of food, I left the table.*



surgery [sə:rdʒəri] *n.*

Surgery is medical treatment when the doctor cuts open your body.
→ *I needed **surgery** to repair my leg after the accident.*



tough [tʌf] *adj.*

If something is **tough**, it is difficult.
→ *The man passed his driving test even though it was very **tough**.*



tube [tju:b] *n.*

A **tube** is a pipe through which water or air passes.
→ *The pile of **tubes** was going to be put in the ground.*

Elbarskhan & mmh

Word List



admit [ədmít] *v.*

To **admit** something means to say that it is true.

→ *I had to **admit** that I stole his idea.*



bin [bin] *n.*

A **bin** is a container that holds things.

→ *He put his trash in the **bin**.*



bowl [boul] *n.*

A **bowl** is a deep, round dish that holds food or liquid.

→ *I ate a **bowl** of cereal for breakfast.*



cabin [kæbin] *n.*

A **cabin** is a small house made of wood.

→ *My grandfather owns a small **cabin** in the country.*



cash [kæʃ] *n.*

Cash is money in the form of paper or coins.

→ *I was able to save up enough **cash** to buy my mother a gift.*



criminal [krímənl] *n.*

A **criminal** is a person who does something against the law.

→ *The police made sure the **criminal** couldn't move his hands.*



dozen [dʌ́zən] *n.*

A **dozen** is a group of twelve things.

→ *Mom brought home a **dozen** donuts for us as a treat.*



elder [éldər] *adj.*

An **elder** is a person who is older than the people around them.

→ *Uncle Ray is my **elder** so I always try to be respectful.*



facial [féiʃəl] *adj.*

If something is **facial**, it is related to a person's face.

→ *I could tell from his **facial** features that he was angry.*



fence [fens] *n.*

A **fence** is a structure around a house or field.

→ *The **farmer** put up a fence so that no one could walk on her field.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



inspire [inspáiər] *v.*

To **inspire** means to make a person want to do something.
→ *I was **inspired** to write a poem after watching the sunrise.*



mere [miər] *adj.*

When something is **mere**, it is small or not important.
→ *We lost the game by a **mere** two points.*



neat [ni:t] *adj.*

If something is **neat**, it is very clean or organized well.
→ *My sister always keeps her bedroom very **neat**.*



occasion [əkéiʒən] *n.*

An **occasion** is a time when something important happens.
→ *Her graduation was an **occasion** to have a good time.*



penalty [pénəlti] *n.*

A **penalty** is a punishment, given when someone breaks a rule or law.
→ *I had to pay a $100 **penalty** for parking in the wrong spot.*



rude [ru:d] *adj.*

When someone is **rude**, they are mean and not polite.
→ *The children at the bus stop were very **rude**.*



settle [sétl] *v.*

To **settle** a problem means to end it by finding a solution.
→ *It took three of our best executives all day to **settle** the problem.*



vehicle [ví:ikəl] *n.*

A **vehicle** is a thing that moves people or things to another place.
→ *A ferry is a **vehicle** that takes people from one island to another.*



wallet [wálit] *n.*

A **wallet** is a thing that holds money and fits in a pocket.
→ *I keep my money in a **wallet**.*



yell [jel] *v.*

To **yell** is to say something very loudly.
→ *The coach **yelled** at his team for their poor performance.*

Elbarskhan & mmh

UNIT 26

Word List



accuse [əkjúːz] *v.*

To **accuse** someone of something is to blame them for doing it.
→ *She **accused** her brother of breaking her computer.*



adjust [ədʒʌ́st] *v.*

To **adjust** something means to change it so it is better.
→ *He **adjusted** the old guitar to make it sound better.*



amuse [əmjúːz] *v.*

To **amuse** someone means to do something that is funny or entertaining.
→ *The singer was very good. She **amused** the crowd.*



coral [kɔ́ːrəl] *n.*

Coral is the hard, colorful material formed by the shells of animals.
→ *The diver admired the beautiful **coral** under the water.*



cotton [kátn] *n.*

Cotton is a cloth made from the fibers of the cotton plant.
→ *I like to wear clothes made from **cotton** in the summer.*



crash [kræʃ] *v.*

To **crash** means to hit and break something.
→ *There was a loud noise when the car **crashed** into the tree.*



deck [dek] *n.*

A **deck** is a wooden floor built outside of a house or the floor of a ship.
→ *A ship will store many supplies below its **deck**.*



engage [engéidʒ] *v.*

To **engage** in something means to do it.
→ *Dad was **engaged** in sawing a piece of wood in half.*



firm [fəːrm] *adj.*

When something is **firm**, it is solid but not too hard.
→ *He sleeps better on a **firm** bed.*



fuel [fjúːəl] *n.*

Fuel is something that creates heat or energy.
→ *Heat is the **fuel** that comes from fire.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



grand [grænd] *adj.*
When something is **grand**, it is big and liked by people.
→ *The **grand** mountain rose high into the sky.*



hurricane [hə:rəkein] *n.*
A **hurricane** is a bad storm that happens over the ocean.
→ *The wind from the **hurricane** bent the palm tree.*



loss [lɔ(:)s] *n.*
A **loss** means the act or an instance of losing something.
→ *I suffered a big **loss** while I was gambling.*



plain [plein] *adj.*
If something is simple, it is **plain** and not decorated.
→ *He bought a pair of **plain** white shoes over the weekend.*



reef [ri:f] *n.*
A **reef** is a group of rocks or coral that rise to or near the ocean.
→ *He walked along the **reef** and looked at the water below.*



shut [ʃʌt] *v.*
To **shut** something means to close it tightly.
→ *Please **shut** the door; the air outside is cold.*



strict [strikt] *adj.*
When someone is **strict**, they make sure others follow rules.
→ *The teacher is **strict**. She does not let students talk in class.*



surf [sə:rf] *v.*
To **surf** means to use a special board to ride on waves in the ocean.
→ *The students went to the beach to **surf** during their vacation.*



task [tæsk] *n.*
A **task** is a piece of work to be done that is usually difficult.
→ *My **task** for the weekend was to clean the entire back yard.*



zone [zoun] *n.*
A **zone** is an area that has different qualities from the ones around it.
→ *Firefighters often work in danger **zones**.*

Elbarskhan & mmh

Word List



apology [əpɑ́lədʒi] *n.*

An **apology** is something someone says to show that they are sorry.

→ *After arguing with her teacher, the girl wrote the teacher an **apology**.*



bold [bould] *adj.*

If someone is **bold**, they are not afraid of doing something.

→ *The **bold** man climbed the high mountain.*



capture [kæptʃər] *v.*

To **capture** someone or something is to catch them.

→ *James tried to **capture** the bubbles in his hands.*



cardinal [kɑ́:rdənl] *adj.*

If a rule or quality is **cardinal**, then it is the most important one.

→ *Raising your hand in the classroom before you speak is a **cardinal** rule.*



duke [dju:k] *n.*

A **duke** is a man of high social rank but below a king or queen.

→ *The **duke** ruled over the land.*



expose [ikspóuz] *v.*

To **expose** is to make known something that is hidden.

→ *He took off his shirt **exposing** his costume.*



guilty [gílti] *adj.*

If people feel **guilty**, they feel bad for what they did.

→ *I felt **guilty** for taking my sister's cookies.*



hire [haiər] *v.*

To **hire** someone is to pay them money to work for you.

→ *We **hired** a man to paint our house.*



innocent [ínəsnt] *adj.*

If someone is **innocent**, they are not guilty of a crime.

→ *The judge said that the woman was **innocent** of the crime.*



jail [dʒeil] *n.*

Jail is a place where criminals go to be punished.

→ *The thief was caught and sent to **jail** for ten years.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



minister [ministər] *n.*

A **minister** is an important person in government with many duties.
→ *The **minister** of education controls the country's schools.*



ordinary [ɔ́:rdənèri] *adj.*

If someone or something is **ordinary**, they are not special in any way.
→ *Today was just an **ordinary** day. Nothing unusual happened.*



permanent [pə́:rmənənt] *adj.*

If something is **permanent**, it lasts for a long time or forever.
→ *We don't know if Aunt Mildred's visit will be a **permanent** one.*



preserve [prizə́:rv] *v.*

To **preserve** is to protect something from harm.
→ *Dad sprayed a chemical on the house to help **preserve** its looks.*



pronounce [prənáuns] *v.*

To **pronounce** is to say the sounds of letters or words.
→ *Young children often have trouble **pronouncing** words right.*



resemble [rizémbəl] *v.*

To **resemble** someone is to look like them.
→ *The baby **resembles** his father a great deal.*



symptom [símptəm] *n.*

A **symptom** of a bad condition or illness is a sign that it is happening.
→ *Sneezing and a high fever are **symptoms** of the common cold.*



tobacco [təbǽkou] *n.*

Tobacco is a plant whose leaves are smoked, such as in cigarettes.
→ *The **tobacco** in cigarettes is bad for your health.*



twin [twin] *n.*

Twins are two children born at the same time.
→ *My sister and I are **twins**. We look exactly the same.*



witch [witʃ] *n.*

A **witch** is a woman with magical powers.
→ *People think that **witches** fly around on broomsticks.*



accompany [əkʌ́mpəni] *v.*

To **accompany** other people means to join them or go with them.
→ *My brothers **accompanied** me to the movie.*



bare [bɛər] *adj.*

When something is **bare**, it is plain. It has no covering.
→ *He likes to walk around in his **bare** feet.*



branch [brænʧ] *n.*

A **branch** is the part of a tree with leaves.
→ *The monkey was hanging from a **branch** on the tree.*



breath [breθ] *n.*

A **breath** is the air that goes into and out of one's lungs.
→ *You can't take a **breath** under water.*



bridge [briʤ] *n.*

A **bridge** is something that is built over a river so people can cross it.
→ *The old **bridge** fell into the river.*



cast [kæst] *v.*

To **cast** something means to throw it.
→ *The fisherman **cast** his line into the water.*



dare [dɛər] *v.*

To **dare** means to be brave enough to try something.
→ *He **dared** to jump out of the airplane and skydive.*



electronic [ilĕktrŏnik] *adj.*

When something is **electronic**, it uses electricity to do something.
→ *I like having **electronic** devices such as an MP3 player.*



inn [in] *n.*

An **inn** is a place where travelers can rest and eat.
→ *The visitor got a room at the **inn**.*



net [net] *n.*

A **net** is a bag made of strong thread. It is used to catch animals.
→ *The boy caught butterflies in his **net**.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



philosophy [filɑ́səfi] *n.*
A **philosophy** is a way to think about truth and life.
→ *My **philosophy** is "live and let live."*



pot [pɑt] *n.*
A **pot** is a deep, round metal container used for cooking.
→ *Don't touch the **pot** on the stove. It's hot.*



seed [si:d] *n.*
A **seed** is the hard part of a plant or fruit that trees grow from.
→ *I planted the **seed** in the dirt hoping that it would grow into a tree.*



sharp [ʃɑ:rp] *adj.*
When something is **sharp**, it has a thin edge that cuts things easily.
→ *That knife is very **sharp**. Be careful not to hurt yourself.*



sort [sɔ:rt] *n.*
A **sort** of something is a type of it.
→ *What **sort** of instrument do you want to learn to play?*



subtract [səbtrækt] *v.*
To **subtract** means to take something away.
→ *We learned how to **subtract** numbers from each other in class.*



tight [tait] *adj.*
When something is **tight**, it is fixed or fastened firmly in place.
→ *The knots were too **tight** to untie.*



virtual [və́:rtʃuəl] *adj.*
If something is **virtual**, then it is very close to being true or accurate.
→ *Because he's popular, Joe is the **virtual** leader of the group.*



weigh [wei] *v.*
To **weigh** something means to see how heavy it is.
→ *The little dog **weighed** exactly 3kgs.*



whisper [*h*wíspə:*r*] *v.*
To **whisper** means to say very quietly.
→ We have to ***whisper*** in the library so people can focus on reading.

Word List



abstract [æbstrækt] *adj.*

If ideas are **abstract**, they are based on general ways of thinking.

→ *The idea of beauty is **abstract** and changes over time.*



annual [ænjuəl] *adj.*

If something is **annual**, it happens once a year.

→ *The only time I see my aunts and uncles is at our **annual** family picnic.*



clay [klei] *n.*

Clay is a type of heavy, wet soil used to make pots.

→ *She made a bowl out of the **clay**.*



cloth [klɔ(:)θ] *n.*

Cloth is material used to make clothes.

→ *His shirt is made of a very soft type of **cloth**.*



curtain [kə́:rtən] *n.*

A **curtain** is a cloth hung over a window or used to divide a room.

→ *She opened the **curtains** to let light into the room.*



deserve [dizə́:rv] *v.*

To **deserve** is to be worthy of something as a result of one's actions.

→ *The dog **deserved** a bone for behaving very well.*



feather [féðər] *n.*

Feathers are the things covering birds' bodies.

→ *That bird has orange **feathers** on its chest.*



fertile [fə́:rtl] *adj.*

If land is **fertile**, it is able to produce good crops and plants.

→ *The farmer grew many vegetables in the **fertile** soil.*



flood [flʌd] *n.*

A **flood** is an event in which water covers an area which is usually dry.

→ *After three days of rain, there was a **flood** in the city.*



furniture [fə́:rnitʃə:r] *n.*

Furniture is the things used in a house such as tables and chairs.

→ *His living room only had a few simple pieces of **furniture**.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



grave [greiv] *n.*

A **grave** is the place where a dead person is buried.

→ *We visit our grandfather's **grave** each year.*



ideal [aidíːəl] *adj.*

If something is **ideal**, it is the best that it can possibly be.

→ *This house is an **ideal** place for my family. It has everything we need.*



intelligence [intélədʒəns] *n.*

Intelligence is the ability to learn and understand things.

→ *Because of his high **intelligence**, he finished school early.*



nowadays [náuədèiz] *adv.*

If something happens **nowadays**, it happens at the present time.

→ *In the past people walked everywhere. **Nowadays**, they use cars.*



obtain [əbtéin] *v.*

To **obtain** is to get something you want or need.

→ *After I passed the test, I **obtained** my driver's license.*



religious [rilídʒəs] *adj.*

When something is **religious**, it has to do with religion.

→ *The holy man spoke about **religious** topics.*



romantic [roumæntik] *adj.*

When something is **romantic**, it has to do with love.

→ *The young couple went to see a **romantic** movie.*



shell [ʃel] *n.*

A **shell** is a hard covering that protects the body of some sea creatures.

→ *There were many pretty **shells** on the beach.*



shore [ʃoːr] *n.*

A **shore** is the edge of a large body of water.

→ *All of the boats were floating near the **shore**.*



wheel [hwiːl] *n.*

A **wheel** is a round thing on a vehicle that turns when it moves.

→ *A car has four **wheels**.*

Word List



appeal [əpíːl] *v.*

To **appeal** to someone is to be interesting or attractive to them.
→ *Sleeping all day **appeals** to me, but I have to go to school.*



assume [əsjúːm] *v.*

To **assume** something is to think that it is true, even with no proof.
→ *I **assume** you are both familiar with this plan.*



borrow [bɔ́(ː)rou] *v.*

To **borrow** something is to take it and then give it back later.
→ *Can I **borrow** a pencil to use today? I'll give it back to you tomorrow.*



client [kláiənt] *n.*

A **client** is a person or business that pays another to do a service.
→ *She has many **clients** who enjoy coming to her salon.*



downtown [dauntáun] *n.*

The **downtown** is the center of most cities.
→ *The **downtown** is filled with many tall buildings.*



dull [dʌl] *adj.*

If something is **dull**, it is not exciting.
→ *The movie was very **dull**. I fell asleep watching it.*



embarrass [imbǽrəs] *v.*

To **embarrass** someone is to make them feel ashamed or foolish.
→ *He was **embarrassed** when he couldn't remember her name.*



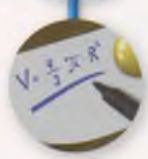
fare [fɛər] *n.*

A **fare** is an amount of money paid to use a bus, train, or taxi.
→ *Since he is a senior, my grandfather pays a low **fare** for the bus.*



former [fɔ́ːrməːr] *adj.*

Former describes something that used to be but is not any more.
→ *The hotel, a **former** castle, was built over 200 years ago.*



formula [fɔ́ːrmjələ] *n.*

A **formula** is a set mathematical way or method of solving a problem.
→ *I learned a new **formula** that may help us with our problem.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



found [faund] *v.*

To **found** a company or organization means to start it.
→ *The pilgrims **founded** one of the first colonies in the United States.*



invest [invést] *v.*

To **invest** means to use money in a way that will bring a profit later.
→ *I **invested** money in a new building that should bring me a profit.*



loan [loun] *n.*

A **loan** is the act of lending something, usually money.
→ *I got a **loan** from the bank.*



practical [prǽktikəl] *adj.*

If something is **practical**, it is useful in normal life.
→ *Learning English is **practical**; you can use it in many places.*



quarter [kwɔ́:rtər] *n.*

A **quarter** is 25 cents.
→ *He paid a **quarter** for the candy.*



salary [sǽləri] *n.*

A **salary** is how much money a person makes at his or her job.
→ *He got a new job with a better **salary**.*



scholarship [skɑ́lə:rʃip] *n.*

A **scholarship** is money given to one so they can go to school.
→ *I got a **scholarship** to help me pay for university.*



temporary [témpərèri] *adj.*

If something is **temporary**, it exists for a short time.
→ *This car is only **temporary**; I'll get a new one soon.*



treasure [tréʒə:r] *n.*

A **treasure** is a collection of valuable things, especially jewels or gold.
→ *They became very rich when they found the buried **treasure**.*



urge [ə:rdʒ] *v.*

To **urge** someone is to try very hard to get them to do something.
→ *He **urged** them to believe his story.*

Appendix

THE WORLD

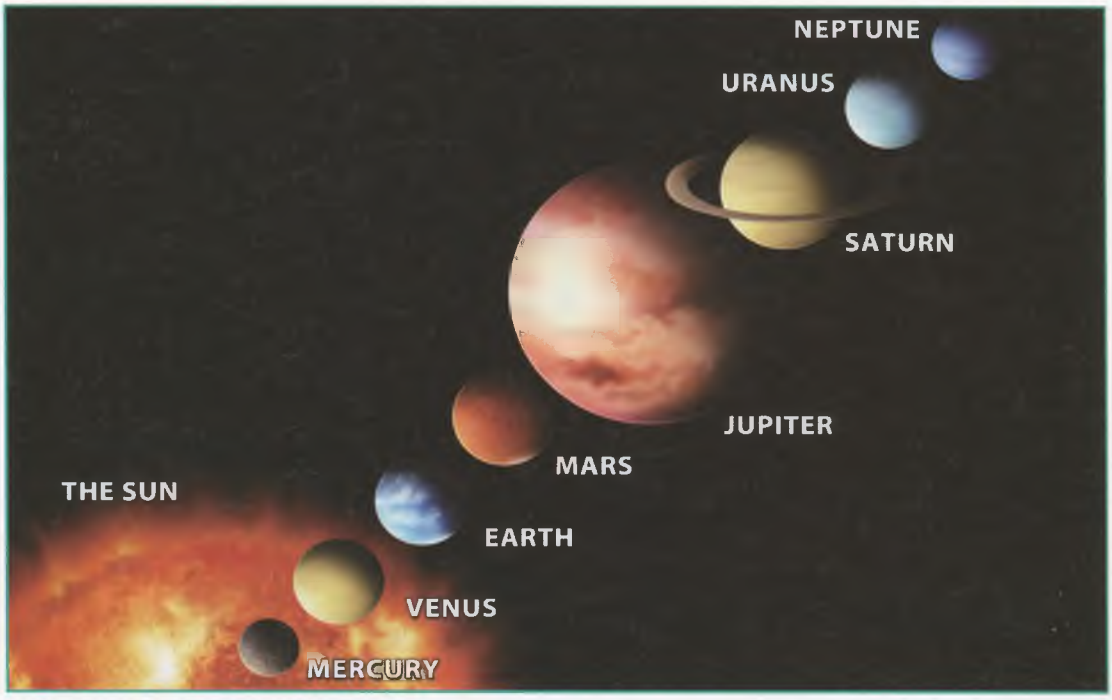


National Flags – Countries – Nationalities

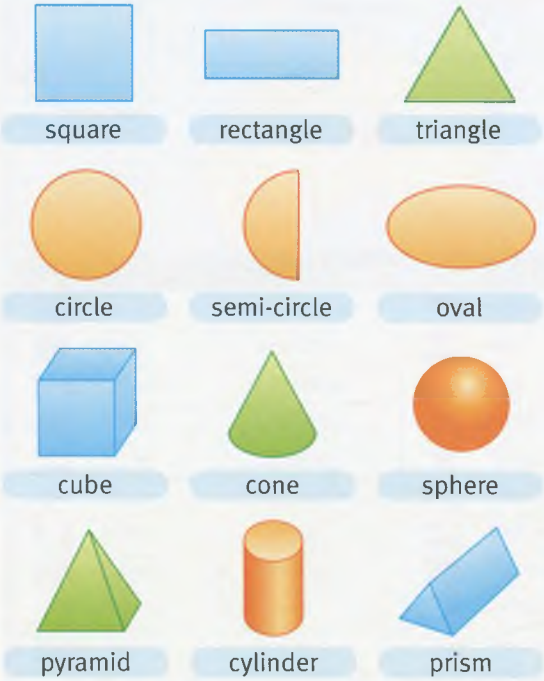
	Australia	Australian		Indonesia	Indonesian		Russia	Russian
	Brazil	Brazilian		Iraq	Iraqi		Spain	Spanish
	Canada	Canadian		Italy	Italian		Sweden	Swedish
	China	Chinese		Japan	Japanese		Switzerland	Swiss
	Egypt	Egyptian		South Korea	Korean		Taiwan	Taiwanese
	Finland	Finn or Finnish		Mexico	Mexican		Thailand	Thai
	France	French		Netherlands	Dutch		Turkey	Turk or Turkish
	Germany	German		Norway	Norwegian		United Kingdom	British
	Greece	Greek		Philippines	Filipino		United States	American
	India	Indian		Poland	Polish		Vietnam	Vietnamese


OCEAN
FINLAND
RUSSIA
ESTONIA
LATVIA
LITHUANIA
BYELARUS
UKRAINE
MOLDOVA
ROMANIA
BULGARIA
KAZAKHSTAN
MONGOLIA
UZBEKISTAN
KYRGYZSTAN
TURKMENISTAN
TAJIKISTAN
TURKEY
CYPRUS
LEBANON
ISRAEL
SYRIA
IRAQ
IRAN
AFGHANISTAN
CHINA
NORTH KOREA
SOUTH KOREA
JAPAN
JORDAN
KUWAIT
BAHRAIN
QATAR
U.A.E.
PAKISTAN
NEPAL
BHUTAN
BANGLADESH
ASIA
EGYPT
SAUDI ARABIA
OMAN
YEMEN
ERITREA
INDIA
MYANMAR
LAOS
THAILAND
VIETNAM
CAMBODIA
TAIWAN
Tropic of Cancer
PHILIPPINES
SUDAN
DJIBOUTI
SOMALIA
SRI LANKA
BRUNEI
MALAYSIA
SINGAPORE
ETHIOPIA
KENYA
UGANDA
RWANDA
BURUNDI
CONGO
TANZANIA
INDIAN
OCEAN
INDONESIA
PAPUA
NEW GUINEA
EAST TIMOR
ZAMBIA
MALAWI
ZIMBABWE
BOTSWANA
MOZAMBIQUE
MADAGASCAR
Tropic of Capricorn
AUSTRALIA
FIJI
NEW
CALEDONIA
SWAZILAND
LESOTHO
SOUTH AFRICA
NEW ZEALAND
SOUTHERN
OCEAN
Antarctic Circle
ANTARCTICA

SOLAR SYSTEM



SHAPES



WEIGHTS & MEASURES

Weight

1 kilogram = 1,000 grams
1 ton = 1,000 kilograms
1 pound = 16 ounces
1 kilogram = 2.2 pounds

Capacity measure

1 quart = 4 cups
1 pint = 2 cups
1 quart = 2 pints
1 gallon = 4 quart
1 gallon = 8 pints

Linear measure

1 centimeter = 10 millimeters
1 meter = 100 centimeters
1 kilometer = 1,000 meters
1 inch = 2.54 centimeters
1 foot = 12 inches
1 yard = 3 feet
1 mile = 5,280 feet

Elbarskhan & mmh

CLOTHES


T-shirt


shirt


blouse


sweater


sweatshirt


coat


raincoat


jacket


vest


pants


shorts


jeans


overalls


skirt


dress


tuxedo


suit


swimsuit

Underwear & Sleepwear / Shoes & Accessories


socks


slippers


shoes


sneakers


boots


rainboots


undershirt


underpants


boxers


pajamas


bathrobe


sunglasses


gloves


mittens


belt


tie


backpack


umbrella


scarf


hat


cap


necklace

earrings

ring

Index

A

ability 110
abroad 38
absorb 92
abstract 176
abuse 74
accompany 170
accomplish 122
accuse 158
adjust 158
admire 56
admission 68
admit 152
adopt 116
afford 74
agriculture 110
aid 56
aim 104
alarm 134
alike 140
amuse 158
ancestor 32
anger 38
angle 32
annoy 140
annual 176
anxiety 80
anxious 8
apart 134
apology 164
apparent 86
appeal 182
approve 122
approximate 122
architecture 140
army 80
arrest 134
arrow 20
artificial 140
assume 182
astronaut 128
astronomy 68
attach 104
attempt 56
authority 56
awake 128
award 134
awful 8

B

bake 74
bare 170
barrier 122
basis 44
bath 146
battle 20
bean 74
beg 116
bend 146
bet 104
beyond 116
billion 80
bin 152
biology 44
blame 68
blind 86
bold 164
boot 32
border 32
borrow 182
boss 92
bow 20
bowl 152
branch 170
brave 20
breath 170
breed 134
bride 38
bridge 170
brief 38
bring 14
broad 50
bucket 134
bush 50

C

cabin 152
cage 44
calculate 86
candle 74
capable 50
capital 56
capture 164
cardinal 164
carriage 104
cartoon 110
carve 80
cash 152
cast 170
castle 14
ceiling 110
chain 140
chamber 98
chase 38
chat 86
cheat 50
chemistry 68
chest 26
chew 146
chief 20
citizen 62
classic 104
clay 176
client 182
cloth 176
colleague 44
colony 44
command 14
commit 86
committee 92
commute 104
compose 86
concentrate 50
conclude 50
confidence 26
confident 50
confirm 104
congratulate 32
consequence 26
considerable 50
consist 8
consult 80
contest 134
contract 92
convert 74
convey 50
convict 134
convince 110
cooperate 56
coral 158
costume 116
cotton 158
council 62
counsel 14
courage 128
crash 158
crew 92
criminal 152
criticize 104
curious 110
curtain 176

D

dare 170
debate 44
debt 74
deck 158
declare 62
decrease 74
defend 56
definite 50
delay 110
delight 51
deny 98
depart 44
depress 44
deserve 176
desire 8
despite 68
destination 51
destruction 56
detect 122

Elbarskhan & mmh

devote 92
diary 110
dictate 51
differ 104
dig 92
dine 92
dinosaur 68
disabled 146
disadvantage 20
disappoint 38
disaster 26
disorder 56
distinct 140
distinguish 140
disturb 26
dive 38
division 56
document 98
donate 92
dormitory 86
double 92
downtown 182
dozen 152
duke 164
dull 182
dust 140
duty 122

E

eager 8
edge 51
elder 152
electronic 170
element 110
elementary 122
elevate 93
embarrass 182
emergency 80
emphasize 98
enable 57
enemy 20
engage 158
enormous 62
ensure 14
entrance 20
estimate 26
exchange 38
excitement 140
exclaim 116
exhaust 86
exhibit 68
expense 104
explosion 14
expose 164
extend 116
extraordinary 62

F

facial 152
factual 44
failure 122
faith 110
fame 68
fantastic 146
fare 182
fascinate 44
fault 74
favor 38
feather 176
fee 38
fence 152
fertile 176
fever 98
fiction 146
firm 158
flag 146
flavor 93
float 128
flood 176
flu 98
fog 62
fool 116
forbid 116
forecast 68
forever 39
formal 105
former 182
formula 182
fortune 80
found 183
foundation 93
frame 32
freeze 98
frustrate 57
fuel 158
fund 74
funeral 62
furniture 176

G

garage 134
generation 93
generous 75
genius 68
gentle 69
geography 69
gesture 98
giant 62
govern 57
gradual 122
grain 111
grand 159
grant 128
grave 177
gravity 128
greenhouse 86
greet 111
guarantee 80
guilty 164
guy 39

H

handle 93
hardly 20
heal 140
heaven 32
height 105
hike 80
hire 164
honor 26
household 8
hurricane 159

I

ideal 177
ignore 86
illustrate 116
immigrant 122
impress 26
impression 62
income 62
incredible 32
indeed 116
ingredient 75
inherit 141
initial 80
inn 170
innocent 164
insert 123
insist 75
inspect 146
inspire 153
instant 123
intelligence 177
intend 20
intense 81
intent 8
interfere 69
interpret 117
interrupt 98
invent 105
invest 183
investigate 111

J

jail 164
jewel 128
jewelry 14

Index

journal 146
journalist 134
joy 111
junior 105

K

kindly 117
kiss 39

L

label 111
labor 105
land 14
landscape 8
last 98
laughter 21
layer 93
legend 32
lend 81
lift 8
lightly 69
likeness 99
liquid 146
load 8
loan 183
log 21
loss 159
lung 9

M

mad 63
manner 141
marathon 26
marvel 147
mechanic 105
mere 153
mess 75
metal 75
meteor 14
military 21
miner 128
mineral 128
minister 165
mission 45
monitor 75
monk 111
monster 14
mood 39
moreover 99
motion 9
motive 117
mount 141
mud 93

N

narrow 26
neat 153
nest 117
net 170
nevertheless 45
northern 15
nowadays 177
nutrient 147

O

obey 21
obtain 177
obvious 87
occasion 153
occupation 45
odd 111
oppose 75
ordinary 165
origin 117
ought 63
overcome 147
overseas 45

P

pace 9
palace 39
pale 27
participate 128
passive 75
path 51
pause 111
peak 81
penalty 153
permanent 165
permission 129
permit 39
perspective 99
persuade 45
philosophy 171
physics 87
plain 159
plenty 57
polite 9
portion 87
possess 9
pot 171
potential 81
pour 129
poverty 123
practical 183
praise 32
presence 129
preserve 165
pretend 123
pride 81
priest 111
prime 105
principal 69
proceed 33
profession 111
pronounce 165
proof 81
protest 39
pup 135
pure 33

Q

qualify 135
quantity 75
quarter 183
quit 81

R

rank 123
rapidly 9
rational 99
raw 129
recall 147
reception 117
recognition 123
recover 99
reef 159
refrigerate 123
regret 147
reject 117
relative 33
relieve 57
religious 177
rely 99
remark 9
remind 87
remote 15
rent 123
repair 135
reputation 57
resemble 165
resist 63
resort 51
resume 135
retire 123
reveal 63
rid 63
rob 135
romantic 177
roof 141
rough 27
route 45
row 69
royal 57
rude 153
ruins 45

Elbarskhan & mmh

S

salary 183
satellite 129
satisfy 27
scale 129
scholar 45
scholarship 183
scream 27
sculpture 39
secretary 87
secure 21
seed 171
seek 9
senior 33
sensitive 27
settle 153
severe 87
shade 27
shadow 51
sharp 171
shelf 69
shell 177
shift 105
shine 9
shock 99
shore 177
shortage 141
shut 159
shy 99
signal 105
significant 45
silence 117
silent 33
sincere 105
sink 33
skip 129
slave 57
slip 135
smooth 93
soil 93
solid 141
somewhat 135
sort 171
soul 147
southern 15
spill 9
spin 81
spite 69
stable 135
stare 99
statistic 23
statue 15
steady 21
steam 15
stock 141
stream 117
stretch 129
strict 159
struggle 57
stupid 57
submit 15
substance 141
subtract 171
succeed 51
sue 75
sufficient 147
super 69
superior 33
supplement 27
surf 159
surgery 147
surround 33
suspect 51
sword 63
symptom 165

T

tale 63
talent 87
task 159
telescope 129
temple 15
temporary 183
terror 27
thesis 87
thick 33
threat 27
thus 99
tight 171
tiny 81
tissue 135
tobacco 165
tomb 141
tone 117
tough 147
trap 63
treasure 183
trial 63
tribe 39
trust 21
tube 147
tutor 81
twin 165
twist 21

U

underground 129
uniform 87
unique 93
unless 21
upper 15
urge 183

V

valley 51
vehicle 153
victim 27
violent 63
virtual 171
vision 87
volcano 45

W

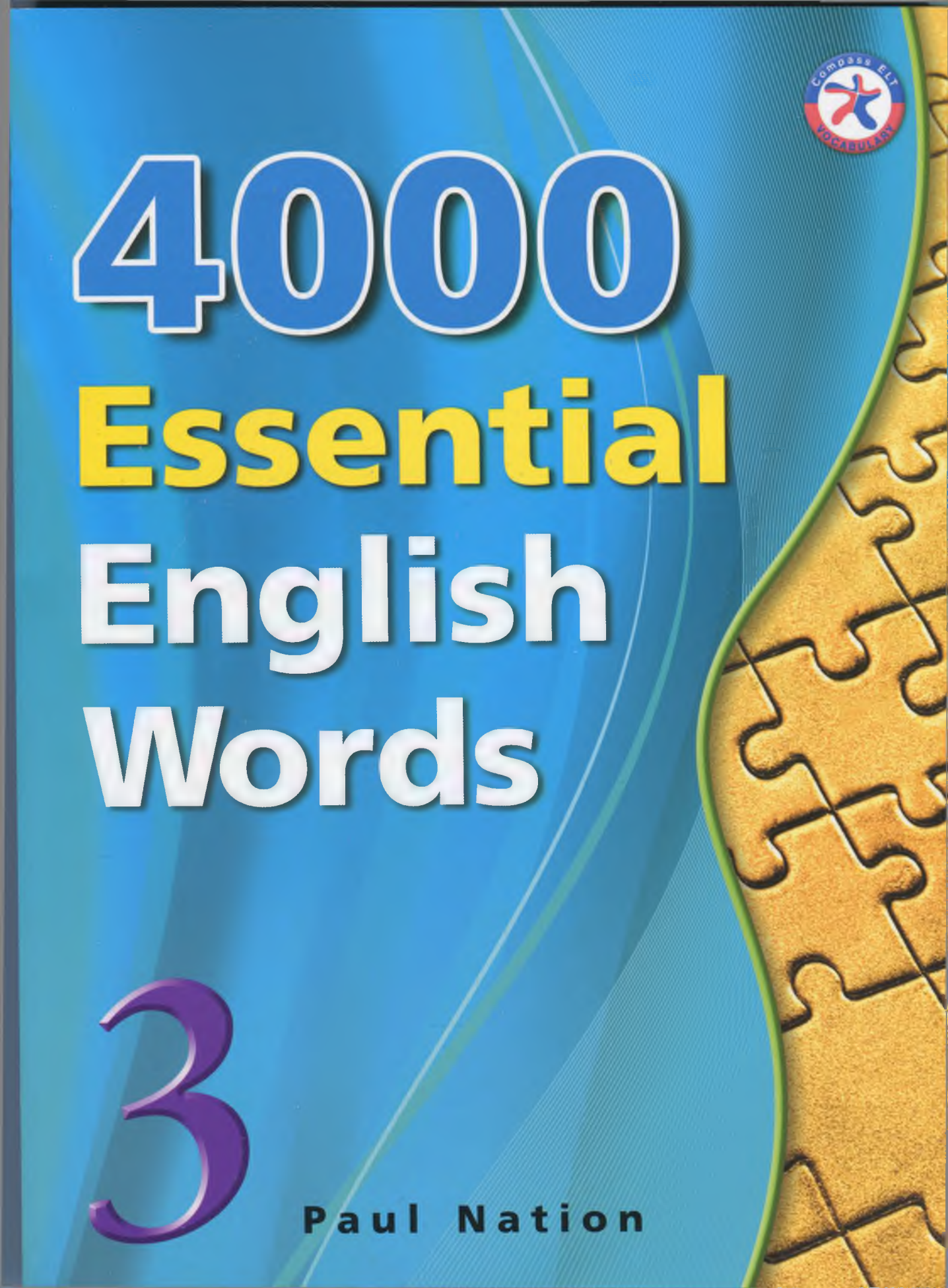
wallet 153
weapon 21
weed 15
weigh 171
wet 69
wheel 177
whisper 171
wing 15
witch 165
wound 141
wrap 33

Y

yard 135
yell 153
youth 39

Z

zone 159


Compass ELT
VOCABULARY
4000
Essential
English
Words
3
Paul Nation

4000 Essential English Words 3

Paul Nation

© 2009 Compass Publishing

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without prior permission in writing from the publisher.

Acquisitions Editor: Fidel Cruz
Project Coordinator: Annie Cho
Design: Design Plus

email: info@compasspub.com
http://www.compasspub.com

ISBN: 978-1-59966-404-0

15 14 13 12 11 10 9
13 12

Photo Credits

All images © Shutterstock, Inc.

Elbarskhan & mmh

mmh

Compass Publishing

4000 Essential English Words

3

Paul Nation

Elbarskhan & mmh

Table of Contents

Unit	Target Words	Page
Introduction		6
1	arise, benefactor, blacksmith, charitable, chimney, compensate, encounter, exceed, forge, humble, iron, ladder, modest, occupy, penny, preach, prosper, province, satisfaction, sustain	8
2	acquire, awkward, caretaker, deceive, discourage, fake, hatred, hut, inferior, lodge, neglect, newcomer, offense, overlook, repay, ridiculous, satisfactory, shepherd, venture, wheat	14
3	alley, ax, bunch, chore, decent, disgrace, elbow, grateful, irritate, kid, loose, offend, overnight, persist, pine, scar, sensation, sled, tease, valentine	20
4	bloom, compact, curl, decay, dessert, dip, distant, eclipse, fairy, grace, leisure, mankind, passion, pillow, pulse, refresh, sneeze, spice, whistle, wool	26
5	acquaint, cemetery, curse, disguise, fancy, flashlight, hood, inhabitant, nourish, pirate, publication, riddle, rot, scare, shortly, skeleton, spoil, starve, thrill, wicked	32
6	alert, broadcast, bulletin, bump, chop, closet, console, district, drawer, endure, execute, grasp, rear, senator, skull, stir, tap, tremendous, underneath, worm	38
7	abandon, ambitious, bark, bay, brilliant, chin, complaint, deaf, enthusiastic, expedition, horizon, loyal, mayor, mutual, overweight, refuge, restore, rub, senses, veterinarian	44
8	anniversary, arithmetic, ashamed, burst, carpenter, coal, couch, drip, elegant, fabric, highlands, ivory, mill, needle, polish, sew, shed, thread, trim, upwards	50
9	ail, ally, boast, bounce, bully, carbohydrate, crawl, defeat, dial, dominant, mercy, nod, opponent, quarrel, rival, sore, sting, strain, torture, wrestle	56
10	absence, aloud, bald, blanket, creep, divorce, imitate, infant, kidnap, nap, nowhere, pat, relief, reproduce, rhyme, suck, urgent, vanish, wagon, wrinkle	62
11	abnormal, bamboo, blossom, compass, dialect, dishonest, dwarf, ecosystem, fatal, impatient, leaf, manuscript, marsh, patience, perfume, pond, proverb, pursuit, recite, wilderness	68
12	anticipate, barrel, beam, casual, caution, contrary, deliberate, dissolve, explode, fasten, germ, kit, puff, rag, scatter, scent, steel, swift, toss, triumph	74
13	aboard, bitter, bullet, devil, drift, enforce, fountain, harbor, inhabit, march, millionaire, port, sheriff, startle, sweat, trigger, unify, vessel, voyage, worship	80
14	apprentice, assure, bandage, bleed, bond, chef, crown, departure, diligent, emperor, fiber, horrible, impolite, kneel, luxury, massive, panic, priority, robe, scold	86
15	affair, assembly, bless, cereal, cheerful, diameter, exploit, famine, harvest, merry, nut, pardon, pharaoh, ripe, roast, routine, scheme, slim, stove, theft	92

Elbarskhan & mmh

Unit	Target Words	Page
16	adolescent, aptitude, compliment, hinder, journalism, jury, justice, liberty, literary, pharmacy, pill, presume, privacy, punishment, sensible, slice, sorrow, straw, swell, tidy	98
17	affection, agency, ash, confine, dismiss, erupt, fate, lava, miserable, navigate, originate, remainder, retrieve, shallow, slope, span, superstition, sympathy, vibrate, wander	104
18	armor, blaze, boom, cliff, flame, independence, invasion, knight, lightning, rebel, retreat, revolution, spear, steep, summit, thunder, troops, warrior, withdraw, yield	110
19	bench, confront, daisy, dispute, horror, incident, mist, object, orphan, plot, pregnant, rage, revenge, shame, sigh, sneak, spare, stem, supper, tender	116
20	beneath, cub, dawn, dissatisfied, ease, evident, hail, howl, leap, magnificent, necessity, outcome, pile, profound, seize, squeeze, supreme, terrific, trait, vital	122
21	accustomed, affirm, astonished, bang, clan, dim, emphasis, fable, feast, glow, hollow, instinct, joint, leak, physician, sacrifice, stiff, stroke, tragic, tune	128
22	accommodate, circus, coincide, commission, dose, dye, extent, gender, headline, informal, inquire, messenger, peer, portrait, pose, ranch, steer, stripe, tame, tempt	134
23	Aborigine, ban, cautious, confess, cottage, daytime, desperate, fade, fierce, gamble, lawn, mow, outlaw, prospect, purse, rod, seldom, shave, terrified, wizard	140
24	baggage, bulb, bundle, cattle, flee, graze, greed, herd, initiate, lane, luggage, nerve, optimist, parade, pave, phantom, portable, poster, scratch, symphony, widow	146
25	circulate, consequent, derive, drown, dynasty, fraction, frost, illusion, invade, lieutenant, marine, merit, navy, polar, ray, resign, suicide, tremble, underlying, via	152
26	alter, aside, autumn, blend, collapse, crush, curve, disgusting, drain, embrace, envy, fireworks, flour, fuse, ginger, jealous, paste, receipt, wipe, wire	158
27	acknowledge, ambassador, blonde, conquer, drag, exaggerate, heritage, insult, meanwhile, necklace, noble, precious, prejudice, rumor, sin, spectacle, stack, suspicious, tin, vase	164
28	ache, arctic, canal, chemist, chill, congress, dairy, descend, grocer, hesitate, institution, jog, merchant, poke, postpone, splash, stubborn, suburb, tide, tragedy	170
29	bomb, certificate, circumstance, coffin, cope, criticism, devastate, frown, gaze, glance, grief, groom, license, microscope, nuclear, portray, rotate, souvenir, submarine, trace	176
30	appliance, basin, broom, caterpillar, cupboard, delicate, emerge, handicap, hook, hop, laundry, pursue, reluctant, sleeve, spine, stain, strip, swear, swing, utilize	182

Appendix 188 Index 193

About the Vocabulary

The 600 words in each book of this series along with the additional target words presented in the appendices included in the first three books of the series are the most useful words in English. They were found by analysis of a collection of English course books from various levels in the primary, secondary and tertiary school systems. The words included in this series were chosen because they occurred many times in different levels of these materials. Because of the way
that they were chosen, these words have the following characteristics:

1 They are useful in both spoken and written English. No matter what English course you are studying, the words in these books will be of value to you.

2 Each word in these books is a high-frequency word. This means that the effort in learning the words is well repaid by the number of times learners have a chance to encounter or use them.

3 These books as a whole cover a large proportion of the words in any spoken or written text. They cover at least 80% of the words in newspapers and academic texts, and at least 90% of the words in novels. They also cover at least 90% of the words in conversation.

About the Books

The activities in these books are specially designed to make use of important learning conditions. Firstly, the words are introduced using sentence definitions and an example sentence. The activities that follow in the units encourage learners to recall the meanings and forms of the words. Some activities also make the learners think about the meaning of the words in the context of a sentence—a sentence different from the sentences that occurred in the introduction of the words. Moreover, each unit ends with a story containing the target words. While reading the story, the learners have to recall the meanings of the words and suit them to the context of the story. Such activities help learners develop a better understanding of a common meaning for a given word which fits the different uses.

Illustrations for each target word are provided to help learners visualize the word as it is being used in the example sentence. These word/image associations aim to help students grasp the meaning of the word as well as recall the word later.

Elbarskhan & mmh

It should be noted that words have more than one grammatical category. However, this series focuses on the word's most common form. This is mentioned to remind learners that just because a word is labeled and utilized as a noun in this series does not mean that it can never be used in another form such as an adjective. This series has simply focused on the word in the form that it is most likely to be expressed.

Supporting Learning with Outside Activities

A well-balanced language course provides four major opportunities for learning: learning through input, learning through output, deliberate learning, and fluency development. The highly structured activities in these books support all four types of learning opportunities. In addition, learning can further be supported through the following activities:

1 Have students create vocabulary cards with one word from the unit on one side of the card and the translation of the word in the student's first language on the other side. Students should use the cards for study in free moments during the day. Over several weeks, students will find that quick repeated studying for brief periods of time is more effective than studying for hours at one sitting.

2 Assign graded readers at students' appropriate levels. Reading such books provides both enjoyment as well as meaning-focused input which will help the words stick in students' memory.

3 Practice reading fluency to promote faster recall of word meaning for both sight recognition and usage. Compass Publishing's *Reading for Speed and Fluency* is a good resource for reading fluency material.

4 Include listening, speaking, and writing activities in classes. Reinforcement of the high-frequency vocabulary presented in this series is important across all the four language skills.

Author **Paul Nation**

Paul Nation is professor of Applied Linguistics in the School of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies at Victoria University of Wellington, New Zealand. He has taught in Indonesia, Thailand, the United States, Finland, and Japan. His specialist interests are language teaching methodology and vocabulary learning.



Word List



arise [əráiz] *v.*

To **arise** is to happen.

→ *Difficulties **arose** with his computer because it was old.*



benefactor [bénəfæktər] *n.*

A **benefactor** is a person who gives money to help someone.

→ *The student's **benefactor** gave him money to spend on his studies.*



blacksmith [blǽksmiθ] *n.*

A **blacksmith** is a person who makes things out of metal.

→ *The **blacksmith** pounded the piece of metal until it was flat.*



charitable [tʃærətəbəl] *adj.*

When someone is **charitable,** they help people who are in need.

→ *My sister was **charitable** enough to help me buy my first house.*



chimney [tʃímni] *n.*

A **chimney** is a tall pipe used to carry smoke out of a building.

→ *The cat was on the roof sitting next to the **chimney**.*



compensate [kάmpənsèit] *v.*

To **compensate** is to pay someone for the time they spent doing something.

→ *Her boss **compensated** her for the extra work she did last week.*



encounter [inkáuntər] *v.*

If you **encounter** something, you meet or come close to it.

→ *I **encountered** a sea turtle while I was swimming.*



exceed [iksí:d] *v.*

To **exceed** is to be more than something.

→ *Since I **exceeded** my limit, I decided to get rid of my credit cards.*



forge [fɔ:rdʒ] *v.*

To **forge** is to make or produce, especially with difficulty.

→ *Stacy and Heather **forged** their friendship when they were teenagers.*



humble [hʌ́mbl] *adj.*

People who are **humble** do not believe that they are better than other people.

→ *Even though Bob is the smartest boy in his class, he is **humble**.*



iron [aiərn] *n.*

Iron is a strong metal that is used to make many objects.

→ *The horse had shoes made of **iron**.*



ladder [lædə:r] *n.*

A **ladder** is an object that is used to climb up and down things.

→ *He used a **ladder** to climb to the top of his tree house.*



modest [mádist] *adj.*

If people are **modest**, they do not think that they are too important.

→ *Derek is very **modest** for someone who is so rich.*



occupy [ákjəpài] *v.*

To **occupy** a place is to live, work, or be there.

→ *Kevin and Alice **occupied** the chairs and had a long discussion.*



penny [péni] *n.*

A **penny** is a coin worth one cent.

→ *U.S. President Abraham Lincoln is on the **penny**.*



preach [pri:tʃ] *v.*

To **preach** is to talk about and promote a religious idea.

→ *Aaron often **preached** about living an honest life.*



prosper [práspər] *v.*

To **prosper** is to be successful or make a lot of money.

→ *Frank's new business finally **prospered** after many years of hard work.*



province [právins] *n.*

A **province** is a small area that is controlled by a country.

→ *Canada is divided into several different **provinces**.*



satisfaction [sæ̀tisfǽkʃən] *n.*

Satisfaction is a feeling you get when you do or receive something good.

→ *Brad was filled with **satisfaction** when he saw what was for dinner.*



sustain [səstéin] *v.*

To **sustain** something is to keep it going.

→ *Wind power is a clean way to **sustain** a city with energy.*

Elbarskhan & mmh

UNIT 2

Word List



acquire [əkwáiər] *v.*

To **acquire** something is to gain possession of it.

→ *Tina **acquired** a strange package yesterday.*



awkward [ɔ́:kwərd] *adj.*

If something is **awkward**, it is embarrassing and uncomfortable.

→ *After dropping his coffee cup, Robbie felt **awkward**.*



caretaker [kɛ́ərtèikər] *n.*

A **caretaker** is a person who takes care of very young, old, or sick people.

→ *My grandmother's **caretaker** helps her get around the house.*



deceive [disí:v] *v.*

To **deceive** someone is to make them believe something that is not true.

→ *He tried to **deceive** his friends as they were playing a game.*



discourage [diskə́:ridʒ] *v.*

To **discourage** someone is to make them feel less excited about something.

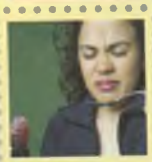
→ *Mr. Perry **discouraged** the students from quitting school.*



fake [feik] *adj.*

If something is **fake**, it is made to look real in order to trick people.

→ *The model was wearing **fake** eyelashes.*



hatred [héitrid] *n.*

Hatred is a strong feeling of not liking someone or something.

→ *I have a **hatred** for the taste of medicine.*



hut [hʌt] *n.*

A **hut** is a house made of wood, grass, or mud that has only one or two rooms.

→ *We all went into the **hut** to sleep.*



inferior [infíəriər] *adj.*

If something is **inferior**, it is not as good as something else.

→ *Cars built a hundred years ago are **inferior** to ones built today.*



lodge [lɑdʒ] *n.*

A **lodge** is a house in the mountains, used by people who hunt or fish.

→ *During our ski trip, we stayed at a **lodge**.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



neglect [niglékt] *v.*

To **neglect** someone or something is to not take care of it properly.

→ *William **neglected** his room, so it is a complete mess.*

newcomer [nyú:kʌ̀mə:r] *n.*

A **newcomer** is a person who has recently arrived at a place or a group.

→ *The students happily welcomed the **newcomer** to the school.*

offense [əfens] *n.*

An **offense** is behavior that is wrong or breaks a law.

→ *Stealing a car is a very serious **offense**.*

overlook [ouvərlúk] *v.*

To **overlook** something is to not notice it, or to not realize that it is important.

→ *Brenda **overlooked** the last step and had a bad fall.*

repay [ri:péi] *v.*

To **repay** is to pay back or to reward someone or something.

→ *She **repaid** her friend for all of his hard work with a small gift.*

ridiculous [ridikjələs] *adj.*

If something is **ridiculous**, it is silly or strange.

→ *Steve looked **ridiculous** with those huge blue sunglasses.*

satisfactory [sætisfæktəri] *adj.*

If something is **satisfactory**, it is good enough.

→ *Mina often received **satisfactory** grades since she studied so hard.*

shepherd [ʃépə:rd] *n.*

A **shepherd** is a person who protects and cares for sheep.

→ *The **shepherd** moved the sheep to another field.*

venture [véntʃər] *v.*

To **venture** is to go to a place that may be dangerous.

→ *Even though it was dangerous, they **ventured** up the mountain.*

wheat [hwi:t] *n.*

Wheat is a plant which makes grain. **Wheat** grain is used to make bread.

→ *The field of golden **wheat** was ready to be harvested.*

UNIT 3

Word List



alley [ǽli] *n.*

An **alley** is a narrow road behind houses or buildings.

→ *The **alley** behind my house looks dirty.*



ax [æks] *n.*

An **ax** is a tool used to cut wood.

→ *She used an **ax** to cut some wood for the fire.*



bunch [bʌntʃ] *n.*

A **bunch** is a group of the same things.

→ *She was hungry, so she ate the entire **bunch** of grapes.*



chore [tʃɔːr] *n.*

A **chore** is a job that you have to do but don't like.

→ *It's Nikki's **chore** to do the dishes every Tuesday and Wednesday night.*



decent [diːsənt] *adj.*

When something is **decent**, it is OK or good enough.

→ *Eric did a **decent** job painting the fence.*



disgrace [disgréis] *n.*

Disgrace is a feeling of shame.

→ *He felt a sense of **disgrace** after failing his big exam.*



elbow [élbou] *n.*

The **elbow** is the middle part of a person's arm that lets you bend it.

→ *She pointed to her **elbow** to show me where she hurt herself.*



grateful [gréitfəl] *adj.*

When you are **grateful** for something, you are happy that it happened.

→ *The girls were **grateful** to have a chance to spend time with their grandfather.*



irritate [írətèit] *v.*

To **irritate** means to annoy someone.

→ *She was **irritated** when her brother told her that he had lost her camera.*



kid [kid] *v.*

To **kid** is to make a joke to make someone believe something which is not true.

→ *I am not really mad. I was **kidding** when I said I was angry.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



loose [lu:s] *adj.*

When something is **loose**, it is not held in place well.

→ *The bolt was **loose**, so I tightened it with the wrench.*



offend [əfénd] *v.*

To **offend** someone means to make them angry or upset.

→ *They were both **offended** by what they had said to each other.*



overnight [òuvərnáit] *adv.*

When something happens **overnight**, it happens during the night.

→ *The campers stayed in the tent **overnight**.*



persist [pə:rsíst] *v.*

To **persist** means to keep doing something even when it is hard.

→ *Even though the lesson was difficult, he **persisted** until he understood.*



pine [pain] *n.*

A **pine** is a type of tree that is tall and thin.

→ *There were many beautiful **pine** trees in the forest.*



scar [skɑ:r] *n.*

A **scar** is a mark on the skin after a wound heals.

→ *The monster had horrible **scars** on his cheek and forehead.*



sensation [sensèiʃən] *n.*

A **sensation** is a feeling a person gets from their senses.

→ *Mom got a painful **sensation** in her head from the loud noise.*



sled [sled] *n.*

A **sled** is a small vehicle that you use on snow.

→ *Marvin likes to ride his **sled** down the hill in winter.*



tease [ti:z] *v.*

To **tease** someone means to laugh at or make fun of them.

→ *Jake **teased** Charlie because he was the new student.*



valentine [væləntàin] *n.*

A **valentine** is someone you love or admire with great affection.

→ *Harry wanted Molly to be his **valentine**.*

UNIT 4

Word List



bloom [blu:m] *v.*

When a plant **blooms**, it makes flowers.

→ *Roses look so pretty when they **bloom**.*



compact [kəmpækt] *adj.*

If something is **compact**, it is smaller than normal.

→ *A laptop computer is much more **compact** than a desktop model.*



curl [kə:rl] *n.*

A **curl** is a small piece of something with a round shape.

→ *The colorful ribbons were bent into **curls**.*



decay [dikéi] *v.*

To **decay** is to be destroyed naturally.

→ *The old wooden house was slowly **decaying**.*



dessert [dizə́:rt] *n.*

Dessert is a sweet food that you eat after a meal.

→ *Kayla wants ice cream for **dessert**.*



dip [dip] *v.*

To **dip** something is to put part of it into a liquid for a short time.

→ *Laurel **dipped** her strawberry into the chocolate.*



distant [dístənt] *adj.*

If something is **distant**, it is far away.

→ *Michael could barely see the **distant** island.*



eclipse [iklíps] *n.*

An **eclipse** is an occasion when the moon moves in front of the sun.

→ *A complete **eclipse** of the sun is a very rare occurrence.*



fairy [fɛ́əri] *n.*

A **fairy** is a small, magic creature with wings.

→ *There are usually **fairies** in fantasy stories.*



grace [greis] *n.*

Grace is a quality of moving in a smooth, relaxed and attractive way.

→ *The ballerina danced with **grace**.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



leisure [li:ʒə:r] *n.*

Leisure is time when you do not have to do work.

→ *Eve likes to listen to music in her **leisure** time.*



mankind [mænkaind] *n.*

Mankind is all of the world's people.

→ *All of **mankind** has to work to make this a better world.*



passion [pæʃən] *n.*

Passion is a very strong feeling of wanting to do something.

→ *She had a **passion** for dancing.*



pillow [pilou] *n.*

A **pillow** is something that you put your head on when you sleep.

→ *When I travel, I usually take along my favorite **pillow**.*



pulse [pʌls] *n.*

A **pulse** is the beat of the heart.

→ *The doctor checked the patient's **pulse** by feeling his wrist.*



refresh [rifreʃ] *v.*

To **refresh** someone is to make them feel less hot or tired.

→ *The baby was **refreshed** after taking a cool bath.*



sneeze [sni:z] *v.*

To **sneeze** is to suddenly blow air out of your nose and mouth.

→ *He **sneezed** after smelling the flower.*



spice [spais] *n.*

A **spice** is a flavor for food and drinks.

→ *Two common **spices** found in many homes are salt and pepper.*



whistle [hwisəl] *v.*

To **whistle** is to make a sound by putting your lips together and blowing.

→ *As he was listening to music, Daryl **whistled**.*



wool [wul] *n.*

Wool is the hair that a sheep has.

→ *Grandma wants to use the blue **wool** to knit me a sweater.*

UNIT 5

Word List



acquaint [əkwéint] *v.*

To **acquaint** is to get to know something or someone.

→ *Nancy **acquainted** herself with the new computer.*



cemetery [sémətèri] *n.*

A **cemetery** is where people are buried when they die.

→ *Some people are scared of **cemeteries**.*



curse [kə:rs] *v.*

To **curse** someone or something is to hope that bad things happen to them.

→ *The witch **cursed** the village.*



disguise [disgáiz] *n.*

A **disguise** is something you wear so people cannot tell who you are.

→ *Everyone knew that it was Dad in the Santa **disguise**.*



fancy [fǽnsi] *adj.*

If something is **fancy**, it is nicer than normal.

→ *Their table was all set for a **fancy** dinner.*



flashlight [flǽʃlàit] *n.*

A **flashlight** is a small electric light that you carry in your hand.

→ *We took a **flashlight** when we went camping.*



hood [hud] *n.*

A **hood** is part of a coat that goes over your head.

→ *She put on her **hood** to keep her head warm.*



inhabitant [inhǽbətənt] *n.*

An **inhabitant** is a person who lives in a certain place.

→ *The number of **inhabitants** in the countryside is increasing.*



nourish [nə́:riʃ] *v.*

To **nourish** something is to give it food that it needs to live.

→ *A good mother will **nourish** her baby every day.*



pirate [páiərət] *n.*

A **pirate** is a sailor who steals things from other boats.

→ ***Pirates** are very scary characters.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



publication [pʌbləkéiʃən] *n.*

A **publication** is something printed, like a newspaper or book.

→ *She's been a subscriber to that **publication** for over ten years.*



riddle [rídl] *n.*

A **riddle** is a question that is difficult to answer but meant to be funny.

→ *I could not answer Wendy's **riddle**, but it made me laugh.*



rot [rɔt] *v.*

When something **rots**, it slowly gets softer and is destroyed.

→ *The old log began to **rot** in the forest.*



scare [skɛə:r] *v.*

To **scare** means to cause one to feel frightened.

→ *I was **scared** by the sight of the monster.*



shortly [ʃɔ:rtli] *adv.*

If something will happen **shortly**, it will happen very soon.

→ *My workday will end **shortly**.*



skeleton [skélətn] *n.*

A **skeleton** is the bones of a body.

→ *There is a **skeleton** in the science classroom.*



spoil [spɔil] *v.*

If something **spoils**, it turns bad or rots.

→ *We left the fruit out too long, and it **spoiled**.*



starve [sta:rv] *v.*

If a person **starves**, they do not get enough to eat and sometimes die.

→ *During the war, many people **starved**.*



thrill [θril] *n.*

A **thrill** is an exciting feeling.

→ *The boys enjoy the **thrill** of surfing a big wave.*



wicked [wíkid] *adj.*

If something is **wicked**, it is very bad or evil.

→ *My boss is a very **wicked** man.*

UNIT 6

Word List



alert [ələ́:rt] *v.*

To **alert** someone is to tell or warn them about something.

→ *The fire alarm **alerted** us that there was a problem.*



broadcast [brɔ́:dkæst] *n.*

A **broadcast** is a television or radio show.

→ *We watched the **broadcast** of the local news on TV.*



bulletin [búlətin] *n.*

A **bulletin** is a news report that talks about very recent and important events.

→ *There was a live **bulletin** reporting on the economy of the city.*



bump [bʌmp] *n.*

A **bump** is a small raised area on a surface.

→ *The monkey got a **bump** on his head because he was hit by a rock.*



chop [tʃɑp] *v.*

To **chop** something means to cut it into pieces with a tool.

→ *Mom **chopped** some vegetables to put into the stew.*



closet [klɑ́zit] *n.*

A **closet** is a small room used to store things.

→ *Marie has many clothes inside of her **closet**.*



console [kənsóul] *v.*

To **console** someone who is sad means to make them comforted.

→ *When my dog ran away, my dad **consoled** me.*



district [dístrikt] *n.*

A **district** is a small part of a city, county, state, or country.

→ *I live in a residential **district** of Seattle, Washington.*



drawer [drɔ́:ər] *n.*

A **drawer** is a small part in furniture that is used to store things.

→ *I put my clothes into the empty **drawers**.*



endure [endjúər] *v.*

To **endure** something tough means to do or go through it.

→ *She had to **endure** her husband shouting all day long.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



execute [éksikjù:t] *v.*

To **execute** someone means to kill them as a legal punishment.

→ *Some people are **executed** for serious crimes.*



grasp [græsp] *v.*

To **grasp** something means to hold it.

→ *He **grasped** the bag of money tightly.*



rear [riə:r] *n.*

When something is in the **rear** of something, it is in the back.

→ *The man loaded the **rear** of his truck with boxes.*



senator [sénətər] *n.*

A **senator** is someone who makes laws for a state.

→ *The young **senator** promised to make laws that would help the people.*



skull [skʌl] *n.*

A **skull** is the hard part of your head. Your brain is inside of it.

→ *The brain is protected by the **skull**.*



stir [stə:r] *v.*

To **stir** something means to mix it using something small, like a spoon.

→ *Mom **stirred** the batter until it was smooth.*



tap [tæp] *v.*

To **tap** something is to hit it lightly.

→ *He **tapped** the keys of the keyboard to write a short word.*



tremendous [triméndəs] *adj.*

When something is **tremendous**, it is very large.

→ *The Earth's oceans are filled with a **tremendous** amount of water.*



underneath [ʌndərní:ə] *prep.*

When something is **underneath** something else, it is below or lower than it.

→ *The roots of a tree are located **underneath** the ground.*



worm [wə:rm] *n.*

A **worm** is a small animal with a long, thin body.

→ ***Worms** are often used to help catch fish.*

UNIT 7

Word List



abandon [əbǽndən] *v.*

To **abandon** something is to leave it forever or for a long time.

→ *The old room had been **abandoned** years before.*



ambitious [æmbíʃəs] *adj.*

If someone is **ambitious**, they want to be rich or successful.

→ *Kendra had to be **ambitious** to get into medical school.*



bark [bɑ:rk] *v.*

When a dog **barks**, it makes a short, loud noise.

→ *The dog **barked** loudly and frighteningly.*



bay [bei] *n.*

A **bay** is an area near the ocean where the land goes inward.

→ *The Golden Gate Bridge crosses San Francisco **Bay**.*



brilliant [briljənt] *adj.*

If someone is **brilliant**, they are very smart.

→ *My younger sister is **brilliant** for someone her age.*



chin [tʃin] *n.*

Your **chin** is the hard part at the bottom of your face.

→ *Luke pointed to the hair on his **chin**.*



complaint [kəmplèint] *n.*

A **complaint** is something you say to tell people that you don't like something

→ *Mom said she didn't want to hear my brother's **complaints**.*



deaf [def] *adj.*

When someone is **deaf**, they cannot hear.

→ *Susan was born **deaf**.*



enthusiastic [enəu:ziæstik] *adj.*

To be **enthusiastic** about something is to be excited by or interested in it.

→ *The man was **enthusiastic** about his job.*



expedition [èkspədíʃən] *n.*

An **expedition** is a long trip, usually to a place very far away.

→ *They got into their spaceship to begin their **expedition**.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



horizon [həráizən] *n.*

The **horizon** is where the sky looks like it meets the ground.

→ *The sun dipped below the **horizon**.*



loyal [lɔ́iəl] *adj.*

To be **loyal** to something or someone is to agree to always help them.

→ *The three friends are very **loyal** to each other.*



mayor [méiə:r] *n.*

The **mayor** is the person in charge of a city.

→ *The **mayor** of my hometown is quite a powerful speaker.*



mutual [mjú:tʃuəl] *adj.*

If something is **mutual**, it is felt in the same way by two or more people.

→ *Robert likes Sarah. The feeling is **mutual**.*



overweight [òuvərwéit] *adj.*

If someone is **overweight**, they are very fat.

→ *Roger eats too much, so now he's **overweight**.*



refuge [réfju:dʒ] *n.*

A **refuge** is a place where you go to be safe.

→ *When it started to rain, she found **refuge** in the house.*



restore [ristɔ́:r] *v.*

To **restore** something is to put it back the way it was.

→ *Victor **restored** the old car.*



rub [rʌb] *v.*

To **rub** something is to push on it and move your hand back and forth.

→ *Mom's feet were sore, so she **rubbed** them.*



senses [sensiz] *n.*

Your **senses** are how you see, taste, hear, feel and smell.

→ *It would be hard to live without your five **senses**.*



veterinarian [vètərənɛ́əriən] *n.*

A **veterinarian** is a doctor that takes care of animals.

→ *Wanda became a **veterinarian** because she loves dogs.*

Word List



anniversary [ænəvə́:rsəri] *n.*

An **anniversary** is a day that celebrates something from the past.

→ *My parents went out to eat for their wedding **anniversary**.*



arithmetic [s] *n.*

Arithmetic is math.

→ *I like to study **arithmetic** at school.*



ashamed [əʃéimd] *adj.*

To be **ashamed** is to feel upset because you did something wrong or bad.

→ *He was **ashamed** when he found out that I knew about his past.*



burst [bə:rst] *v.*

To **burst** is to suddenly break open or apart.

→ *The bomb **burst** over the city.*



carpenter [kɑ́:rpəntər] *n.*

A **carpenter** is a person who builds things with wood.

→ *We hired a **carpenter** to make a cupboard.*



coal [koul] *n.*

Coal is a hard black rock that you burn for heat.

→ *Many power stations burn **coal** to produce energy.*



couch [kautʃ] *n.*

A **couch** is a long, soft seat that many people can sit on.

→ *Kim and Martin's new **couch** was very expensive.*



drip [drip] *v.*

When a liquid **drips**, just a little bit falls at a time.

→ *I heard water **dripping** from the faucet.*



elegant [éligənt] *adj.*

If something is **elegant**, it is very fancy and pleasing.

→ *In Japan, women wear **elegant** kimonos on special occasions.*



fabric [fæbrik] *n.*

Fabric is cloth used to make clothes, furniture, etc.

→ *The towels were made from a soft **fabric**.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



highlands [hailənd] *n.*

The **highlands** are high areas of land, usually with mountains.

→ *The man had a small home in the **highlands**.*



ivory [áivəri] *n.*

Ivory is a white, hard substance that comes from elephants.

→ *The elephant's long **ivory** tusks looked very impressive.*



mill [mil] *n.*

A **mill** is a building where flour is made.

→ *The farmer took his wheat to the **mill** to make it into flour.*



needle [ní:dl] *n.*

A **needle** is a small, sharp piece of metal that you use to make or fix clothes.

→ *I used a **needle** to fix the hole in my pants.*



polish [páliʃ] *v.*

To **polish** something is to rub it in order to make it shiny.

→ *Mark spent all morning **polishing** his shoes for the wedding.*



sew [sou] *v.*

To **sew** means to put pieces of cloth together using string.

→ *I learned to **sew** when I was a little girl.*



shed [ʃed] *n.*

A **shed** is a small building where you store things like tools.

→ *We have a small **shed** in the backyard for storage.*



thread [θred] *n.*

A **thread** is a thin piece of string.

→ *I have many different colors of **thread** at home.*



trim [trim] *v.*

To **trim** something is to cut it a little bit.

→ *I had my hair **trimmed** this afternoon.*



upwards [ʌpwərdz] *adv.*

If something goes **upwards**, it moves vertically higher.

→ *The kite went **upwards** further and further.*

UNIT 9

Word List



ail [eil] *v.*

To **ail** a person or group is to cause difficulty or pain.

→ *My brother went to the doctor to see what was **ailing** him.*



ally [ælai] *n.*

An **ally** is someone who agrees to help or support you.

→ *I was happy to find many **allies** who shared the same opinion as me.*



boast [boust] *v.*

To **boast** is to talk about how good you are.

→ *We all became tired of listening to him **boast** about himself all day.*



bounce [bauns] *v.*

To **bounce** is to move something up and away from a surface after hitting it.

→ *Owen **bounced** the ball on the ground.*



bully [búli] *n.*

A **bully** is a person who is mean to others.

→ *The two **bullies** always picked on the smaller, weaker kids.*



carbohydrate [kà:rbouhàidreit] *n.*

Carbohydrates are substances in foods like bread that give you energy.

→ *__Carbohydrates__ like rice are a good source of energy for active people.*



crawl [krɔ:l] *v.*

To **crawl** is to move slowly on your hands and knees.

→ *The baby **crawled** across the floor.*



defeat [difí:t] *v.*

To **defeat** someone is to beat them in a game or battle.

→ *The champion **defeated** the challenger in the boxing match.*



dial [dáiəl] *n.*

A **dial** is the front of a clock.

→ *I looked at the **dial** to see what time it was.*



dominant [dámənənt] *adj.*

When someone or something is **dominant**, they are stronger than others.

→ *The gorilla is one of the **dominant** animals in the jungle.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



mercy [mə:rsi] *n.*
If you show **mercy**, you choose not to punish or harm someone.
→ *He asked his boss for **mercy** and to not fire him.*

nod [nɑd] *v.*
To **nod** is to move your head up and down.
→ *I **nodded** my head as I listened to the song.*

opponent [əpóunənt] *n.*
An **opponent** is someone who fights against you.
→ *On the field, our **opponents** were too good for us.*

quarrel [kwɔ́:rəl] *v.*
To **quarrel** is to argue or fight.
→ *Billy **quarreled** with his wife about buying a new house.*

rival [ráivəl] *n.*
A **rival** is someone that is trying to keep you from getting what you want.
→ *The three **rivals** were all competing for the same job.*

sore [sɔ:r] *adj.*
When a part of your body is **sore**, it hurts.
→ *After lifting the heavy box, Mona's back was **sore**.*

sting [stiŋ] *v.*
To **sting** is to cause pain by pushing a sharp part into the skin.
→ *The needle **stung** my arm and made me say, "Ouch!"*

strain [strein] *v.*
To **strain** is to try very hard.
→ *Casey **strained** to lift the heavy box.*

torture [tɔ́:rtʃə:r] *n.*
Torture is something that causes you physical or mental pain.
→ *Greg thought that writing the essay was **torture**.*

wrestle [résəl] *v.*
To **wrestle** is to play a game where you try to push someone to the floor.
→ *My dad loved to **wrestle** when he was in high school.*

UNIT 10

Word List



absence [ǽbsəns] *n.*

Absence is the state of something being away.

→ *There is an **absence** of sand in the hourglass.*



aloud [əláud] *adv.*

If you say something **aloud**, you say it so that others can hear you.

→ *My father often reads stories **aloud** to me and my sister.*



bald [bɔ:ld] *adj.*

If someone is **bald**, they have no hair.

→ *My oldest brother is **bald**.*



blanket [blǽŋkit] *n.*

A **blanket** is a piece of cloth that you use to keep warm or to sit upon.

→ *I laid a **blanket** on the ground so that we could have a picnic.*



creep [kri:p] *v.*

To **creep** is to move quietly and slowly.

→ *The cat slowly **crept** down the tree.*



divorce [divɔ́:rs] *n.*

Divorce is an event in which a marriage is ended.

→ ***Divorce** rates have increased in the past twenty years.*



imitate [ímitèit] *v.*

To **imitate** someone is to do exactly what they do.

→ *He **imitated** his favorite superhero by putting on a costume.*



infant [ínfənt] *n.*

An **infant** is a baby.

→ *The **infant** cried all night.*



kidnap [kídnæp] *v.*

To **kidnap** someone is to take them illegally.

→ *She was terrified to find out her son was **kidnapped**.*



nap [næp] *n.*

A **nap** is a short sleep, usually during the day.

→ *I took a short **nap** because I stayed up late last night.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



nowhere [nóuhwɛ̀ə:r] *adv.*

You use **nowhere** to say that a place or thing does not exist.

→ *Unfortunately, water was **nowhere** to be found.*



pat [pæt] *v.*

To **pat** something is to hit it softly with your hand.

→ *I **patted** some lotion onto my face.*



relief [rilí:f] *n.*

Relief is a feeling you get when something bad or challenging ends.

→ *I felt a sense of **relief** when I heard the good news.*



reproduce [rì:prədjú:s] *v.*

To **reproduce** is to make something exactly how someone else did it.

→ *The children tried to **reproduce** their house using toy blocks.*



rhyme [raim] *n.*

To **rhyme** is to have the same sounds at the end of a word.

→ *Humpty Dumpty is an old **rhyme** that children learn in school.*



suck [sʌk] *v.*

To **suck** is to put something in your mouth and try to get flavor out of it.

→ *The baby **sucked** milk from her bottle.*



urgent [ə́:rdʒənt] *adj.*

If something is **urgent**, it is important and needs to be done now.

→ *He had to leave now; it was **urgent**.*



vanish [vǽniʃ] *v.*

To **vanish** is to go away suddenly.

→ *All the passengers **vanished** from the train station.*



wagon [wǽgən] *n.*

A **wagon** is a cart you use to carry heavy things.

→ *He used his **wagon** to carry some of his gifts.*



wrinkle [ríŋkəl] *n.*

A **wrinkle** is a line on a person's face that happens as they get old.

→ *My grandfather has some **wrinkles** on his face.*

Elbarskhan & mmh

UNIT 11

Word List



abnormal [æbnɔ́:rməl] *adj.*

If something is **abnormal**, it is strange or not normal.

→ *Her idea of art is a bit too **abnormal** for me.*



bamboo [bæmbú:] *n.*

Bamboo is a hard plant with thin branches and leaves.

→ *Outside his home, there is a lot of **bamboo**.*



blossom [blɑ́səm] *n.*

A **blossom** is a flower or group of flowers.

→ *There were colorful **blossoms** in the yard.*



compass [kʌ́mpəs] *n.*

A **compass** is a device used to tell what direction one is going.

→ *A **compass** is an important tool to have when you are traveling.*



dialect [dáiəlèkt] *n.*

A **dialect** is a regional variety of language showing where you are from.

→ *People from the U.K. have a different **dialect** of English from those in the U*



dishonest [disɑ́nist] *adj.*

If someone is **dishonest**, they do not tell the truth.

→ *She was being **dishonest** when she copied the answers from his test.*



dwarf [dwɔ:rf] *n.*

A **dwarf** is a creature from stories that often looks like a short, hairy man.

→ *The **dwarf** had a pleasant look on his face.*



ecosystem [i:kousistəm] *n.*

An **ecosystem** is a group of plants and animals in an area.

→ *The river's **ecosystem** not only includes fish but other insects and plants t*



fatal [féitl] *adj.*

If something is **fatal**, it causes death.

→ *They passed away in a **fatal** car crash.*



impatient [impéiʃənt] *adj.*

If someone is **impatient**, they are not able to wait for things.

→ *Bob was so **impatient** that he could barely wait for the light to turn green.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



leaf [li:f] *n.*

A **leaf** is the flat green thing on trees or bushes.

→ *In the fall, the **leaves** on the trees change colors.*

manuscript [mænjəskript] *n.*

A **manuscript** is an old book or paper written by hand.

→ *The **manuscript** was written over 150 years ago.*

marsh [ma:rʃ] *n.*

A **marsh** is a type of wet land covered with grasses and short plants.

→ *The **marsh** looked so lovely against the mountains.*

patience [péiʃəns] *n.*

Patience is the ability to wait for something without becoming upset.

→ *Sue's **patience** was rewarded by catching her very first fish.*

perfume [pə:rfju:m] *n.*

Perfume is a good-smelling liquid that girls wear.

→ *When she wore her **perfume**, everyone said she smelled great.*

pond [pand] *n.*

A **pond** is a very small area of water.

→ *The ducks swam in the **pond**.*

proverb [právə:rb] *n.*

A **proverb** is a short saying that tells you something important.

→ *The **proverb** "egg on your face" means you've done something embarrassing.*

pursuit [pərsú:t] *n.*

A **pursuit** is a chase.

→ *The dinosaur was in **pursuit** of the caveman.*

recite [risáit] *v.*

To **recite** something means to repeat or say aloud in front of a group.

→ *Katie **recited** the Pledge of Allegiance in class.*

wilderness [wíldə:rnis] *n.*

A **wilderness** is an area where no people live.

→ *If you are not careful, you can get lost in the **wilderness**.*

Elbarskhan & mmh

Word List



anticipate [æntísəpèit] *v.*

To **anticipate** something is to think that it will happen.

→ *Carrie **anticipated** the arrival of her baby.*



barrel [bǽrəl] *n.*

A **barrel** is a round thing that you can keep liquids in.

→ *There was an empty **barrel** outside the house.*



beam [bi:m] *n.*

A **beam** is a heavy bar.

→ *Modern skyscrapers are made with several **beams**.*



casual [kǽʒuəl] *adj.*

If something is **casual**, it is relaxed or simple.

→ *You can wear **casual** clothes to the party like jeans.*



caution [kɔ́:ʃən] *n.*

Caution is care and attention in order to avoid danger.

→ *Please use the power saw with **caution**. It is very dangerous.*



contrary [kántreri] *adj.*

If something is **contrary** to something else, it is the opposite.

→ *It isn't warm outside at all. On the **contrary**, it is quite cold.*



deliberate [dilíbərit] *adj.*

If you are **deliberate**, you do something on purpose.

→ *Bernie made a **deliberate** attempt to injure Andy.*



dissolve [dizálv] *v.*

To **dissolve** something is to mix it into a liquid and disappear.

→ *I **dissolved** the pill in a glass of water.*



explode [iksplóud] *v.*

When something **explodes**, it blows up.

→ *My new radio **exploded** when I plugged it in.*



fasten [fǽsn] *v.*

To **fasten** something is to close it or put it in the correct place.

→ *Elizabeth **fastened** her seat belt.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



germ [dʒə:rm] *n.*

A **germ** is something that makes you sick.

→ ***Germs*** *are on everything that you touch.*



kit [kit] *n.*

A ***kit*** is a set of all the things needed to do something.

→ *Is there a first aid* ***kit*** *in your office?*



puff [pʌf] *n.*

A **puff** is a little bit of smoke or steam.

→ *A* ***puff*** *of smoke came from the burnt match.*



rag [ræg] *n.*

A **rag** is a small towel.

→ *Please use a* ***rag*** *to clean the dust off the table.*



scatter [skætə:r] *v.*

To **scatter** something is to make it go in many places.

→ *I accidentally* ***scattered*** *all of my pills.*



scent [sent] *n.*

A **scent** is a smell.

→ *Julie enjoyed the* ***scent*** *of the flowers.*



steel [sti:l] *n.*

Steel is a shiny gray metal.

→ *The new apartment building was made with* ***steel****.*



swift [swift] *adj.*

If something is **swift,** it is fast.

→ *The* ***swift*** *horse easily jumped over the hurdle.*



toss [tɔ:s] *v.*

If you **toss** something, you throw it softly.

→ *He* ***tossed*** *a coin into the air.*



triumph [tráiəmf] *n.*

Triumph is what you feel when you win or finish something.

→ *He raised the award in* ***triumph*** *at the end of his speech.*

UNIT 13

Word List



aboard [əbɔ́:rd] *prep.*

When someone is **aboard** a ship or plane, they are on or in it.

→ *They climbed **aboard** the kayak and paddled through the river.*



bitter [bítər] *adj.*

When a person is **bitter**, they are upset with someone or a situation.

→ *He was extremely **bitter** when his computer crashed.*



bullet [búlit] *n.*

A **bullet** is a small metal object that is shot out of guns.

→ ***Bullets** come in different sizes for different guns.*



devil [dévl] *n.*

The **devil** is a powerful evil spirit in some religions.

→ *The church promised protection from the **devil**.*



drift [drift] *v.*

To **drift** means to be moved slowly by wind or water.

→ *The large chunk of ice **drifted** in the water.*



enforce [enfɔ́:rs] *v.*

To **enforce** means to make a person follow a rule.

→ *Police **enforce** traffic laws to keep everyone safe.*



fountain [fáuntin] *n.*

A **fountain** is a source of water made by people.

→ *There was a beautiful **fountain** in the middle of the park.*



harbor [há:rbər] *n.*

A **harbor** is an area of water along a shore where boats land.

→ *There were a few small boats in the **harbor**.*



inhabit [inhǽbit] *v.*

To **inhabit** means to live in a certain place.

→ *No one **inhabits** the ancient city.*



march [mɑ:rtʃ] *v.*

To **march** means to walk at a steady pace together with others.

→ *The soldiers **marched** in straight rows.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



millionaire [miljənɛər] *n.*

A **millionaire** is a person who has at least a million dollars.

→ *He became a **millionaire** because he was smart with his money.*



port [pɔ:rt] *n.*

A **port** is a place where ships stop to load and unload things.

→ *The ship was being loaded with materials at the **port**.*



sheriff [ʃérif] *n.*

A **sheriff** is a police officer who is in charge of a large area.

→ *It was the **sheriff's** job to make the city safe.*



startle [stɑ́:rtl] *v.*

To **startle** means to scare someone suddenly.

→ *The loud crash **startled** the sleeping woman.*



sweat [swet] *v.*

To **sweat** means to lose liquid from the body through the skin.

→ *Whenever I workout, I **sweat** quite a bit.*



trigger [trígə:r] *n.*

A **trigger** is the part of the gun that a person pulls to make it fire.

→ *The man had his finger on the **trigger** of the gun.*



unify [jú:nəfài] *v.*

To **unify** means to bring people or things together.

→ *With their good deeds, the children tried to **unify** the world.*



vessel [vésəl] *n.*

A **vessel** is a large ship or boat.

→ *We toured the area aboard a luxury **vessel**.*



voyage [vɔ́idʒ] *n.*

A **voyage** is a long journey made on a boat or an aircraft.

→ *The astronauts took off on a long **voyage** to the moon.*



worship [wə́:rʃip] *v.*

To **worship** means to like and honor a person, thing, or religious figure.

→ *Many people around the world **worship** in a church.*

UNIT 14

Word List



apprentice [əprέntis] *n.*

An **apprentice** is a person who learns how to do a job from a skilled person.

→ *Mark is an **apprentice** chef at the restaurant.*



assure [əʃúər] *v.*

To **assure** someone is to tell them something is true to make them less worri

→ *He **assured** the boss that the building would be done on time.*



bandage [bǽndidʒ] *n.*

A **bandage** is a piece of cloth used to stop bleeding.

→ *If you cut yourself, please get a **bandage** from the first-aid kit.*



bleed [bli:d] *v.*

To **bleed** is to lose blood.

→ *If you are not careful, you will cut your finger and **bleed**.*



bond [bɔnd] *v.*

To **bond** with someone is to become friends with them.

→ *The women **bonded** after several hours of conversation.*



chef [ʃef] *n.*

A **chef** is a person who cooks in a restaurant.

→ *Tom is a **chef** at the restaurant near my house.*



crown [kraun] *n.*

A **crown** is the hat worn by a king or queen.

→ *The **crown** is made of gold.*



departure [dipɑ́:rtʃər] *n.*

A **departure** is the act of leaving a place.

→ *They were excited about their **departure** back home.*



diligent [dílədʒənt] *adj.*

If someone is **diligent**, they work hard and are careful.

→ *Craig has always been a very **diligent** person at work.*



emperor [émpərər] *n.*

An **emperor** is the leader of a group of countries.

→ *The **emperor** Julius Caesar was in control of ancient Rome.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



fiber [fáibər] *n.*

Fiber is a thread of a substance used to make clothes or rope.

→ *The mat was made from tiny **fibers**.*



horrible [hɔ́:rəbəl] *adj.*

If something is **horrible**, it is very bad.

→ *The assignment was **horrible**. I hated it.*



impolite [ìmpəláit] *adj.*

If someone is **impolite**, they are rude.

→ *Roger is **impolite** to everyone he meets.*



kneel [ni:l] *v.*

To **kneel** is to put one or both knees on the ground.

→ *Daryl got down on one **knee** and asked Nina to marry him.*



luxury [lʌ́kʃəri] *n.*

A **luxury** is an expensive thing that you do not need.

→ *We stayed at a **luxury** resort for our honeymoon.*



massive [mǽsiv] *adj.*

If something is **massive**, it is very big.

→ *The wheels on his truck were **massive**.*



panic [pǽnik] *v.*

To **panic** is to feel so nervous or afraid that you cannot think clearly.

→ *Everyone **panicked** when the house caught on fire.*



priority [praiɔ́(:)rəti] *n.*

A **priority** is something that is more important than other things.

→ *My **priority** is to get good grades in school.*



robe [roub] *n.*

A **robe** is a long, loose piece of clothing.

→ *Many people wear **robes** in the morning.*



scold [skould] *v.*

To **scold** means to criticize one angrily because they have done wrong.

→ *Jesse was **scolded** by the teacher for not paying attention.*

UNIT 15

Word List



affair [əfɛ́ər] *n.*

An **affair** is an event or a thing that happened.

→ *My wife and I attended a formal **affair** over the weekend.*



assembly [əsémbli] *n.*

An **assembly** is a group that is together for the same reason.

→ *The students had an **assembly** to talk about their interests.*



bless [bles] *v.*

To **bless** is to ask God for protection or help.

→ *The angel **blessed** the newborn baby to keep it safe.*



cereal [siəriəl] *n.*

Cereal is a food that you mix with milk and eat for breakfast.

→ ***Cereal** is a fast and common breakfast food enjoyed in the U.S.*



cheerful [tʃiərfəl] *adj.*

If someone is **cheerful**, they are happy or feel good.

→ *The children were **cheerful** because they didn't have to go to school.*



diameter [daiæmitər] *n.*

The **diameter** of a round thing is the length across its center.

→ *The **diameter** of the tree was about 22 centimeters.*



exploit [iksplɔ́it] *v.*

To **exploit** something is to use it for greedy reasons rather than good reason

→ *The company **exploits** their workers and makes them stay 12 hours a day.*



famine [fæmin] *n.*

A **famine** is a long time with little or no food.

→ *The farmers couldn't grow any food on the dry soil, so there was a **famine**.*



harvest [hɑ́:rvist] *n.*

A **harvest** is the act of collecting food from farming.

→ *They had a lot of wheat from the last **harvest**.*



merry [méri] *adj.*

If someone is **merry**, they are very happy.

→ *They felt **merry** because the weather was great.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



nut [nʌt] *n.*

A **nut** is a hard seed or fruit that comes from some trees and bushes.

→ *To eat a **nut**, first you have to crack its shell.*



pardon [pɑ:rdn] *v.*

To **pardon** is a way to ask someone to repeat what was said before.

→ ***Pardon** me teacher, but could you repeat what you just said?*



pharaoh [fɛ́ərou] *n.*

A **pharaoh** was a king in ancient Egypt.

→ *The **pharaohs** ruled Egypt for thousands of years.*



ripe [raip] *adj.*

When a fruit is **ripe**, it is ready to be eaten.

→ *The cherries were nice and **ripe**.*



roast [roust] *v.*

To **roast** something is to cook it in an oven or over a fire.

→ *Mom **roasted** a turkey for the holiday dinner.*



routine [ru:ti:n] *n.*

A **routine** is a way of doing things that is the same every time.

→ *My father's daily **routine** includes shaving right before breakfast.*



scheme [ski:m] *n.*

A **scheme** is a plan or design.

→ *Mickey and Minnie came up with a **scheme** to solve the problem.*



slim [slim] *adj.*

If something or someone is **slim**, they are thin.

→ *Look at my new cell phone. It's very **slim**.*



stove [stouv] *n.*

A **stove** is a device used to cook food.

→ *Our new **stove** helps us to cook food much faster than before.*



theft [θeft] *n.*

A **theft** is a criminal act that involves someone stealing something.

→ *The **theft** of his TV took place when he was at work.*

Elbarskhan & mmh

UNIT 16

Word List



adolescent [ædəlésənt] *n.*

An **adolescent** is a young person or a teenager.

→ *The **adolescent** was excited about getting a skateboard for his birthday.*



aptitude [æptitù:d] *n.*

Aptitude is a natural ability or skill.

→ *He has a natural **aptitude** for water skiing.*



compliment [kάmpləmənt] *v.*

To **compliment** is to say a nice thing about someone or something.

→ *Her co-worker **complimented** her for doing a good job.*



hinder [híndər] *v.*

To **hinder** is to keep someone or something from doing something.

→ *All the traffic **hindered** me from getting to work on time.*



journalism [dʒə́:rnəlìzəm] *n.*

Journalism is the work of collecting the news to put in newspapers or on TV.

→ *Before becoming a teacher, she worked in **journalism**.*



jury [dʒúəri] *n.*

A **jury** is a group of people that listen to a trial and say if someone is guilty.

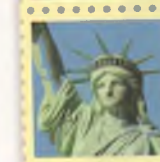
→ *The **jury** listened closely to the attorney before they made their decision.*



justice [dʒʌ́stis] *n.*

Justice is fairness in the way that you treat other people.

→ *People turn to the court system when they are seeking **justice**.*



liberty [líbə:rti] *n.*

Liberty is freedom to do what you want.

→ *To many people, the Statue of **Liberty** is a symbol of freedom.*



literary [lítərèri] *adj.*

If someone or something is **literary**, it is involved with literature in some way.

→ *He worked hard to create a successful **literary** career.*



pharmacy [fά:rməsi] *n.*

A **pharmacy** is a place where medicine is sold.

→ *My mother sells medicine to people at the **pharmacy**.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



pill [pil] *n.*

A **pill** is a small object that has medicine inside.

→ *She took a **pill** for her headache.*



presume [prizú:m] *v.*

To **presume** is to believe something is true without being certain.

→ *Since he raised his hand, the teacher **presumed** he knew the answer.*



privacy [práivəsi] *n.*

To have **privacy** is to be away from other people.

→ *Please hang the sign on the door so we can have some **privacy**.*



punishment [pʌ́niʃmənt] *n.*

A **punishment** is something that one must endure for any wrongdoing.

→ *He was given a **punishment** for being rude to the teacher.*



sensible [sénsəbəl] *adj.*

If someone is **sensible**, they make good decisions.

→ *It was **sensible** for her to save some money each month.*



slice [slais] *n.*

A **slice** is a piece from something larger, such as a cake.

→ *The girl enjoyed a **slice** of cake at her birthday party.*



sorrow [sárou] *n.*

Sorrow is a very sad feeling.

→ *The girl felt **sorrow** after her best friend moved away.*



straw [strɔ:] *n.*

A **straw** is a thin tube that is used to suck liquid into the mouth.

→ *I drank the orange juice through a **straw**.*



swell [swel] *v.*

To **swell** is to become larger and rounder.

→ *My sister's stomach began to **swell** after she got pregnant.*



tidy [táidi] *adj.*

When something is **tidy**, it is clean and in order.

→ *Leon has always been a very **tidy** boy.*

UNIT 17

Word List



affection [əfékʃən] *n.*

Affection is a feeling of liking someone or something.

→ *Amanda has a lot of **affection** for her little sister Sarah.*



agency [éidʒənsi] *n.*

An **agency** is a business or service set up to act for others.

→ *I went to a travel **agency** to help me arrange a flight home.*



ash [æʃ] *n.*

Ash is the grey or black powder created when something is burned.

→ *The end of his cigar was full of **ashes**.*



confine [kənfáin] *v.*

To **confine** something is to keep it in one place.

→ *The elephant is **confined** to a cage in the zoo.*



dismiss [dismís] *v.*

To **dismiss** something is to say it is not important.

→ *He quickly **dismissed** my idea about a new project.*



erupt [irʌ́pt] *v.*

To **erupt** is for a volcano or something to shoot a hot substance.

→ *The volcano **erupted** for the first time in ten years.*



fate [feit] *n.*

Fate is a power that causes some things to happen.

→ *Some people believe that a person's hand can tell their **fate**.*



lava [lá:və] *n.*

Lava is the hot substance made of melted rock that shoots from volcanoes.

→ *The red hot **lava** poured from the volcano.*



miserable [mízərəbəl] *adj.*

If someone is **miserable**, they are very unhappy.

→ *He was **miserable** after his dog died.*

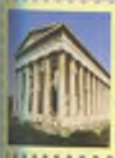


navigate [nǽvəgèit] *v.*

To **navigate** something is to control the way it moves or goes.

→ *She **navigated** the ship across the ocean.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



originate [əridʒəneit] *v.*

To **originate** somewhere is to start there.

→ *The idea of democracy **originated** in Ancient Greece.*



remainder [riméində:r] *n.*

The **remainder** of something is what is left.

→ *He took a bite of the apple, then gave me the **remainder** of it.*



retrieve [ritrí:v] *v.*

To **retrieve** something is to find it and get it back.

→ *She **retrieved** her mail from the mail box.*



shallow [ʃælou] *adj.*

If something is **shallow**, it is not deep.

→ *The kids were playing in the **shallow** water.*



slope [sloup] *n.*

A **slope** is ground that is not flat.

→ *The **slope** to the top of the mountain was very steep.*



span [spæn] *v.*

To **span** a length of time is to last that long.

→ *His work began in 1999. It has **spanned** many years since then.*



superstition [sù:pərstíʃən] *n.*

A **superstition** is something magical that people believe is real.

→ *It is a **superstition** that Friday the 13th is an unlucky day.*



sympathy [símpəəi] *n.*

Sympathy is a feeling of being sad for another person.

→ *I felt **sympathy** for my sister so I got her a balloon to cheer her up.*



vibrate [váibreit] *v.*

To **vibrate** is to shake very hard.

→ *The machine made his whole body **vibrate** as he broke up the ground.*



wander [wándə:r] *v.*

To **wander** is to walk without going to a certain place.

→ *The boys like to **wander** in the woods and look at birds.*

UNIT 18

Word List



armor [á:rmər] *n.*

Armor is metal worn by soldiers to protect the body.

→ *The soldier wore **armor** to protect his body.*



blaze [bleiz] *v.*

To **blaze** means to burn brightly or powerfully.

→ *The small fire soon **blazed** into a large dangerous one.*



boom [bu:m] *v.*

To **boom** means to make a loud, deep sound.

→ *The firecrackers made a loud **boom** when they exploded.*



cliff [klif] *n.*

A **cliff** is a high and often flat wall of rock.

→ *The wolf stood at the **cliff** and howled.*



flame [fleim] *n.*

A **flame** is part of fire.

→ *The torch was filled with yellow and orange **flames**.*



independence [indipéndəns] *n.*

Independence is the state of being free from the control of others.

→ *After leaving home, Sophia had a great feeling of **independence**.*



invasion [invéiʒən] *n.*

An **invasion** is an attack by a group from another country.

→ *In Korea, walls were built around cities to protect them from **invasions**.*



knight [nait] *n.*

A **knight** is a soldier of high rank and skill who usually serves a king.

→ *He was the best soldier, so the king made him a **knight**.*



lightning [láitniŋ] *n.*

Lightning is the bright light seen during a storm.

→ *The **lightning** flashed above the water.*



rebel [rébəl] *n.*

A **rebel** is a person who fights the government in order to change it.

→ *The **rebel** had enough of the government's unfair polices.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



retreat [ritri:t] *v.*

To **retreat** means to run away because you have been beaten in a fight.

→ *The army **retreated** because they were losing the battle.*



revolution [revəlú:ʃən] *n.*

A **revolution** is a change to the political system by a group of people.

→ *The **revolution** in Russia led to the creation of the Soviet Union.*



spear [spiə:r] *n.*

A **spear** is a long stick with a blade on one end that is used as a weapon.

→ *The soldier was holding a **spear** in his hand.*



steep [sti:p] *adj.*

If something is **steep**, then its slope or angle rises or falls sharply.

→ *He rode his bike up the **steep** hill to reach the top.*



summit [sʌ́mit] *n.*

A **summit** is the highest part of a hill or mountain.

→ *Snow covered the **summit** of the mountain even during the summer.*



thunder [əʌ́ndə:r] *n.*

Thunder is the loud noise heard during a storm.

→ *The sound of the **thunder** startled me.*



troops [tru:ps] *n.*

Troops are soldiers that fight in groups in a battle.

→ *The **troops** were all prepared to go into battle.*



warrior [wó(:)riə:r] *n.*

A **warrior** is a brave soldier or fighter.

→ *The samurai were some of the most skilled **warriors** in the ancient world.*



withdraw [wiðdrɔ:] *v.*

To **withdraw** means to leave a place, usually during war.

→ *After losing the battle, the enemy **withdrew** back to its own country.*



yield [ji:ld] *v.*

To **yield** something means to give up control of it or to give it away.

→ *He had to **yield** his turn because he was in checkmate.*

Elbarskhan & mmh

UNIT 19

Word List



bench [bentʃ] *n.*

A **bench** is a long seat for two or more people.

→ *Most parks have **benches** for citizens to relax upon.*



confront [kənfrʌ́nt] *v.*

To **confront** a hard situation or person is to deal with it.

→ *The couple has to **confront** each other about their problems.*



daisy [déizi] *n.*

A **daisy** is a small flower with white petals and a yellow center.

→ *There were a few **daisies** growing in the field.*



dispute [dispjúːt] *n.*

A **dispute** is an argument or disagreement that people have.

→ *Karen and Brian often have **disputes** about silly things.*



horror [hɔ́ːrər] *n.*

Horror is a feeling of being very afraid or shocked.

→ *The audience screamed in **horror** when the ghost appeared in the movie.*



incident [ínsədənt] *n.*

An **incident** is an event that is usually not pleasant.

→ *Mr. Wilson had an **incident** where he became sick and had to leave.*



mist [mist] *n.*

Mist is water that you can see in the air or on a surface.

→ *The forest was covered with **mist**.*



object [ɑ́bdʒikt] *n.*

An **object** is an inanimate thing that you can see or touch.

→ *The shopping cart was filled with **objects**.*



orphan [ɔ́ːrfən] *n.*

An **orphan** is a child who does not have parents.

→ *The **orphan** frequently cried during the night.*



plot [plɑt] *v.*

To **plot** is to make a secret plan to do something that is wrong or mean.

→ *The group was **plotting** to ruin the company's financial reports.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



pregnant [prégnənt] *adj.*

When a female is **pregnant,** she is going to have a baby.

→ *The **pregnant** woman was shopping for baby clothes.*



rage [reidʒ] *n.*

Rage is a very angry feeling.

→ *The chef was filled with **rage** when his helpers ruined the meal.*



revenge [rivéndʒ] *n.*

Revenge is what you do to hurt or punish someone who hurts you.

→ *He broke his sister's doll as **revenge** after she lost his favorite book.*



shame [ʃeim] *n.*

Shame is a bad feeling about things you have done wrong.

→ *The boy felt **shame** about misplacing his clothes.*



sigh [sai] *v.*

To **sigh** is to breathe out loudly and show that you are tired or sad.

→ *Molly **sighed** when she looked at all the information she had to research.*



sneak [sni:k] *v.*

To **sneak** is to move quietly so that no one hears or sees you.

→ *The thief **snuck** out of the house without anyone noticing him.*



spare [spɛə:r] *v.*

To **spare** something is to give it because you have more than you need.

→ *I wanted to help him but I couldn't **spare** a tire.*



stem [stem] *n.*

The **stem** of a plant is the stick that grows leaves or flowers.

→ *The rose had a long thin **stem**.*



supper [sʌ́pər] *n.*

Supper is a meal that is eaten in the evening.

→ *We usually have **supper** around 6 o'clock at my house.*



tender [téndə:r] *adj.*

When something is **tender,** it is soft and easy to chew.

→ *The meat was so **tender** they didn't need knives to cut it with.*

Elbarskhan & mmh

UNIT 20

Word List



beneath [biníːə] *prep.*

If something is ***beneath*** something else, it is under it.

→ *The largest part of an iceberg lies **beneath** the waterline.*



cub [kʌb] *n.*

A **cub** is a baby animal, such as a bear or lion.

→ *The lion **cub** was crying for its mother.*



dawn [dɔːn] *n.*

Dawn is the time of day when the sun rises.

→ *At **dawn**, the sun gently rose over the farm.*



dissatisfied [dissǽtisfàid] *adj.*

If you are **dissatisfied**, you are not happy with something.

→ *I was **dissatisfied** with their decision to work on Sunday.*



ease [iːz] *n.*

When something is done with **ease**, it is not hard to do.

→ *The monkey climbed the tree with **ease**.*



evident [évidənt] *adj.*

When something is **evident**, it is easy to see or understand.

→ *It was **evident** from the look on his face that he was unhappy.*



hail [heil] *n.*

Hail is ice that falls from the sky when rain freezes.

→ *The **hail** from the storm was the size of golf balls.*



howl [haul] *v.*

To **howl** means to make a long, loud sound like a wolf or a dog.

→ *The wolf **howled** at the moon.*



leap [liːp] *v.*

To **leap** means to jump a long distance.

→ *He had to **leap** over the gap to reach the other side of the hill.*



magnificent [mægnífəsənt] *adj.*

When something is **magnificent**, it is beautiful and grand.

→ *The man gave his wife a pair of **magnificent** diamond earrings.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



necessity [nisesəti] *n.*

A **necessity** is something that is needed.

→ *Fresh water is a **necessity** for life.*



outcome [autkʌm] *n.*

An **outcome** is the end of an action or event.

→ *The **outcome** of his latest business plan was a complete failure.*



pile [pail] *n.*

A **pile** is a large group of things on top of one another.

→ *The **pile** of cups was beginning to tilt.*



profound [prəfáund] *adj.*

When something is **profound**, it is very intelligent.

→ *For a little boy, Jeremy has some **profound** thoughts.*



seize [si:z] *v.*

To **seize** something means to grab it quickly or strongly.

→ *The man **seized** as much money as he could before anyone could see him.*



squeeze [skwi:z] *v.*

To **squeeze** something means to press it together and hold it tightly.

→ *When Clara saw her cat, she gave it a big **squeeze**.*



supreme [supri:m] *adj.*

When something is **supreme**, it is the highest or best.

→ *The **supreme** officer was in charge of keeping the citizens calm.*



terrific [tərífik] *adj.*

When something is **terrific**, it is very good.

→ *My youngest daughter is a **terrific** painter.*



trait [treit] *n.*

A **trait** is part of someone's personality.

→ *One **trait** of Salvador's personality is his cheerfulness.*



vital [váitl] *adj.*

When something is **vital**, it is necessary for life.

→ *The heart is a **vital** organ.*

UNIT 21

Word List



accustomed [əkʌ́stəmd] *adj.*

When you become **accustomed** to something, you are in the habit of it.

→ *Grandfather is **accustomed** to reading the newspaper every morning.*



affirm [əfə́:rm] *v.*

To **affirm** is to say that something is true.

→ *Using a graph, Malcolm **affirmed** the success of the company.*



astonished [əstɑ́nijt] *adj.*

If someone is **astonished**, they are very surprised or shocked.

→ *I was **astonished** when he pulled the live rabbit out of his hat.*



bang [æŋ] *v.*

To **bang** is to hit something to make a noise.

→ *The drummer **banged** on his drum as he marched in the parade.*



clan [klæn] *n.*

A **clan** is a group of relatives or friends.

→ *The Lee **clan** meets every year to celebrate the New Year.*



dim [dim] *adj.*

When something is **dim**, it does not give out much light.

→ *Working in a **dim** room is bad for your eyes.*



emphasis [émfəsis] *n.*

Emphasis is special attention or importance.

→ *The students put special **emphasis** on chapter 4 because it will be on the*



fable [féibəl] *n.*

A **fable** is a short story that teaches a lesson.

→ *In the **fable** about the tortoise and the hare, the lesson is consistency.*



feast [fi:st] *n.*

A **feast** is a large meal for many people.

→ *At Thanksgiving, I enjoy a wonderful **feast** with my family.*



glow [glou] *v.*

To **glow** is to make a soft light.

→ *The small flame **glowed** softly.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



hollow [hɑlou] *adj.*

When something is **hollow,** it has an empty space inside.

→ *Straws are **hollow,** so liquid can flow through them.*



instinct [instiŋkt] *n.*

Instinct is the natural way that people behave without thinking about it.

→ *Cats hunt mice because of **instinct.***



joint [dʒɔint] *n.*

A **joint** is a place of the body where the bones meet, such as the knee.

→ *Two important bones in your leg meet at a **joint** in your knee.*



leak [li:k] *v.*

To **leak** is to let a liquid or gas pass through a flaw.

→ *The pipe **leaks** from many places.*



physician [fiziʃən] *n.*

A **physician** is a doctor.

→ *The **physician** said I would feel better if I took my medicine.*



sacrifice [sækrəfais] *v.*

To **sacrifice** something valuable is to give it up to get something else.

→ *Her parents **sacrificed** a lot of money in order for her to go to college.*



stiff [stif] *adj.*

When something is **stiff,** it is hard to move.

→ *The bird was standing on the tree's **stiff** branch.*



stroke [strouk] *v.*

To **stroke** is to move a hand over something or someone.

→ *She **stroked** her cheek to see if there was something on it.*



tragic [trædʒik] *adj.*

When something is **tragic,** it is connected with death and suffering.

→ *The airplane crashed in a **tragic** accident.*



tune [tju:n] *n.*

A **tune** is a song.

→ *The students played a familiar **tune** for the audience.*

UNIT 22

Word List



accommodate [əkɑ́mədèit] *v.*

To **accommodate** is to have enough room.

→ *The meeting room can **accommodate** nine people.*



circus [sə́:rkəs] *n.*

A **circus** is a traveling show with animals and people.

→ *I like to go to the **circus** to see the animals do tricks.*



coincide [kòuinsáid] *v.*

If two things **coincide**, they happen at the same time.

→ *My birthday **coincides** with Christmas.*



commission [kəmíʃən] *v.*

To **commission** someone to do something is to pay them to do it.

→ *The artist was **commissioned** to create a picture.*



dose [dous] *n.*

A **dose** is a certain amount of medicine that you take at one time.

→ *My mother gave me a **dose** of medicine before I went to bed.*



dye [dai] *v.*

To **dye** something is to make it a certain color by using a special chemical.

→ *Valery got her hair **dyed** at the salon yesterday.*



extent [ikstént] *n.*

The **extent** of something is how large, important, or serious it is.

→ *He ate to such an **extent** that he became overweight.*



gender [dʒéndər] *n.*

Gender is a category that describes being either a boy or a girl.

→ *Do you know the **gender** of her new baby?*



headline [hédlàin] *n.*

A **headline** is the title of a newspaper story.

→ *The **headline** on the front page was about the economy.*



informal [infɔ́:rməl] *adj.*

When something is **informal**, it is not official.

→ *They had an **informal** meeting to talk about their experiences.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



inquire [inkwáiər] *v.*

To **inquire** about something is to ask about it.

→ *Dad called to **inquire** about the price of tickets for the show.*



messenger [mesəndʒər] *n.*

A **messenger** is one who carries information from one place to another.

→ *The **messenger** delivered an important document to the office.*



peer [piər] *v.*

To **peer** at something is to watch it carefully.

→ *She **peered** at people through the window.*



portrait [pɔ́:rtrit] *n.*

A **portrait** is a painting or photograph of someone.

→ *I saw many religious **portraits** when I went to the museum.*



pose [pouz] *v.*

To **pose** is to stay in one place without moving.

→ *The kids and their dog **posed** for a picture.*



ranch [rænʧ] *n.*

A **ranch** is a large farm where animals are kept.

→ *My uncle has many horses on his **ranch**.*



steer [stiə:r] *v.*

To **steer** something is to control where it goes.

→ *He **steered** the go-cart around the track.*



stripe [straip] *n.*

A **stripe** is a thick line.

→ *The flag of the United States has red and white **stripes**.*



tame [teim] *adj.*

When an animal is **tame**, it is not afraid to be near people.

→ *The **tame** bird rested on his hand.*



tempt [tempt] *v.*

To **tempt** people is to offer them something they want but shouldn't have.

→ *I wasn't hungry, but she **tempted** me with a piece of my favorite cake.*

UNIT 23

Word List



Aborigine [æbəridʒəni:] *n.*

An **Aborigine** is a native of Australia before Europeans lived there.

→ *The **Aborigines** created beautiful artwork.*



ban [bæn] *v.*

To **ban** something is to not let people do it.

→ *Smoking is **banned** in this building.*



cautious [kɔ:ʃəs] *adj.*

If you are **cautious**, you are careful in a dangerous situation.

→ *Be very **cautious** as you stack those boxes.*



confess [kənfés] *v.*

To **confess** something is to say that you did it.

→ *He **confessed** that he was responsible for choosing the winning story.*



cottage [kɑ̄tidʒ] *n.*

A **cottage** is a small, old house in the countryside.

→ *My aunt lives in a pretty **cottage** in the mountains.*



daytime [dēitāim] *n.*

Daytime is the time of the day when the sky is light.

→ *I only allowed my kids to play outside in the **daytime**.*



desperate [dēspərit] *adj.*

If you are **desperate**, you will try anything to do or change something.

→ *I'm **desperate** to find a new job.*



fade [feid] *v.*

If something **fades**, it gets quieter or darker.

→ *The piece of cloth I found was old and **faded**.*



fierce [fiərs] *adj.*

If a person or animal is **fierce**, they are angry or violent.

→ *Wolves are **fierce** animals. Do not disturb them.*



gamble [gæmbəl] *v.*

To **gamble** means to play a game that involves winning or losing money.

→ *Many people like to go to casinos to **gamble**.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



lawn [lɔːn] *n.*

A **lawn** is an area covered in grass.

→ *My dad keeps the **lawn** in front of our house very neat.*



mow [mou] *v.*

To **mow** grass is to cut it to make it very short.

→ *I **mow** our lawn every weekend.*



outlaw [áutlɔː] *n.*

An **outlaw** is a criminal who hides from the police.

→ *The police passed out posters of the **outlaw** to all the people.*



prospect [práspekt] *n.*

A **prospect** is a possibility that something will happen.

→ *He wakes up every morning with the **prospect** of having a good day.*



purse [pəːrs] *n.*

A **purse** is a bag where women keep money, makeup and keys.

→ *My sister likes to buy designer **purses**.*



rod [rɔd] *n.*

A **rod** is a thin stick made of wood or metal.

→ *I bought a new fishing **rod** to use while on vacation.*



seldom [séldəm] *adv.*

If something **seldom** happens, it doesn't happen very often.

→ *It **seldom** rains in southern Arizona.*



shave [ʃeiv] *v.*

To **shave** means to cut the hairs on your face with a sharp tool.

→ *My father **shaves** his face every day because he doesn't want a beard.*



terrified [térəfàid] *adj.*

If you are **terrified**, you are extremely scared.

→ *When I saw the ghost, I was absolutely **terrified**!*



wizard [wízəːrd] *n.*

A **wizard** is a man who can do magic.

→ *The **wizard** made gold fall from the sky.*

Word List



baggage [bægidʒ] *n.*

Baggage is the set of bags that people take with them when they travel.

→ *I'm taking several pieces of **baggage** with me on vacation.*



bulb [bʌlb] *n.*

A **bulb** is the glass part of an electric light.

→ *I had to change the light **bulb** in my bedroom.*



bundle [bʌ́ndl] *n.*

A **bundle** is a number of things that are tied together.

→ *I was shocked when he showed me a **bundle** of money.*



cattle [kætl] *n.*

Cattle are cows and bulls, especially on a farm.

→ *The rancher's **cattle** were eating the grass in the field.*



flee [fli:] *v.*

To **flee** means to run away from trouble or danger.

→ *The crowd of men tried to **flee** from the danger.*



graze [greiz] *v.*

To **graze** means to eat grass.

→ *The cows **grazed** in the field.*



greed [gri:d] *n.*

Greed is a desire to have more than the things that you need.

→ *She ate all the cookies out of her **greed**.*



herd [hə:rd] *n.*

A **herd** is a large group of the same type of animals that live together.

→ *The **herd** of cows moved slowly across the ranch.*



initiate [iníʃièit] *v.*

To **initiate** something means to start it.

→ *You have to turn the switch on to **initiate** the computer system.*



lane [lein] *n.*

A **lane** is a small road.

→ *The **lane** passes directly in front of our house.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



nerve [nə:rv] *n.*
Nerve is bravery or the belief that you can do something.
→ *He has the **nerve** to think that he can actually wrestle with a lion.*



optimist [ɔ́ptəmist] *n.*
An **optimist** is somebody who sees the good parts of a situation.
→ *Even though he has physical problems, my brother is an **optimist**.*



parade [pəréid] *n.*
A **parade** is a celebration when groups of people walk in the same direction.
→ *There were many marching bands in the spring **parade**.*



pave [peiv] *v.*
To **pave** the ground is to lay material on it to make it easier to walk or drive on.
→ *The path was **paved** with yellow bricks.*



phantom [fæntəm] *n.*
A **phantom** is a ghost or spirit.
→ *A scary **phantom** appeared from out of the darkness.*



portable [pɔ́:rtəbəl] *adj.*
Something that is **portable** is able to be moved or carried easily.
→ *Since computers are **portable**, people can use them anywhere.*



poster [póustər] *n.*
A **poster** is a written announcement that is used to advertise something.
→ *I saw a **poster** about a free concert in the park.*



scratch [skrætʃ] *v.*
To **scratch** is to make small cuts with a claw or fingernail.
→ *I used a stick to **scratch** my back.*



symphony [símfəni] *n.*
A **symphony** is a long piece of music performed by many musicians.
→ *Alex, a violin player, has always dreamt of playing a **symphony**.*



widow [widou] *n.*
A **widow** is a woman whose husband has died.
→ *The **widow** had no children and was very lonely.*

Elbarskhan & mmh

UNIT 25

Word List



circulate [sə́:rkjəlèit] *v.*

To **circulate** something is to spread it quickly.

→ *The fan helped to **circulate** cool air through the room.*



consequent [kánsikwènt] *adj.*

Consequent means happening because of a different situation.

→ *Her **consequent** rash came after she touched the poison ivy.*



derive [diráiv] *v.*

To **derive** something from another source means to get it from that thing.

→ *Red's nickname was **derived** from the color of her hair.*



drown [draun] *v.*

To **drown** is to die from not being able to breathe underwater.

→ *He would have **drowned** if the sailors would not have rescued him.*



dynasty [dáinəsti] *n.*

A **dynasty** is a series of rulers who are all from the same family.

→ *The ancient Egyptians had a **dynasty** that lasted for many years.*



fraction [frǽkʃən] *n.*

A **fraction** is a small part of something.

→ *Only a **fraction** of the cake was gone.*



frost [frɔ:st] *n.*

Frost is a white layer of ice that forms during very cold weather.

→ *In the morning, the trees were all covered with **frost**.*



illusion [ilú:ʒən] *n.*

An **illusion** is something that looks real, but doesn't actually exist.

→ *Some pictures create an **illusion** for the eyes.*



invade [invéid] *v.*

To **invade** is to take over a place by force.

→ *The enemy forces tried to **invade** our country through the air.*



lieutenant [lu:ténənt] *n.*

A **lieutenant** is a rank in the military or police, or a person with that rank.

→ *The **lieutenant** was a good leader, and his soldiers respected him.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



marine [məríːn] *adj.*

The word **marine** describes something related to the sea.

→ *A healthy ocean is full of **marine** animals.*



merit [mérit] *n.*

The **merit** of something or someone is their good qualities.

→ *The actor received an award for his **merits** in the movie.*



navy [néivi] *n.*

A **navy** is the part of a country's military that fights at sea.

→ *My country is known for our strong **navy**.*



polar [póulər] *adj.*

Polar relates to the cold places on Earth's north and south ends.

→ *Only a few people live in the Earth's northern **polar** region.*



ray [rei] *n.*

A **ray** is a line of light that comes from a bright object.

→ *The sun's warm **rays** covered the beach.*



resign [rizáin] *v.*

To **resign** means to quit a job.

→ *After I officially **resigned** from work, I said goodbye to my boss.*



suicide [súːəsàid] *n.*

Suicide is the act of killing oneself.

→ *Some people feel so sad that they think **suicide** is the only answer.*



tremble [trémbəl] *v.*

To **tremble** is to shake as a result of cold weather.

→ *Harry was not used to the cold, so he **trembled** most of the day.*



underlying [ʌ̀ndərláiiŋ] *adj.*

When something is **underlying**, it is a hidden cause of something else.

→ *Her **underlying** fear of flying reduced her traveling options.*



via [váiə] *prep.*

To travel **via** something means to travel through or using something.

→ *We arrived in the city from the airport **via** the train.*

Word List



alter [ɔ́:ltər] *v.*

To **alter** something means to make a small change to it.

→ *I **altered** the color of my nails to match my hair.*



aside [əsáid] *adv.*

If someone stands **aside**, they are on or to one side.

→ *The man stood **aside** and opened the door for me.*



autumn [ɔ́:təm] *n.*

Autumn is the season of the year between summer and winter.

→ *I love when the leaves fall in **autumn** because I can play in them.*



blend [blend] *v.*

To **blend** is to mix two or more things together so that they become one thing.

→ *My wife **blended** together all of the ingredients to make a delicious stew.*



collapse [kəlǽps] *v.*

To **collapse** is to fall down suddenly.

→ *The tree **collapsed** right in front of our house.*



crush [krʌʃ] *v.*

To **crush** something is to press it together so its shape is destroyed.

→ *Selena's new car was **crushed** when something fell on top of it.*



curve [kə:rv] *v.*

To **curve** is to move in a line that bends and does not go straight.

→ *The road **curves** to the left and to the right.*



disgusting [disgʌ́stiŋ] *adj.*

If something is **disgusting**, it is very unpleasant.

→ *After running all day, Greg's feet had a **disgusting** odor.*



drain [drein] *n.*

A **drain** is a pipe that carries away water from a building, such as in a kitchen.

→ *The water in the sink goes down the **drain** as you wash your hands.*



embrace [imbréis] *v.*

To **embrace** is to hug.

→ *When they saw each other again, the happy couple **embraced**.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



envy [énvi] *v.*

To **envy** someone is to wish that you had something that they have.

→ *Sally **envied** the happy couple.*



fireworks [fáiərwə̀:rks] *n.*

Fireworks are objects that create colored lights when they are lit.

→ *The display of **fireworks** was so beautiful.*



flour [flauər] *n.*

Flour is a powder made from plants that is used to make foods like bread.

→ *I wanted to bake a pie, but I needed **flour**.*



fuse [fju:z] *n.*

A **fuse** is a string that you light on fireworks to make them explode.

→ *The boy lit the **fuse** on the rocket and waited for it to burst in the sky.*



ginger [dʒíndʒər] *n.*

Ginger is a spice from the root of a plant. It tastes spicy and sweet.

→ ***Ginger** is a common ingredient in many dishes from India.*



jealous [dʒéləs] *adj.*

If you are **jealous**, you think someone might take something from you.

→ *Miriam was **jealous** because Sue was paying too much attention to Jim.*



paste [peist] *n.*

A **paste** is a thick and smooth substance.

→ *My son needed some **paste** for a school project.*



receipt [risí:t] *n.*

A **receipt** is a paper that proves that something was received or bought.

→ *After looking at my **receipt**, I realized that I had spent too much money.*



wipe [waip] *v.*

To **wipe** something is to slide a piece of cloth over it to clean it.

→ *She **wiped** the dust from the windows.*



wire [waiə:r] *n.*

A **wire** is a thin string made out of metal.

→ *The **wires** were connected to towers that brought electricity to the city.*

Elbarskhan & mmh

UNIT 27

Word List



acknowledge [əknɑ́lidʒ] *v.*

If you **acknowledge** something, you accept that it is true or that it exists.

→ *The teacher **acknowledged** that the young student was hungry.*



ambassador [æmbǽsədər] *n.*

An **ambassador** is a government worker who works in another country.

→ *The **ambassador** from Korea was in charge of the conference.*



blonde [blɑnd] *n.*

If someone is a **blonde**, they have light-colored hair.

→ *My cousin is different from me. She is a **blonde** with blue eyes.*



conquer [kɑ́ŋkər] *v.*

To **conquer** a country means to attack and take control of it.

→ *The soldiers were trying to **conquer** the world.*



drag [dræg] *v.*

To **drag** something means to pull it across the ground.

→ *The dog was **dragging** his owner down the street.*



exaggerate [igzǽdʒərèit] *v.*

To **exaggerate** is to say that something is bigger or better than it really is.

→ *Jimmy wasn't **exaggerating** about the seriousness of his injury.*



heritage [hérətidʒ] *n.*

Heritage is the collection of features of a society, such as language and religi

→ *Teepees are part of the **heritage** of the American Indians of the plains.*



insult [insʌ́lt] *v.*

To **insult** someone is to say things that will hurt their feelings.

→ *The girls **insulted** each other all afternoon.*



meanwhile [mí:nhwàil] *adv.*

Meanwhile means until something happens or while something is happening.

→ *He wants to be a doctor in the future, but **meanwhile**, he works a regular job*



necklace [nékləs] *n.*

A **necklace** is a piece of jewelry that people wear around their necks.

→ *Joyce received a lovely pearl **necklace** for her wedding anniversary.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



noble [nóubəl] *n.*

A **noble** is a rich and powerful person.

→ *The Queen invited a **noble** from a nearby country to dinner.*



precious [préʃəs] *adj.*

When something is **precious**, it is valuable and important.

→ *In a desert, water can be more **precious** than money.*



prejudice [prédʒudis] *n.*

A **prejudice** is an unfair opinion about someone before you get to know them.

→ *The company's rules against gender **prejudice** must be enforced.*



rumor [rú:mə:r] *n.*

A **rumor** is a story that may not be true.

→ *Carla was spreading **rumors** around the office.*



sin [sin] *n.*

A **sin** is something that is wrong for religious reasons.

→ *Taking something that doesn't belong to you is a **sin**.*



spectacle [spéktəkəl] *n.*

A **spectacle** is an amazing sight.

→ *Niagara Falls is quite a **spectacle**.*



stack [stæk] *n.*

A **stack** is a pile of different things.

→ *There was a **stack** of paperwork on his desk to complete.*



suspicious [səspíʃəs] *adj.*

If someone is **suspicious** of someone else, they do not trust that person.

→ *Dad was **suspicious** of the caller on the line.*



tin [tin] *n.*

Tin is a cheap white metal.

→ *Soup is a common food that is often sold in **tin** cans.*



vase [veis] *n.*

A **vase** is an attractive container where people keep flowers.

→ *The **vase** was filled with such lovely flowers.*

Elbarskhan & mmh

UNIT 28

Word List



ache [eik] *v.*

If something **aches**, it hurts.

→ *Mindy's head **ached** because she bumped it against the wall.*



arctic [ɑ́:rktik] *adj.*

If something is **arctic**, it is from far north near the North Pole.

→ *It is cold when the **arctic** winds blow.*



canal [kənǽl] *n.*

A **canal** is a path for water to travel through.

→ *The city of Venice, Italy, has many **canals**.*



chemist [kémist] *n.*

A **chemist** is a scientist who works with chemicals.

→ *My mother is a successful **chemist** who helps invent new products.*



chill [tʃil] *n.*

A **chill** is a feeling of cold.

→ *The **chill** from the cold wind made Bill shiver.*



congress [kɑ́ŋgris] *n.*

Congress is a group of leaders in a government.

→ ***Congress** makes laws for people to follow.*



dairy [dɛ́əri] *adj.*

If something is **dairy**, it is made from milk.

→ *Things like milk and cheese are **dairy** foods.*



descend [disénd] *v.*

To **descend** is to go downward.

→ *I **descended** the stairs to get out of the building.*



grocer [gróusər] *n.*

A **grocer** is a person who sells food.

→ *Our **grocer**, Mr. Smith, is a very kind man.*



hesitate [hézətèit] *v.*

To **hesitate** is to wait for a short time before doing something.

→ *He **hesitated** for a moment before he decided which choice to make.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



institution [instətjúːʃən] *n.*

An **institution** is an organization that works to help a city or group of people.

→ *Banks are vital **institutions** that businesses and people use every day.*



jog [dʒɔg] *v.*

To **jog** is to run slowly.

→ *He **jogs** every day so he can be healthier.*



merchant [məːrtʃənt] *n.*

A **merchant** is a person who sells things.

→ *The **merchant** was selling used cars.*



poke [pouk] *v.*

To **poke** something is to push it with your finger.

→ *I **poked** my finger on a thumb tack.*



postpone [poustpóun] *v.*

To **postpone** something is to make it happen later than planned.

→ *They **postponed** the meeting until Elena arrived.*



splash [splæʃ] *v.*

When a liquid **splashes**, it bursts and hits something.

→ *Some green paint **splashed** upon the floor.*



stubborn [stʌ́bəːrn] *adj.*

If people are **stubborn**, they don't change their minds easily.

→ *Both of my parents are **stubborn**. They never give in to each other.*



suburb [sʌ́bəːrb] *n.*

A **suburb** is a small part of a large city.

→ *I grew up in the **suburbs** only a few minutes outside of the city.*



tide [taid] *n.*

The **tide** is the level of the water in the sea.

→ *The **tide** continued to crawl upon the beach little by little.*



tragedy [trædʒədi] *n.*

A **tragedy** is a very sad event.

→ *It was a **tragedy** when his house was struck by lightning and burned.*

Elbarskhan & mmh

UNIT 29

Word List



bomb [bɑm] *n.*

A **bomb** is an object that explodes and destroys large areas.

→ *The **bomb** will destroy anything that is near.*



certificate [sərtífəkit] *n.*

A **certificate** is a document that says that something is true or happened.

→ *I was given a **certificate** after completing the computer course.*



circumstance [sə́:rkəmstæns] *n.*

A **circumstance** is an event that makes a situation what it is.

→ *There were many **circumstances** behind their success like hard work.*



coffin [kɔ́:fin] *n.*

A **coffin** is a box used to bury dead people.

→ *When a person passes away, they are usually buried inside of a **coffin**.*



cope [koup] *v.*

To **cope** with a difficult or stressful situation means to deal with it.

→ *He **copes** with work stress by exercising three or four times a week.*



criticism [krítisìzəm] *n.*

Criticism is the act of saying that you don't like or approve of something.

→ *She had a lot of **criticism** about their new plan.*



devastate [dévəstèit] *v.*

To **devastate** something means to completely destroy it.

→ *The entire wall was **devastated**.*



frown [fraun] *v.*

To **frown** is to make an unhappy look with your face.

→ *Melissa **frowned** when she found out that the party had been cancelled.*



gaze [geiz] *v.*

To **gaze** at something means to look at it for a long time.

→ *We used a telescope to **gaze** at the stars for over an hour.*



glance [glæns] *v.*

To **glance** at something means to look at it quickly.

→ *She **glanced** behind her to see if he was looking at her.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



grief [gri:f] *n.*

Grief is the feeling of deep sadness, usually when a person dies.

→ *The **grief** caused by losing her parents was very difficult for her.*



groom [gru(:)m] *n.*

A **groom** is a man who is going to be married.

→ *The **groom** looked happy as he walked with his new wife.*



license [laisəns] *n.*

A **license** is an official document that gives one permission to do something.

→ *In the United States you need a driver's **license** to drive legally.*



microscope [maikrəskoup] *n.*

A **microscope** is a device that makes small objects look bigger.

→ *Germs cannot be seen without a **microscope**.*



nuclear [nju:kliə:r] *adj.*

When something is **nuclear**, it relates to the division or joining of atoms.

→ ***Nuclear** power plants provide inexpensive energy to cities.*



portray [po:rtrei] *v.*

To **portray** something means to describe it or show it in a picture.

→ *Her picture **portrayed** the house she grew up in when she was little.*



rotate [routeit] *v.*

To **rotate** something means to turn it around in a circle.

→ *An airplane's propellers **rotate** quickly to help it fly.*



souvenir [su:vəniə:r] *n.*

A **souvenir** is something you buy to remind you of a place or event.

→ *I bought a Russian doll as a **souvenir** from my trip to Moscow.*



submarine [sʌbməri:n] *n.*

A **submarine** is a boat that can go underwater for long periods of time.

→ *The **submarine** dove under the sea so the enemy couldn't see it.*



trace [treis] *v.*

To **trace** something means to follow over it with the eyes or a finger.

→ *He **traced** over the graph with his finger.*

Elbarskhan & mmh

UNIT 30

Word List



appliance [əpláiəns] *n.*

An **appliance** is a piece of equipment used for jobs in the home.

→ *Many homes have **appliances** like ovens, toasters and refrigerators.*



basin [béisən] *n.*

A **basin** is large bowl for washing things. A sink is sometimes called a basin.

→ *She filled the **basin** with water and washed her face.*



broom [bru(:)m] *n.*

A **broom** is a brush with a long handle used for cleaning floors.

→ *My father usually uses a **broom** to sweep away dust in the basement.*



caterpillar [kætərpilər] *n.*

A **caterpillar** is a small insect that looks like a worm and eats plants.

→ *After eating a lot of leaves, **caterpillars** change into butterflies.*



cupboard [kʌbərd] *n.*

A **cupboard** is a piece of furniture that is used to store food or household items.

→ *We put all of our dishes and food in the **cupboards**.*



delicate [déləkit] *adj.*

If something or someone is **delicate**, they are easy to break or harm.

→ *You should hold the baby carefully because she's very **delicate**.*



emerge [imə́:rdʒ] *v.*

To **emerge** from something means to come out of it.

→ *The hand suddenly **emerged** from the grave.*



handicap [hændikæp] *n.*

A **handicap** is a condition that limits someone's mental or physical abilities.

→ *Joe has a slight **handicap**, so he uses a walker to get around.*



hook [huk] *n.*

A **hook** is a sharp curved piece of metal used for catching or holding things.

→ *The fish went after the sharp **hook**.*



hop [hɔp] *v.*

To **hop** means to jump a short distance.

→ *The kangaroo quickly **hopped** away from danger.*

Elbarskhan & mmh



laundry [lɔ́:ndri] *n.*

Laundry is clothes that have been or need to be washed.

→ *He folded the clean **laundry** and put the dirty laundry in a basket.*



pursue [pərsú:] *v.*

To **pursue** someone or something is to chase or follow them.

→ *The mother **pursued** her young child down the hill.*



reluctant [rilʌ́ktənt] *adj.*

If someone is **reluctant**, they do not want to do something.

→ *She was **reluctant** to eat the meager breakfast.*



sleeve [sli:v] *n.*

Sleeves are the part of a shirt where your arms go.

→ *Ryan bought a new shirt with long **sleeves** to keep his arms warm.*



spine [spain] *n.*

The **spine** is the bone that runs up and down the middle of the back.

→ *Our **spine** helps us to stand up nice and straight.*



stain [stein] *n.*

A **stain** is a dirty mark that is difficult to clean.

→ *He had a red **stain** on the collar of his shirt.*



strip [strip] *n.*

A **strip** is a long, narrow piece of material or land.

→ *He had long **strips** of film that held images of his trip abroad.*



swear [swɛər] *v.*

To **swear** means to promise to do something.

→ *I will put my hand on the Bible and **swear** to do my best for the country.*



swing [swiŋ] *v.*

To **swing** something means to move it back and forth or from side to side.

→ *He can **swing** a golf club very powerfully.*



utilize [jú:təlàiz] *v.*

To **utilize** something means to use it for a specific purpose.

→ *They **utilized** a pair of scissors to cut the ribbon.*

SPORTS

Indoor Sports


basketball


boxing


martial arts


ping-pong


wrestling


yoga

Outdoor Sports


archery


baseball


football


soccer


tennis


volleyball

Winter Sports


ice skating


skiing


snowboarding

ANIMALS

Desert


camel


coyote


lizard


mountain lion


scorpion


vulture

Rain Forest


alligator


flamingo


gorilla


hummingbird


panther


parrot

Elbarskhan & mmh

Grasslands


buffalo


giraffe


hippopotamus


hyena


ostrich


rhinoceros

Polar Lands


otter


penguin


polar bear


reindeer


seal


wolf

Sea


blowfish


jellyfish


octopus


sea horse


sea urchin


seagull


shark


squid


starfish


whale

Woodlands


beaver


bobcat


deer


mole


opossum


porcupine


robin


skunk


squirrel


woodpecker

Bugs


beetle


butterfly


dragonfly


caterpillar


cricket


firefly


grasshopper


ladybug


mosquito


moth

Baby Animals

- bird ➡ nestling
- chicken ➡ chick
- cow ➡ calf
- dog ➡ pup
- duck ➡ duckling
- fish ➡ fry
- frog ➡ tadpole
- horse ➡ foal
- pig ➡ piglet
- sheep ➡ lamb

FOOD


apple pie


cereal


fish and chips


french fries


hamburger


hot dog


ice cream cone


salad


sandwich


taco

FRUITS


apricot


avocado


cherry


coconut


fig


grapefruit


peach


pear


pineapple


pomegranate

Elbarskhan & mmh

NUTS


almond


chestnut


hazel nut


peanut


pecan


pine nuts


pistachio


walnut

MEAT, POULTRY, AND SEAFOOD


bacon


beef


chicken


crab


lobster


oyster


pork


salmon


sausage


shrimp

VEGETABLES


broccoli


cabbage


carrot


celery


cucumber


eggplant


garlic


onion


potato


pumkin

FLOWERS


carnation


chrysanthemum


daisy


lily


lotus


pansy


rose


sunflower


tulip


marigold

TREES


bamboo


maple tree


oak tree


palm tree


pine tree


willow tree

Elbarskhan & mmh

Index

A

abandon 44
abnormal 68
aboard 80
aborigine 140
absence 62
accommodate 134
accustomed 128
ache 170
acknowledge 164
acquaint 32
acquire 14
adolescent 98
affair 92
affection 104
affirm 128
agency 104
ail 56
alert 38
alley 20
ally 56
aloud 62
alter 158
ambassador 164
ambitious 44
anniversary 50
anticipate 74
appliance 182
apprentice 86
aptitude 98
arctic 170
arise 8
arithmetic 50
armor 110
ash 104
ashamed 50
aside 158
assembly 92
assure 86
astonished 128
autumn 158
awkward 14
ax 20

B

baggage 146
bald 62
bamboo 68
ban 140
bandage 86
bang 128
bark 44
barrel 74
basin 182
bay 44
beam 74
bench 116
beneath 122
benefactor 8
bitter 80
blacksmith 8
blanket 62
blaze 110
bleed 86
blend 158
bless 92
blonde 164
bloom 26
blossom 68
boast 56
bomb 176
bond 86
boom 110
bounce 56
brilliant 44
broadcast 38
broom 182
bulb 146
bullet 80
bulletin 38
bully 56
bump 38
bunch 20
bundle 146
burst 50

C

canal 170
carbohydrate 56
caretaker 14
carpenter 50
casual 74
caterpillar 182
cattle 146
caution 74
cautious 140
cemetery 32
cereal 92
certificate 176
charitable 8
cheerful 92
chef 86
chemist 170
chill 170
chimney 8
chin 44
chop 38
chore 20
circulate 152
circumstance 176
circus 134
clan 128
cliff 110
closet 38
coal 50
coffin 176
coincide 134
collapse 158
commission 134
compact 26
compass 68
compensate 8
complaint 44
compliment 98
confess 140
confine 104
confront 116
congress 170
conquer 164
consequent 152
console 38
contrary 74
cope 176
cottage 140
couch 50
crawl 56
creep 62
criticism 176
crown 86
crush 158
cub 122
cupboard 182
curl 26
curse 32
curve 158

D

dairy 170
daisy 116
dawn 122
daytime 140
deaf 44
decay 26
deceive 14
decent 20
defeat 56
deliberate 74
delicate 182
departure 86
derive 152
descend 170
desperate 140
dessert 26
devastate 176
devil 80
dial 56
dialect 68
diameter 92
diligent 86
dim 128
dip 26
discourage 14
disgrace 20

disguise 32
disgusting 158
dishonest 68
dismiss 104
dispute 116
dissatisfied 122
dissolve 74
distant 26
district 38
divorce 62
dominant 56
dose 134
drag 164
drain 158
drawer 38
drift 80
drip 50
drown 152
dwarf 68
dye 134
dynasty 152

E

ease 122
eclipse 26
ecosystem 68
elbow 20
elegant 50
embrace 158
emerge 182
emperor 86
emphasis 128
encounter 8
endure 38
enforce 80
enthusiastic 44
envy 159
erupt 104
evident 122
exaggerate 164
exceed 8
execute 39
expedition 44
explode 74
exploit 92
extent 134

F

fable 128
fabric 50
fade 140
fairy 26
fake 14
famine 92
fancy 32
fasten 74
fatal 68
fate 104
feast 128
fiber 87
fierce 140
fireworks 159
flame 110
flashlight 32
flee 146
flour 159
forge 8
fountain 80
fraction 152
frost 152
frown 176
fuse 159

G

gamble 140
gaze 176
gender 134
germ 75
ginger 159
glance 176
glow 128
grace 26
grasp 39
grateful 20
graze 146
greed 146
grief 177
grocer 170
groom 177

H

hail 122
handicap 182
harbor 80
harvest 92
hatred 14
headline 134
herd 146
heritage 164
hesitate 170
highlands 51
hinder 98
hollow 129
hood 32
hook 182
hop 182
horizon 45
horrible 87
horror 116
howl 122
humble 8
hut 14

I

illusion 152
imitate 62
impatient 68
impolite 87
incident 116
independence 110
infant 62
inferior 14
informal 134
inhabit 80
inhabitant 32
initiate 146
inquire 135
instinct 129
institution 171
insult 164
invade 152
invasion 110
iron 9
irritate 20
ivory 51

J

jealous 159
jog 171
joint 129
journalism 98
jury 98
justice 98

K

kid 20
kidnap 62
kit 75
kneel 87
knight 110

L

ladder 9
lane 146
laundry 183
lava 104
lawn 141
leaf 69
leak 129
leap 122
leisure 27
liberty 98
license 177
lieutenant 152
lightning 110
literary 98
lodge 14
loose 21

Elbarskhan & mmh

loyal 45
luggage 146
luxury 87

M

magnificent 122
mankind 27
manuscript 69
marine 153
marsh 69
massive 87
mayor 45
meanwhile 164
merchant 171
mercy 57
merit 153
merry 92
messenger 135
microscope 177
mill 51
millionaire 81
miserable 104
mist 116
modest 9
mow 141
mutual 45

N

nap 62
navigate 104
navy 153
necessity 123
necklace 164
needle 51
neglect 15
nerve 147
newcomer 15
noble 165
nod 57
nourish 32
nowhere 63
nuclear 177
nut 93

O

object 116
occupy 9
offend 21
offense 15
opponent 57
optimist 147
originate 105
orphan 116
outcome 123
outlaw 141
overlook 15
overnight 21
overweight 45

P

panic 87
parade 147
pardon 93
passion 27
paste 159
pat 63
patience 69
pave 147
peer 135
penny 9
perfume 69
persist 21
phantom 147
pharaoh 93
pharmacy 98
physician 129
pile 123
pill 99
pillow 27
pine 21
pirate 32
plot 116
poke 171
polar 153
polish 51
pond 69
port 81
portable 147
portrait 135
portray 177
pose 135
poster 147
postpone 171
preach 9
precious 165
pregnant 117
prejudice 165
presume 99
priority 87
privacy 99
profound 123
prospect 141
prosper 9
proverb 69
province 9
publication 33
puff 75
pulse 27
punishment 99
purse 141
pursue 183
pursuit 69

Q

quarrel 57

R

rag 75
rage 117
ranch 135
ray 153
rear 39
rebel 110
receipt 159
recite 69
refresh 27
refuge 45
relief 63
reluctant 183
remainder 105
repay 15
reproduce 63
resign 153
restore 45
retreat 111
retrieve 105
revenge 117
revolution 111
rhyme 63
riddle 33
ridiculous 15
ripe 93
rival 57
roast 93
robe 87
rod 141
rot 33
rotate 177
routine 93
rub 45
rumor 165

S

sacrifice 129
satisfaction 9
satisfactory 15
scar 21
scared 33
scatter 75
scent 75
scheme 93
scold 87
scratch 147
seize 123
seldom 141
senator 39

sensation 21
senses 45
sensible 99
sew 51
shallow 105
shame 117
shave 141
shed 51
shepherd 15
sheriff 81
shortly 33
sigh 117
sin 165
skeleton 33
skull 39
sled 21
sleeve 183
slice 99
slim 93
slope 105
sneak 117
sneeze 27
sore 57
sorrow 99
souvenir 177
span 105
spare 117
spear 111
spectacle 165
spice 27
spine 183
splash 171
spoil 33
squeeze 123
stack 165
stain 183
startle 81
starve 33
steel 75
steep 111
steer 135
stem 117
stiff 129
sting 57
stir 39
stove 93
strain 57
straw 99
strip 183
stripe 135
stroke 129
stubborn 171
submarine 177
suburb 171
suck 63
suicide 153
summit 111
superstition 105
supper 117
supreme 123
suspicious 165
sustain 9
swear 183
sweat 81
swell 99
swift 75
swing 183
sympathy 105
symphony 147

T

tame 135
tap 39
tease 21
tempt 135
tender 117
terrific 123
terrified 141
theft 93
thread 51
thrill 33
thunder 111
tide 171
tidy 99
tin 165
torture 57
toss 75
trace 177
tragedy 171
tragic 129
trait 123
tremble 153
tremendous 39
trigger 81
trim 51
triumph 75
troops 111
tune 129

U

underlying 153
underneath 39
unify 81
upwards 51
urgent 63
utilize 183

V

valentine 21
vanish 63
vase 165
venture 15
vessel 81
veterinarian 45
via 153
vibrate 105
vital 123
voyage 81

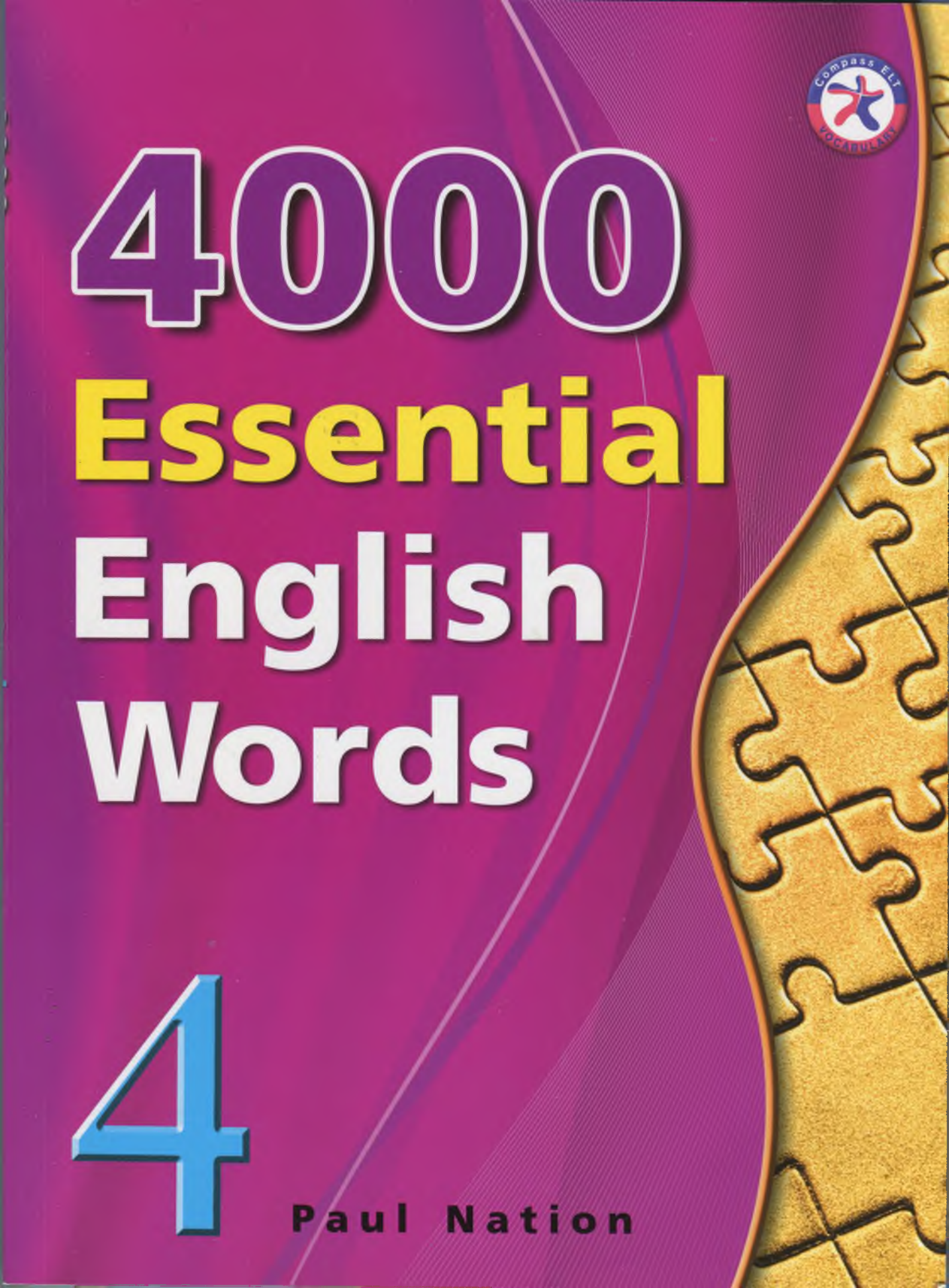
W

wagon 63
wander 105
warrior 111
wheat 15
whistle 27
wicked 33
widow 147
wilderness 69
wipe 159
wire 159
withdraw 111
wizard 141
wool 27
worm 39
worship 81
wrestle 57
wrinkle 63

Y

yield 111

Elbarskhan & mmh



4000 Essential English Words

4

Paul Nation

4000 Essential English Words 4

4000 Essential English Words 4

Paul Nation

© 2009 Compass Publishing

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without prior permission in writing from the publisher.

Acquisitions Editor: Fidel Cruz
Project Coordinator: Annie Cho
Design: Design Plus

email: info@compasspub.com
http://www.compasspub.com

ISBN: 978-1-59966-405-7

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2
12 11

Photo Credits

All images © Shutterstock, Inc. except: p. 180 © iStock International Inc.

Compass Publishing

4000 Essential English Words

4

Paul Nation

Table of Contents

Introduction		6
Unit	**Target Words**	**Page**
1	aroma, beverage, cluster, combine, condensed, contemporary, cultivate, divine, humid, odor, palate, paradise, plantation, rapid, rate, soothing, subtle, texture, toxic, vary	8
2	accident, admiral, arc, character, conscience, fiery, flesh, grapefruit, hay, horrified, kerosene, loop, paddle, raft, sour, stake, steward, string, thorn, wreck	14
3	admonish, audible, awesome, beware, brag, conscious, disagree, echo, eventual, hint, idiot, immense, indirect, option, pastime, perfect, pinpoint, switch, thorough, torment	20
4	beak, damp, disapprove, except, flight, fond, immoral, ivy, moan, oblivious, perish, pit, rim, roost, slippery, soar, trivial, typical, utterly, weep	26
5	awhile, cyberspace, edit, essay, evaluate, faint, global, gymnasium, highlight, ignorant, index, lecture, moral, operate, private, recent, resolution, semester, typewritten, weird	32
6	absolute, alas, attentive, cape, envision, evenly, folk, melt, patch, pleasure, pop, pudding, rail, recipe, role, shrink, soak, spark, spirit, suit	38
7	account, architect, conceal, crime, deed, gratitude, habitat, intervene, landmark, legal, memorable, oblige, offence, proclaim, rally, resolve, resource, sentence, volunteer, witness	44
8	access, conduct, constant, crack, device, enclose, grip, halt, impending, influence, law, mode, perspire, replace, snap, sly, tend, valid, version, whatsoever	50
9	alongside, appetite, assist, breeze, defy, display, efficient, feeble, forgive, lively, majestic, nor, outraged, pessimistic, rumor, slap, smash, subject, wage, whereas	56
10	animate, classify, concede, concept, construct, decade, diagram, ferry, handy, isolate, longing, numerous, particle, plea, refrain, review, sophisticated, surrender, upright, worthwhile	62
11	alliance, applause, armed, authoritative, ceremony, culture, defense, detail, diverse, enchant, equip, exception, genre, impact, lure, obstacle, shelter, sort, supply, vain	68
12	alternative, avenue, belly, bid, blow, conflict, continent, current, disrespect, enthusiasm, harsh, lean, meantime, mischief, muscle, rescue, succession, terrain, timid, violence	74
13	affect, autograph, bead, brew, charm, destiny, horn, irritable, lag, maximize, nightmare, nutritious, protein, signature, stuff, subconscious, van, warn, workout, zoom	80
14	brick, crumble, dough, express, fist, flexible, flush, injure, lump, mixture, reconcile, ruin, shatter, shutter, sift, slight, sparkle, sprinkle, stale, utter	86
15	although, apply, await, beloved, bury, climate, complain, confuse, due, entire, establish, furnace, leash, mature, measure, midst, misery, prior, research, variety	92

Unit	Target Words	Page
16	altogether, bind, bruise, custom, disobedient, foresee, glimpse, hoop, misfortune, negative, per, plead, rip, sake, scrape, source, stern, stitch, thump, vehement	98
17	civilization, convenient, den, dew, drastic, exit, flock, fold, lid, loom, mighty, mushroom, native, poison, reed, shield, stormy, sway, urban, wade	104
18	accent, barber, basement, blank, blink, choir, comic, complicate, decline, errand, glove, hermit, justly, leather, ponder, reserve, script, search, slam, staircase	110
19	afflicted, aisle , atmosphere, author, breakdown, cargo, chapter, connect, etc., flip, idle, notify, pea, raisin, retain, state, tray, unfortunate, vivid, vomit	116
20	betray, blast, bracelet, cease, choke, civil, comment, cross, dent, distrust, fort, found, lining, mass, pray, rife, sole, sweep, treachery, tuck	122
21	background, bait, chronicle, copper, disease, folklore, infect, itch, literature, millennium, myth, promote, relate, religion, sum, teller, trustworthy, update, vein, venom	128
22	charity, commerce, condemn, cozy, deplete, economy, empire, goods, heed, hitchhike, mock, neutral, persecute, pity, reduce, scribe, temper, throne, unity, victor	134
23	accurate, analyze, asteroid, controversy, evolve, factor, genetic, genome, identical, intellectual, majority, mammal, multiply, offspring, pesticide, regulate, reinforce, stricken, vast, vegetarian	140
24	cherish, compassion, consent, core, cunning, dizzy, equilibrium, foster, grind, growl, moderation, predator, sane, saucer, snatch, stagger, stumble, tense, tumble, withhold	146
25	aircraft, celebrity, concrete, decisive, esteemed, ethical, extinct, hardy, institute, jealousy, migrate, nurture, overhead principle, rural, secluded, species, swamp, traverse, zoology	152
26	assumption, barley, beast, colonel, contagious, corpse, crisis, cure, deformed, discriminate, embassy, extinguish, flint, harass, integrate, miniature, nutrition, promptly, technician, tropics	158
27	beneficial, birthplace, capacity, comparative, comprehensive, conserve, crucial, cumulative, deposit, distribute, equator, exotic, federal, formation, frequency, objective, oxygen, rainforest, strategy, wooded	164
28	avail, expand, define, dread, fundamental, horrifying, incredulous, linger, organism, paraphrase, plague, presently, random, riot, scribble, shrine, solitude, stark, summon, worsen	170
29	automobile, candidate, confidential, corporate, enhance, era, guideline, incorporate, interact, interval, mobile, modify, parallel, phenomenon, pollute, ridicule, solar, territory, tournament, transportation	176
30	bill, boundary, chaos, consistent, cyclone, doomed, heir, martial, organic, poultry, scramble, sergeant, sheer, stance, telegraph, textile, tornado, typhoon, wail, wardrobe	182
Index		188

Introduction

About the Vocabulary

The 600 words in each book of this series along with the additional target words presented in the appendices included in the first three books of the series are the most useful words in English. They were found by analysis of a collection of English course books from various levels in the primary, secondary and tertiary school systems. The words included in this series were chosen because they occurred many times in different levels of these materials. Because of the way
that they were chosen, these words have the following characteristics:

1 They are useful in both spoken and written English. No matter what English course you are studying, the words in these books will be of value to you.

2 Each word in these books is a high-frequency word. This means that the effort in learning the words is well repaid by the number of times learners have a chance to encounter or use them.

3 These books as a whole cover a large proportion of the words in any spoken or written text. They cover at least 80% of the words in newspapers and academic texts, and at least 90% of the words in novels. They also cover at least 90% of the words in conversation.

About the Books

The activities in these books are specially designed to make use of important learning conditions. Firstly, the words are introduced using sentence definitions and an example sentence. The activities that follow in the units encourage learners to recall the meanings and forms of the words. Some activities also make the learners think about the meaning of the words in the context of a sentence—a sentence different from the sentences that occurred in the introduction of the words. Moreover, each unit ends with a story containing the target words. While reading the story, the learners have to recall the meanings of the words and suit them to the context of the story. Such activities help learners develop a better understanding of a common meaning for a given word which fits the different uses.

Illustrations for each target word are provided to help learners visualize the word as it is being used in the example sentence. These word/image associations aim to help students grasp the meaning of the word as well as recall the word later.

It should be noted that words have more than one grammatical category. However, this series focuses on the word's most common form. This is mentioned to remind learners that just because a word is labeled and utilized as a noun in this series does not mean that it can never be used in another form such as an adjective. This series has simply focused on the word in the form that it is most likely to be expressed.

Supporting Learning with Outside Activities

A well-balanced language course provides four major opportunities for learning: learning through input, learning through output, deliberate learning, and fluency development. The highly structured activities in these books support all four types of learning opportunities. In addition, learning can further be supported through the following activities:

1 Have students create vocabulary cards with one word from the unit on one side of the card and the translation of the word in the student's first language on the other side. Students should use the cards for study in free moments during the day. Over several weeks, students will find that quick repeated studying for brief periods of time is more effective than studying for hours at one sitting.

2 Assign graded readers at students' appropriate levels. Reading such books provides both enjoyment as well as meaning-focused input which will help the words stick in students' memory.

3 Practice reading fluency to promote faster recall of word meaning for both sight recognition and usage. Compass Publishing's *Reading for Speed and Fluency* is a good resource for reading fluency material.

4 Include listening, speaking, and writing activities in classes. Reinforcement of the high-frequency vocabulary presented in this series is important across all the four language skills.

Author **Paul Nation**

Paul Nation is professor of Applied Linguistics in the School of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies at Victoria University of Wellington, New Zealand. He has taught in Indonesia, Thailand, the United States, Finland, and Japan. His specialist interests are language teaching methodology and vocabulary learning.



UNIT 1

Word List



aroma [əróumə] *n.*

An **aroma** is a scent or smell.

→ *I love the **aroma** of coffee in the morning.*



beverage [bévəridʒ] *n.*

A **beverage** is a drink.

→ *The waiter brought our **beverages** first. Then he brought our food.*



cluster [klʌ́stər] *n.*

A **cluster** of things is a small group of them placed close together.

→ *She held a large **cluster** of grapes in her hand.*



combine [kəmbáin] *v.*

To **combine** is to join together to make a single thing or group.

→ *Mina **combined** peanut butter and jelly to make a sandwich.*



condensed [kəndénst] *adj.*

When a liquid is **condensed**, it is made thicker.

→ *One way to make a dessert thick and sweet is to use **condensed** milk.*



contemporary [kəntémpərèri] *adj.*

When something is **contemporary**, it is related to the present time.

→ ***Contemporary** scientists have learned quite a bit about DNA.*



cultivate [kʌ́ltəvèit] *v.*

To **cultivate** plants is to care for them and help them grow.

→ *A research company is **cultivating** new kinds of rice to aid poor countries.*



divine [diváin] *adj.*

When something is **divine**, it is related to gods.

→ *Legends say that music was given to men as a **divine** gift from the gods.*



humid [hjúːmid] *adj.*

When it is **humid**, there is a lot of water in the air.

→ *It is very **humid** inside of a sauna.*



odor [óudər] *n.*

An **odor** is a very distinct smell.

→ *He knew there was a leak when he noticed the strong **odor** of natural gas.*



palate [pælit] *n.*

The **palate** is the top part of the mouth.

→ *You can touch your **palate** with your tongue.*



paradise [pærədàis] *n.*

Paradise is the place or condition of happiness where things are perfect.

→ *My vacation in Hawaii was like being in **paradise**.*



plantation [plæntéiʃən] *n.*

A **plantation** is a big farm that only grows certain kinds of crops.

→ *In the 1800s, there were many cotton **plantations** in the southern US.*



rapid [rǽpid] *adj.*

When something is **rapid,** it moves or changes very quickly.

→ *His mother was surprised by her son's **rapid** growth.*



rate [reit] *n.*

A **rate** is the speed at which something happens.

→ *Grass tends to grow at a very slow **rate**.*



soothing [sú:ðiŋ] *adj.*

When something is **soothing,** it makes you calm or relaxed.

→ *The **soothing** music helped the baby fall asleep.*



subtle [sʌ́tl] *adj.*

When something is **subtle,** it is not easy to see or notice.

→ *The handsome man has a **subtle** smile.*



texture [tékstʃə:r] *n.*

The **texture** of something is the way its surface looks and feels.

→ *The **texture** of a rock found in the water is typically very smooth.*



toxic [táksik] *adj.*

When something is **toxic,** it is poisonous. **Toxic** things are very dangerous.

→ *Please check the label to see if the product is **toxic**.*



vary [vɛ́əri] *v.*

To **vary** means to be different from another thing in size or amount.

→ *The heights of the people in my class **vary** by a large amount.*

UNIT 2

Word List



accident [ǽksidənt] *n.*

An **accident** is an unexpected undesirable event.

→ *She had to go to the hospital after she was in a serious car **accident**.*



admiral [ǽdmərəl] *n.*

An **admiral** is someone who controls many military ships.

→ *They won the sea battle because of the **admiral**'s great leadership.*



arc [ɑ:rk] *n.*

An **arc** is a curved shape.

→ *A rainbow has the shape of an **arc**.*



character [kǽriktər] *n.*

Your **character** is your personality.

→ *My sister's **character** is fun and very outgoing.*



conscience [kánʃəns] *n.*

Your **conscience** is your inner sense of what is right and wrong.

→ *I recycle everything I can, so my **conscience** is clear!*



fiery [fáiəri] *adj.*

If something is **fiery**, it is burning strongly.

→ *The **fiery** blaze burned all night long.*



flesh [fleʃ] *n.*

Flesh is the skin, muscle and fat on your body.

→ *The zebra's **flesh** has black and white stripes.*



grapefruit [gréipfrù:t] *n.*

A **grapefruit** is a fruit similar to an orange, but bigger and not as sweet.

→ *Would you like a **grapefruit** with your breakfast?*



hay [hei] *n.*

Hay is dry grass used to feed animals or used as a covering.

→ *I need to buy some more **hay** for the horse to sleep on.*



horrified [hɔ́:rəfàid] *adj.*

If you are **horrified**, you are very shocked and feel upset.

→ *I was **horrified** when I read about the old lady who was attacked.*



kerosene [kérəsi:n] *n.*

Kerosene is a type of oil. It is used in some lamps and stoves.

→ *Many people in poor countries cook on **kerosene** stoves.*



loop [lu:p] *n.*

A **loop** is a line made into the shape of a circle.

→ *He made a **loop** with the rope and placed it over the post.*



paddle [pædl] *n.*

A **paddle** is a piece of wood or plastic that moves a boat across water.

→ *We need a **paddle** to help us move across the water.*



raft [ræft] *n.*

A **raft** is a floating platform made from pieces of wood tied together.

→ *The man made a **raft** out of bamboo and floated out to sea.*



sour [sáuə:r] *adj.*

When something is **sour**, it has a sharp and unpleasant taste.

→ *I don't like lemons because I think they are too **sour**.*



stake [steik] *n.*

A **stake** is a small, sharp piece of wood or metal that is put into the ground.

→ *We marked our property by placing **stakes** into the ground.*



steward [stjú:ərd] *n.*

A **steward** is a person like a waiter who serves food on planes and ships.

→ *The **steward** is bringing some tea.*



string [striŋ] *n.*

String is a thin piece of fabric or rope.

→ *I found a large ball of **string**.*



thorn [eɔ:rn] *n.*

A **thorn** is a sharp part of a plant.

→ *Be careful of the **thorns** when you pick the roses!*



wreck [rek] *v.*

To **wreck** something means to destroy or ruin it.

→ *The teenagers **wrecked** the house for no reason at all.*

UNIT 3

Word List



admonish [ædmάniʃ] *v.*

To **admonish** someone is to tell them you disapprove of their behavior.

→ *The teacher **admonished** Mark because he was chewing gum in class.*



audible [ɔ́:dəbl] *adj.*

If something is **audible**, then it is able to be heard.

→ *The sound of the drums was **audible** from miles away.*



awesome [ɔ́:səm] *adj.*

If something or someone is **awesome**, they are impressive or frightening.

→ *The huge military plane was an **awesome** sight.*



beware [biwέər] *v.*

To **beware** means to be careful of something or someone that is dangerous.

→ *You should **beware** of driving fast on wet roads.*



brag [bræg] *v.*

To **brag** means to talk of one's abilities or achievements in a proud way.

→ *He had strong muscles and **bragged** about it to the entire class.*



conscious [kάnʃəs] *adj.*

If someone is **conscious** of something, then they are aware of it.

→ *The new student was **conscious** of the other students staring at her.*



disagree [dìsəgrí:] *v.*

To **disagree** with someone means to have a different opinion from them.

→ *The lawyers **disagreed** about the best way to settle the case.*



echo [ékou] *v.*

To **echo** means that a sound repeats itself because it bounced off an object.

→ *The child yelled over the canyon, and the wall **echoed** the sound.*



eventual [ivέntʃuəl] *adj.*

If something is **eventual**, it will happen at the end of a series of events.

→ *The constant training and planning led the team to an **eventual** victory.*



hint [hint] *n.*

A **hint** is information that suggests something will happen or is true.

→ *I quietly passed on a **hint** to my sister about the test.*



idiot [ídiət] *n.*

An **idiot** is a person who is not smart or who has done something silly.

→ *Because he got lost in the forest, the man felt like an **idiot**.*



immense [iméns] *adj.*

If something is **immense**, it is very large.

→ *An **immense** amount of money was needed to buy such a large boat.*



indirect [indirékt] *adj.*

If something is **indirect**, then it is not the easiest or straightest way.

→ *He chose to take the most **indirect** route to the coast.*



option [ápʃən] *n.*

An **option** is a choice between two or more things.

→ *The children were given the **option** of three houses to pick from.*



pastime [pǽstàim] *n.*

A **pastime** is an activity done for fun that you do often.

→ *In the US, baseball is considered the national **pastime**.*



perfect [pə́:rfikt] *adj.*

If something is **perfect**, then it is without any mistakes.

→ *She got all the questions right, so her score was **perfect**.*



pinpoint [pínpɔ̀int] *v.*

To **pinpoint** something means to locate it exactly.

→ *The navigation system in my car is able to **pinpoint** my exact location.*



switch [switʃ] *v.*

To **switch** means to change something to something else.

→ *Mom **switched** the TV station from the news to her favorite show.*



thorough [θə́:rou] *adj.*

If something or someone is **thorough**, then they are complete in every way.

→ *Tina did a **thorough** job of cleaning the stains out of the carpet.*



torment [tɔ:rmént] *v.*

To **torment** someone means to cause them to suffer on purpose.

→ *She **tormented** her little brother by taking his favorite toy.*

UNIT 4

Word List



beak [beak] *n.*

A **beak** is the hard curved part of a bird's mouth.

→ *The bird used her* **beak** *to dig a small hole in the ground.*



damp [dæmp] *adj.*

If something is **damp**, it is somewhat wet.

→ *My hair is still* ***damp*** *from my shower.*



disapprove [dìsəprúːv] *v.*

To **disapprove** of something is to think that it is wrong.

→ *Alex* ***disapproved*** *of his son's behavior.*



except [iksépt] *prep.*

You use **except** to talk about the only thing that a statement does not apply to.

→ *Everyone had fun on the trip* ***except*** *Jim, who felt ill the whole time.*



flight [flait] *n.*

A **flight** is an act of flying, often in an airplane.

→ *The airplane made a* ***flight*** *around the world.*



fond [fɑnd] *adj.*

When someone is **fond** of something, they like it.

→ *I am very* ***fond*** *of chocolate cake.*



immoral [imɔ́(:)rəl] *adj.*

When something or someone is **immoral**, they are evil or do bad things.

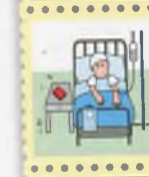
→ *Stealing money from one's mother is an* ***immoral*** *act.*



ivy [áivi] *n.*

Ivy is a plant with long vines that grows upward typically on walls.

→ *The walls of the castle are covered with* ***ivy****.*



moan [moun] *v.*

To **moan** is to make a low sound when feeling pain or sadness.

→ *The sick man* ***moaned*** *from his bed.*



oblivious [əblíviəs] *adj.*

If someone is **oblivious** of something, they are unaware of it.

→ *I was late to school because I was* ***oblivious*** *of the time.*



perish [pέriʃ] *v.*

To **perish** means to die, usually because of bad conditions or bad events.

→ *Many people **perish** in wars.*



pit [pit] *n.*

A **pit** is a big hole in the ground.

→ *Michael fell into the **pit** and needed some help to get out.*



rim [rim] *n.*

The **rim** is the outside edge of a round thing, like a cup or bottle.

→ *I put my lips to the **rim** of the bottle and took a drink.*



roost [ru:st] *n.*

A **roost** is a place where birds can land and rest or sleep.

→ *The family of doves made a **roost** at the top of the tree.*



slippery [slípəri] *adj.*

If something is **slippery**, it is wet or smooth and causes people to slip.

→ *The repairman fell down on the floor because it was too **slippery**.*



soar [sɔ:r] *v.*

To **soar** means to fly high in the air.

→ *As the sun rose, two eagles **soared** through the sky.*



trivial [tríviəl] *adj.*

If something is **trivial**, it is not important or meaningful.

→ *Television is **trivial**, but learning to read is very important.*



typical [típikəl] *adj.*

If something is **typical**, it is normal for a certain type of thing.

→ *Barking is **typical** behavior for dogs.*



utterly [ʌ́tərli] *adv.*

If something is **utterly** a way, it is completely that way.

→ *When the sun was blocked by the moon, it was **utterly** dark outside.*



weep [wi:p] *v.*

To **weep** means to cry.

→ *My sister told me the dramatic movie would make me **weep**.*

UNIT 5

Word List



awhile [əhwáil] *adv.*

If you do something **awhile**, you do it for a short time.

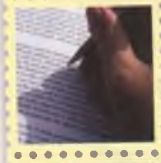
→ *Wait here **awhile**, and I'll bring some tea.*



cyberspace [sáibərspèis] *n.*

Cyberspace is the imaginary place of the Internet where activities occur.

→ *I didn't receive your email. It probably got lost in **cyberspace**.*



edit [édit] *v.*

To **edit** means to correct a piece of writing so that it is suitable to be published.

→ *She asked her brother to **edit** her paper before she submitted it to her teacher.*



essay [ései] *n.*

An **essay** is a short piece of writing on a certain subject.

→ *She had to write a two-page **essay** for her English class.*



evaluate [ivæ̀ljuèit] *v.*

To **evaluate** something means to study it, so a decision can be made.

→ *Joe and Ken **evaluated** the plan and agreed that it would work.*



faint [feint] *v.*

To **faint** means to go unconscious and fall down.

→ *Carol **fainted** because she hadn't eaten in over a day.*



global [glóubəl] *adj.*

If something is **global**, it happens all around the world.

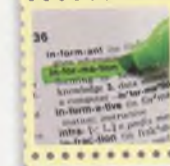
→ *Pollution is a **global** problem.*



gymnasium [dʒimnéiziəm] *n.*

A **gymnasium** is a building with equipment that you can use to get exercise.

→ *When I go to the **gymnasium**, I use the treadmill for 20 minutes.*



highlight [háilàit] *v.*

To **highlight** something means to mark it with a color so that it is easy to see

→ *I read my vocabulary list and **highlighted** the most difficult words.*



ignorant [ígnərənt] *adj.*

If someone is **ignorant** about something, they have no knowledge about it.

→ *I'm a bit **ignorant** about his theories. Can you explain them to me?*



index [índeks] *n.*

An **index** is a list of words at the end of a book that gives information.

→ *If you look in the **index**, you'll find the right page number.*



lecture [léktʃəːr] *n.*

A **lecture** is a long, educational speech.

→ *His **lecture** on world hunger was very informative.*



moral [mɔ́(ː)rəl] *n.*

A **moral** is a message at the end of a story that teaches you something.

→ *At the end of the story, Mother explained the **moral** to the children.*



operate [ɑ́pərèit] *v.*

To **operate** means to work or function.

→ *I'm sorry, but the trains are not **operating** today.*



private [práivit] *adj.*

If something is **private**, it is only used by one person or group.

→ *Don't look at my diary! It's **private**!*



recent [ríːsənt] *adj.*

When something is **recent**, it happened a short time ago.

→ *I did not know what caused his **recent** behavior.*



resolution [rèzəlúːʃən] *n.*

A **resolution** is a personal decision.

→ *At New Year, I made a list of **resolutions** to help me have a better year.*



semester [siméstər] *n.*

A **semester** is a portion of a school year.

→ *Jack is in his second **semester** of college.*



typewritten [táiprìtn] *adj.*

If something is **typewritten**, it is written on a computer or typewriter.

→ *This is an important, formal project and must be **typewritten**.*



weird [wiəːrd] *adj.*

When something is **weird**, it is very strange.

→ *My best friend's dad is a bit **weird**.*

UNIT 6

Word List



absolute [æbsəlù:t] *adj.*

If something is **absolute**, it is total or complete.

→ *My presentation was an **absolute** disaster! It was terrible!*



alas [əlæs] *int.*

Alas is a word that people say when something bad happens.

→ *I looked everywhere for my purse, but **alas**, I couldn't find it.*



attentive [əténtiv] *adj.*

If you are **attentive**, you are careful and you pay attention.

→ *He is a good student because he is **attentive** to every detail on his work.*



cape [keip] *n.*

A **cape** is a large cloth that covers one's back and is tied around the neck.

→ *The superhero wore a long red **cape**.*



envision [invíʒən] *v.*

To **envision** something means to imagine that it may happen.

→ *I can **envision** my mom's face when I give her this present!*



evenly [í:vənli] *adv.*

When something happens **evenly**, it happens at the same rate or level.

→ *The food was handed out **evenly** among the hungry people.*



folk [fouk] *n.*

Folk are common or average people.

→ *I've invited all the **folks** from our street to a gathering at my place.*



melt [melt] *v.*

To **melt** means to turn from a solid to a liquid.

→ *The snowman that we made yesterday **melted** in the sun.*



patch [pætʃ] *n.*

A **patch** is a part of a surface that is different in appearance from the rest.

→ *There was one small **patch** of grass in the sand-covered desert.*



pleasure [plέʒər] *n.*

Pleasure is a feeling of happiness.

→ *The student smiled with **pleasure** when she received the prize.*



pop [pap] *n.*

A **pop** is a short, loud sound.

→ *I heard a loud **pop**; then my computer screen shattered.*



pudding [púdiŋ] *n.*

A **pudding** is a sweet dessert.

→ *Would you like some chocolate **pudding** and coffee for dessert?*



rail [reil] *n.*

A **rail** is a horizontal bar made of metal or wood.

→ *The cat was sitting on the **rail** of the fence.*



recipe [résəpi:] *n.*

A **recipe** is a set of instructions to make food.

→ *The apple cake that you made is really tasty. Can I have the **recipe**, please?*



role [roul] *n.*

A **role** is the normal purpose or function of a person or thing.

→ *My **role** at work is to check the quality of the products.*



shrink [ʃriŋk] *v.*

To **shrink** means to get smaller.

→ *If you stick to a healthy diet, your stomach will **shrink**!*



soak [souk] *v.*

To **soak** something means to make it very wet.

→ *You need to **soak** these beans overnight before you cook them.*



spark [spɑ:rk] *n.*

A **spark** is a small, quick flash of fire.

→ *As he welded the two pieces of metal together, **sparks** flew everywhere.*



spirit [spírit] *n.*

A **spirit** is someone's feelings and personality, but not a physical body part.

→ *He has a very outgoing **spirit**. He can make friends with anyone.*



suit [su:t] *n.*

A **suit** is a set of clothes. It usually includes a jacket with pants or a skirt.

→ *I wore my new **suit** on my date with Melissa.*

UNIT 7

Word List



account [əkáunt] *n.*

An **account** with a bank is an arrangement to keep one's money there.

→ *After I paid for the new car, my bank **account** was nearly empty.*



architect [á:rkitèkt] *n.*

An **architect** is a person who designs buildings.

→ *The plans for building the new home were drawn by a famous **architect**.*



conceal [kənsí:l] *v.*

To **conceal** something means to hide it.

→ *You should **conceal** your money so no one can take it from you.*



crime [kraim] *n.*

A **crime** is something bad that a person does that can be punished by law.

→ *Police quickly arrived at the scene of the **crime**.*



deed [di:d] *n.*

A **deed** is a certificate that proves that someone owns something.

→ *When she bought the car, she was given a **deed** to show the car was hers.*



gratitude [grǽtətjù:d] *n.*

Gratitude is a feeling of being thankful.

→ *The kids showed Aunt Tess much **gratitude** for visiting them.*



habitat [hǽbətæ̀t] *n.*

A **habitat** is the natural home of animals or plants.

→ *Frogs are often found in a wet **habitat**, such as near a lake, river, or pond.*



intervene [ìntərví:n] *v.*

To **intervene** means to help stop a problem between two people or groups.

→ *The students argued until the teacher **intervened**.*



landmark [lǽndmà:rk] *n.*

A **landmark** is an object that helps people find or remember a location.

→ *The tall tree was used as a **landmark** for people to find the road to the inn.*



legal [lígəl] *adj.*

If something is **legal**, it is related to the law or allowed by the law.

→ *It was not **legal** for him to drive until he was eighteen years old.*



memorable [mémərəbəl] *adj.*

If something is **memorable**, then it is remembered for a special reason.

→ *The party was **memorable**; people were still talking about it years later.*



oblige [əbláidʒ] *v.*

To **oblige** someone means to require them to do something.

→ *If I wanted to have playtime, I was **obliged** to clean my room once a week.*



offense [əfêns] *n.*

An **offense** is an action that breaks the law and requires punishment.

→ *He was put in jail for two days for the **offense**.*



proclaim [prouklêim] *v.*

To **proclaim** something means to say it in public.

→ *The army general **proclaimed** that the war was won.*



rally [rǽli] *n.*

A **rally** is a large public meeting in order to support something.

→ *The school had a **rally** in the gym to support the basketball team.*



resolve [rizálv] *v.*

To **resolve** something means to find a solution.

→ *She **resolved** the problem with her children by giving them both a toy.*



resource [rí:so:rs] *n.*

Resources are a person or country's money and materials that they can use.

→ *The poor man didn't have the **resources** to feed himself.*



sentence [séntəns] *n.*

A **sentence** is punishment given to someone who didn't follow the law.

→ *The **sentence** for stealing a car is much worse than for stealing candy.*



volunteer [vàləntíər] *v.*

To **volunteer** means to offer to do something for free.

→ *Many people **volunteered** to help the adults learn to read.*



witness [wítnis] *n.*

A **witness** is someone who sees or hears a crime or accident happen.

→ *The woman was the only **witness** of the horrible crime.*

UNIT 8

Word List



access [ækses] *n.*

Access is the right to enter or use something.

→ *The manager was the only person with **access** to the password.*



conduct [kάndʌkt] *n.*

Conduct is the way that someone acts.

→ *She was punished for her bad **conduct**.*



constant [kάnstənt] *adj.*

When an event or action is **constant**, it happens a lot or all the time.

→ *The television at home is in **constant** use.*



crack [kræk] *n.*

A **crack** is a narrow space between the parts of something broken.

→ *The old window was covered with **cracks**.*



device [diváis] *n.*

A **device** is an object or a machine.

→ *A thermometer is a **device** that tells temperature.*



enclose [inklóuz] *v.*

To **enclose** something is to contain it.

→ *The cows in the field were **enclosed** by a fence.*



grip [grip] *v.*

To **grip** something is to hold it very tightly.

→ *I was scared, so I **gripped** my older sister's hand.*



halt [hɔ:lt] *v.*

To **halt** is to stop moving.

→ *The criminal **halted** when he saw the police coming.*



impending [impéndiŋ] *adj.*

If something is **impending**, it is going to happen soon.

→ *The student was nervous about his **impending** test.*



influence [influəns] *v.*

To **influence** someone or something is to have an effect over them.

→ *My friend **influenced** my decision to attend Terrance University.*



law [lɔ:] *n.*

A **law** is a rule made by the legislative body.

→ *The students learned about different **laws** during social studies class.*



mode [moud] *n.*

A **mode** is a setting or condition on a machine.

→ *Mother turned the TV to quiet **mode** while she talked on the phone.*



perspire [pərspáiər] *v.*

To **perspire** means to sweat.

→ *I usually **perspire** a lot when I am at practice.*



replace [ripléis] *v.*

To **replace** something is to put it in the place of something else.

→ *I **replaced** the tire on my car because it was flat.*



snap [snæp] *v.*

To **snap** something means to break it suddenly, which causes a loud noise.

→ *I took the stick and **snapped** it with my hands.*



sly [slai] *adj.*

If a person or animal is **sly**, they are sneaky or good at tricking people.

→ *The **sly** fox stole the eggs from the nest.*



tend [tend] *v.*

To **tend** to do something is to be likely to do it or to do it often.

→ *My mom **tends** to buy me the perfect gift each Christmas.*



valid [vælid] *adj.*

When something is **valid**, it is correct or based on good reasoning.

→ *The expert's opinion on the subject was more **valid** than others.*



version [və́:rʒən] *n.*

A **version** is an account of something that differs slightly from the original.

→ *She read the students British **version** of the Chinese fairy tale.*



whatsoever [*h*wàtsouévər] *adj.*

You use **whatsoever** after a noun to emphasize that there is nothing of that thing.

→ *The boy had no idea **whatsoever** how to solve the story problem.*

UNIT 9

Word List



alongside [əlɔ:ŋsáid] *adv.*

If something is **alongside** another thing, then it is next to it.

→ *We work **alongside** each other in the office.*



appetite [ǽpitàit] *n.*

Your **appetite** is your hunger for food.

→ *Tom has a big **appetite**. He eats all the time.*



assist [əsíst] *v.*

To **assist** someone is to help them.

→ *Andrew **assisted** me with my homework.*



breeze [bri:z] *n.*

A **breeze** is a soft wind.

→ *The **breeze** caused the leaves to fall off the tree.*



defy [difái] *v.*

To **defy** someone is to work against them or refuse to do what they say.

→ *The students got into trouble for **defying** their teacher's rules.*



display [displéi] *v.*

To **display** something is to show it, especially by putting it in a certain place.

→ *The museum **displayed** many wonderful paintings.*



efficient [ifíʃənt] *adj.*

If something or someone is **efficient**, they do not waste energy.

→ *My car is very **efficient**. I rarely have to buy gas.*



feeble [fi:bəl] *adj.*

If someone is **feeble**, they are small or weak.

→ *The boy was too **feeble** to carry the object very far.*



forgive [fə:rgív] *v.*

To **forgive** someone is to stop being angry with them.

→ *Sandra **forgave** Peter after he said he was sorry.*



lively [láivli] *adj.*

If someone is **lively**, they have a lot of energy.

→ *Jennifer is very **lively**: she's always running and playing.*



majestic [mədʒéstik] *adj.*

If something is **majestic**, it is large and beautiful.

→ *The rich people lived in a big, **majestic** house.*

nor [nɔ:r] *conj.*

You use **nor** to connect two negative ideas.

→ *I eat neither apples **nor** oranges. I don't like either one.*

outraged [áutrèidʒ] *adj.*

If someone is **outraged**, they are very angry.

→ *My father was **outraged** when he saw that I had crashed his car.*

pessimistic [pèsəmístik] *adj.*

If someone is **pessimistic**, they believe that the worst will happen.

→ *John is **pessimistic**. He always thinks something bad will happen.*

rumor [rú:mər] *n.*

A **rumor** is something people talk about even though it may not be true.

→ *Kevin was spreading **rumors** about Marcia to everyone.*

slap [slæp] *v.*

To **slap** someone means to hit them with the palm of the hand.

→ *Out of anger, Helen **slapped** Eunice on the face.*

smash [smæʃ] *v.*

To **smash** something is to break it into many small pieces.

→ *Jacob **smashed** the window with a rock.*

subject [sʌ́bdʒikt] *n.*

A **subject** is the topic that is being discussed or taught.

→ *The **subject** of Marco's speech was the economy.*

wage [weidʒ] *n.*

A **wage** is the money that a person gets for doing a job.

→ *The **wages** I receive from my job are really great!*

whereas [hwɛərǽz] *conj.*

You use **whereas** to show how two things are different.

→ *My sister loves horror movies, **whereas** I prefer comedies.*

UNIT 10

Word List



animate [ænəmit] *adj.*

When something is **animate**, it has life.

→ *Rocks and machines are not **animate** things.*



classify [klǽsəfài] *v.*

To **classify** things is to put them into groups based on their type.

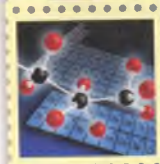
→ *The biologist **classified** the plant as a completely new species.*



concede [kənsíːd] *v.*

To **concede** is to admit that something is true against your wish.

→ *The student **conceded** that he had cheated on the test.*



concept [kɑ́nsept] *n.*

A **concept** is an idea about something.

→ *I learned some **concepts** of molecules before working in the science lab.*



construct [kənstrʌ́kt] *v.*

To **construct** something means to make or build it.

→ *The men used wood and metal to **construct** a house.*



decade [dékeid] *n.*

A **decade** is a period of ten years.

→ *She celebrated her three **decades** of work with the company.*



diagram [dáiəgræ̀m] *n.*

A **diagram** is a simple drawing that explains what something is or how it works.

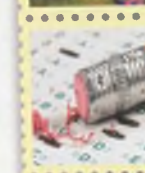
→ *By following the **diagram**, I was able to put the desk together.*



ferry [féri] *n.*

A **ferry** is a boat that carries passengers over short distances.

→ *The **ferry** took the people across the lake.*



handy [hǽndi] *adj.*

If something is **handy**, it is useful.

→ *An eraser is **handy** if you make a lot of mistakes.*



isolate [áisəlèit] *v.*

To **isolate** is to separate one person or thing from a group.

→ *The teacher **isolated** the bad child from the class before talking with her.*



longing [lɔ́(:)ŋiŋ] *n.*

A **longing** is a strong feeling of wanting.

→ *Since he skipped breakfast, he had a **longing** for food all morning.*



numerous [njúːmərəs] *adj.*

If something is **numerous**, there are many of those things.

→ *It was hard to drive fast since there were **numerous** holes in the road.*



particle [páːrtikl] *n.*

A **particle** is a very small piece of something.

→ *The bottles of wine were covered in a layer of dust **particles**.*



plea [pliː] *n.*

A **plea** is a request that is urgent or emotional.

→ *The poor, hungry man made a **plea** for food.*



refrain [rifréin] *v.*

To **refrain** from something is to avoid doing it.

→ *The doctor asked Mary to **refrain** from eating fast food as part of her diet.*



review [rivjúː] *n.*

A **review** of something is a formal inspection of it by people in authority.

→ *The government ordered a careful **review** of the economic situation.*



sophisticated [səfístəkèitid] *adj.*

If someone is **sophisticated**, they know many things about the world.

→ *Jake is one of the most **sophisticated** persons I've ever met.*



surrender [səréndər] *v.*

To **surrender** something is to give it up.

→ *The thief **surrendered** the money to the police when he was caught.*



upright [ʌ́pràit] *adj.*

If something is **upright**, it is standing up straight.

→ *Meerkats can't walk like humans, but they can stand **upright**.*



worthwhile [wə̀ːrhwáil] *adj.*

If something is **worthwhile**, it is important or useful.

→ *On his visit to Canada, he realized studying English was **worthwhile**.*

UNIT 11

Word List



alliance [əláiəns] *n.*

An **alliance** is a group of people who work together.

→ *The junior executives formed an **alliance** with each other.*



applause [əplɔ́:z] *n.*

Applause is the noise made when people clap hands to show approval.

→ *At the end of his speech, everyone gave **applause**.*



armed [ɑ:rmd] *adj.*

If you are **armed**, you are carrying a weapon.

→ *The robber was **armed** with a gun.*



authoritative [əəɔ́:ritèitiv] *adj.*

If something is **authoritative**, it uses the best information available.

→ *This book is an **authoritative** source on Ancient Egypt's Queen Nefertiti.*



ceremony [sérəmòuni] *n.*

A **ceremony** is an event that happens on special occasions.

→ *Tom and Amy's marriage **ceremony** is in June.*



culture [kʌ́ltʃər] *n.*

Culture is the music, art, and writings of a certain place or group of people.

→ *Ancient Mexican **culture** is renowned for its architecture.*



defense [diféns] *n.*

A **defense** is something that is done to protect another thing.

→ *The air force works in **defense** of its country.*



detail [dí:teil] *n.*

A **detail** is a small piece of information.

→ *Jane told Ben all the **details** of her trip to China.*



diverse [divə́:rs] *adj.*

When a group of things is **diverse**, it is made up of a wide variety of things.

→ *Big cities have **diverse** populations with people of different races and ages.*



enchant [intʃǽnt] *v.*

To **enchant** someone is to make them feel very interested or happy.

→ *The beautiful woman **enchanted** everybody in the room.*



equip [ikwíp] *v.*

To **equip** someone is to give them the things needed to do something.

→ *Steve was **equipped** with the tools needed to do the job.*



exception [iksépʃən] *n.*

An **exception** is someone or something not conforming to a rule.

→ *Most students thought the test was hard, but Tim was the **exception**.*



genre [ʒáːnrə] *n.*

A **genre** is a type of literature, art, or music characterized by its style.

→ *She is considered a master in the comedy **genre**.*



impact [ímpækt] *n.*

An **impact** is the effect someone or something has on another.

→ *My grandmother had a great **impact** on my life.*



lure [luər] *v.*

To **lure** someone is to convince them to do something, by using a trick.

→ *The store **lures** people in with big signs that say "Sale!"*



obstacle [ábstəkəl] *n.*

An **obstacle** is an object or a problem that stops you from doing something.

→ *Climbing over the giant rock was the biggest **obstacle** for the hikers.*



shelter [ʃéltəːr] *n.*

A **shelter** is a place to go that is safe from danger or bad weather.

→ *The frog took **shelter** from the storm in a nearby cave.*



sort [soːrt] *v.*

To **sort** means to separate things into different groups or classes.

→ *He **sorted** his clothes by colors and sizes.*



supply [səplái] *v.*

To **supply** something means to give people what they need or want.

→ *The water heater **supplied** the house with warm water.*



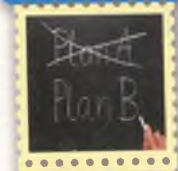
vain [vein] *adj.*

If people are **vain**, they are only concerned with how they look.

→ *Rebecca is so **vain** that she looks at herself in every mirror.*

UNIT 12

Word List



alternative [ɔːltə́ːrnətiv] *n.*

An **alternative** is something that you can choose instead of your first choice.

→ *Her first plan to make extra money seemed weak, so she chose an **alternative**.*



avenue [ǽvənjùː] *n.*

An **avenue** is a road, often a large one with buildings on each side.

→ *Drive down this **avenue** and then turn left to go to the park.*



belly [béli] *n.*

The **belly** is the stomach of a person or animal.

→ *His **belly** was full because he ate a lot of food.*



bid [bid] *n.*

A **bid** to do something is an attempt to do it.

→ *He made a **bid** to become the university's next president.*



blow [blou] *v.*

To **blow** means to move air or move something through the air, as in the wind.

→ *The wind is **blowing** very hard today. We should stay inside.*



conflict [kánflikt] *n.*

A **conflict** is a fight between different people or groups.

→ *The two nations had a **conflict** over which one could use the water in the river*



continent [kántənənt] *n.*

A **continent** is one of the seven large areas of land on the Earth.

→ *Asia is the largest **continent**.*



current [kə́ːrənt] *n.*

A **current** is a steady and constant flow of air or water in a river or ocean.

→ *The ocean **currents** took the ship far off into the sea.*



disrespect [dìsrispékt] *n.*

Disrespect is rudeness or a behavior that shows a lack of respect.

→ *He showed **disrespect** by arguing with his boss during a meeting.*



enthusiasm [enəúːziæ̀zəm] *n.*

Enthusiasm is a very strong good feeling about something.

→ *The crowd showed their **enthusiasm** for the soccer team by cheering loudly.*



harsh [hɑ:rʃ] *adj.*

When something is **harsh**, it is very unpleasant.

→ *The desert can be a very **harsh** environment.*



lean [li:n] *v.*

To **lean** is to bend the body in a particular direction.

→ *The woman **leaned** against the counter because she was tired.*



meantime [mí:ntàim] *n.*

The **meantime** is the time between two events.

→ *Ted began setting the table. In the **meantime**, I began preparing the food.*



mischief [místʃif] *n.*

Mischief is behavior that is meant to trick or cause trouble for people.

→ *Ben was up to **mischief** when he persuaded Ken to paint his face.*



muscle [mʌ́səl] *n.*

Muscle is a mass of tissue attached to bone that helps you move.

→ *She went to the gym in order to make her **muscles** stronger.*



rescue [réskju:] *v.*

To **rescue** someone means to remove them from danger.

→ *The firefighter **rescued** the man from the burning building.*



succession [səkséʃən] *n.*

A **succession** is a number of things that follow one after the other.

→ *The student said the letters of the alphabet in **succession**.*



terrain [təréin] *n.*

The **terrain** is the land and all of its physical features or parts.

→ *The **terrain** below was rocky and full of hills.*



timid [tímid] *adj.*

If someone is **timid**, they are afraid, shy, or nervous.

→ *The **timid** child hides behind her mother whenever she sees a stranger.*



violence [váiələns] *n.*

Violence is forceful action that is meant to injure or kill people.

→ *The boy hit his brother in an act of **violence**.*

UNIT 13

Word List



affect [əfékt] *v.*

To **affect** someone or something is to have an influence over them.

→ *The student's poor attitude **affected** the other students in the class.*



autograph [ɔ́:təgræf] *n.*

An **autograph** is the written name of a famous person.

→ *Everybody wanted the movie star's **autograph**.*



bead [bi:d] *n.*

A **bead** is a drop of liquid.

→ ***Beads** of water collected outside the glass.*



brew [bru:] *v.*

To **brew** coffee or tea means to pour hot water over it.

→ *Please **brew** a fresh pot of coffee.*



charm [tʃɑ:rm] *v.*

To **charm** someone is to please them with your personality.

→ *Gail **charmed** everyone with her humorous stories.*



destiny [déstəni] *n.*

A **destiny** is all the things that happen or will happen to a person in their life.

→ *It was his **destiny** to become a great singer.*



horn [hɔ:rn] *n.*

A **horn** is a device that makes a loud noise.

→ *The boy honked his **horn** while he rode his bicycle past the house.*



irritable [írətəbəl] *adj.*

When someone is **irritable**, they become annoyed or angry very easily.

→ *She is **irritable** when she doesn't get enough sleep.*



lag [læg] *v.*

To **lag** behind is to move slowly behind other moving objects.

→ *The girl on rollerblades **lagged** behind the little girl on the bicycle.*



maximize [mæksəmàiz] *v.*

To **maximize** something means to make it the biggest in size or amount.

→ *Businesses try to **maximize** their profits.*



nightmare [náitmɛ̀ə:r] *n.*

A **nightmare** is a bad or scary dream.

→ *The girl was scared to go back to sleep because she had a **nightmare**.*



nutritious [njutríʃəs] *adj.*

When something is **nutritious**, it helps the body stay healthy.

→ *Mangoes are one of the most **nutritious** fruits in the world.*



protein [próuti:n] *n.*

Protein is a substance that is necessary for the body to grow and be strong.

→ *Fish and beef are good sources of **protein**.*



signature [sígnətʃə:r] *n.*

A **signature** is your name that you have written in your own way.

→ *I put my **signature** at the end of the letter.*



stuff [stʌf] *n.*

Stuff is a word used to refer to things without mentioning the things by name.

→ *We gave a lot of **stuff** to the charity.*



subconscious [sʌbkɑ́nʃəs] *adj.*

When something is **subconscious**, it is done without thinking about it.

→ *Breathing is one of the **subconscious** things that the body does.*



van [væn] *n.*

A **van** is a vehicle that is used for carrying things but is smaller than a truck.

→ *The delivery company uses large **vans** to deliver packages.*



warn [wɔ:rn] *v.*

To **warn** someone is to make them know of possible danger in the future.

→ *The lifeguard **warned** people to stay away from the rough ocean.*



workout [wə́:rkàut] *n.*

A **workout** is an exercise routine that helps improve health.

→ *She doesn't do her **workout** on the weekends.*



zoom [zu:m] *v.*

To **zoom** is to move quickly.

→ *The cars **zoomed** along the road.*

UNIT 14

Word List



brick [brik] *n.*

A **brick** is a block of hard clay that is used for building things, such as walls.

→ *There were several **bricks** scattered on the ground.*



crumble [krʌ́mbl] *v.*

To **crumble** means to break or fall apart into small pieces.

→ *The old house's walls **crumbled** into a pile of rock and wood.*



dough [dou] *n.*

Dough is a mixture of flour and water that becomes bread when baked.

→ *I made heart-shaped cookies from the **dough**.*



express [iksprés] *v.*

To **express** a feeling or idea means to show others how one thinks or feels.

→ *The nurse **expressed** her sympathy for the sick patient.*



fist [fist] *n.*

A **fist** is a hand with fingers bent in toward the palm.

→ *The bully made a **fist** and threatened to hit the small boy.*



flexible [fléksəbəl] *adj.*

If something is **flexible**, then it can bend easily without breaking.

→ *The tree branch was so **flexible** it could be bent into a circle and not break.*



flush [flʌʃ] *v.*

To **flush** means the face becomes red due to heat, illness, or emotion.

→ *After the long race, the runner's face was **flushed**.*



injure [indʒər] *v.*

To **injure** someone means to damage a part of their body.

→ *The car crash **injured** two people.*



lump [lʌmp] *n.*

A **lump** is a small piece of something that is solid.

→ *The artist took a **lump** of clay and turned it into a beautiful pot.*



mixture [míkstʃə:r] *n.*

A **mixture** is something that is made by mixing other things together.

→ *The walls were built using a **mixture** of water, rock, and dirt.*



reconcile [rékənsàil] *v.*

To **reconcile** means to return to a friendly relationship.

→ *After arguing, the two friends were **reconciled** with each other.*



ruin [rú:in] *v.*

To **ruin** something means to harm or damage it greatly.

→ *Our walk in the park was **ruined** by the sudden rain.*



shatter [ʃǽtə:r] *v.*

To **shatter** something means to break it suddenly into many tiny pieces.

→ *When the ball hit the window, the glass **shattered**.*



shutter [ʃʌ́tə:r] *n.*

Shutters are wooden or metal covers in front of a window.

→ *Mr. Smith closed the **shutters** every night to make his bedroom dark.*



sift [sift] *v.*

To **sift** something means to remove all the large pieces.

→ *The baker **sifted** the flour into a large bowl.*



slight [slait] *adj.*

If something is **slight**, then it is small or minor.

→ *There was only a **slight** change in the little boy's height.*



sparkle [spɑ́:rkəl] *v.*

To **sparkle** means to shine brightly with quick flashes of light.

→ *The stars **sparkled** in the winter night's sky.*



sprinkle [spriŋkəl] *v.*

To **sprinkle** means to scatter something all over something else.

→ *He **sprinkled** the pasta with salt and black pepper.*



stale [steil] *adj.*

If food is **stale**, then it is not fresh but dry, hard, and not good to eat.

→ *The cookies sat on the table so long that they became **stale**.*



utter [ʌ́tər] *v.*

To **utter** a word or a sound means to say it.

→ *The lost boy was so scared that he could barely **utter** a single word.*

UNIT 15

Word List



although [ɔ:lðóu] *conj.*

You use **although** to say that one thing is contrasted by another.

→ ***Although*** *she was late, her friends gave her a warm welcome.*



apply [əplái] *v.*

To **apply** something means to put it on.

→ *She always* ***applies*** *makeup to her face before going outside.*



await [əwéit] *v.*

To **await** something means to wait for it.

→ *The players* ***awaited*** *the judge's decision.*



beloved [bilʌ́vid] *adj.*

When something is **beloved**, it is very special and you like it very much.

→ *The boy took a nap next to his* ***beloved*** *cat.*



bury [béri] *v.*

To **bury** someone or something means to put them in the ground.

→ *They* ***buried*** *their grandfather under his favorite tree after he died.*



climate [kláimit] *n.*

A **climate** is the usual weather in a place.

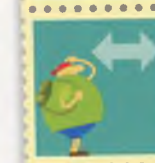
→ *The* ***climate*** *in the desert is very hot.*



complain [kəmpléin] *v.*

When you **complain**, you say that you are unhappy about something.

→ *The workers* ***complained*** *that they were being treated unfairly.*



confuse [kənfjú:z] *v.*

To **confuse** someone means to make them feel like they are unsure.

→ *The sign* ***confused*** *the traveler because it pointed in two directions.*



due [dju:] *adj.*

When something is **due**, it is expected to happen or be done at that time.

→ *The papers were* ***due*** *on the 19th.*



entire [entáiər] *adj.*

When you talk about an **entire** thing, you are talking about the whole thing.

→ *He was so hungry that he ate the* ***entire*** *pizza by himself.*



establish [istæbliʃ] *v.*

To **establish** something means to create it.

→ *He wanted to **establish** a club for people to help the Earth.*



furnace [fə́:rnis] *n.*

A **furnace** is a place where heat is made.

→ *Mr. Jones came to fix the **furnace**.*



leash [li:ʃ] *n.*

A **leash** is a rope or chain that is used to lead an animal.

→ *A lot of dogs must wear a **leash** to keep them from running away.*



mature [mətʃúə:r] *v.*

To **mature** means to grow up to become an adult.

→ *When they **matured**, they became as tall as their parents.*



measure [méʒə:r] *v.*

To **measure** something means to find out the quality, value, or effect of it.

→ *The scientists carefully **measured** the amount of chemicals in the tubes.*



midst [midst] *n.*

The **midst** of something is the middle of it.

→ *She was in the **midst** of cleaning when the telephone rang.*



misery [mizəri] *n.*

Misery is extreme suffering.

→ *There was a lot of **misery** after Sam lost his dog.*



prior [práiər] *adj.*

When something happened **prior** to something else, it happened earlier.

→ *Ron had to wait since he arrived **prior** to the scheduled meeting time.*



research [risə́:rtʃ] *n.*

Research is close and careful study to discover new things.

→ *Scientists did a lot of **research** on the subject of blood type.*



variety [vəráiəti] *n.*

A **variety** of something is a group of many different kinds of it.

→ *There are a **variety** of flowers at the shop.*

UNIT 16

Word List



altogether [ɔ:ltəgéðər] *adv.*

If something happens **altogether,** it happens completely.

→ *The company stopped using sugar **altogether** in its food.*



bind [baind] *v.*

To **bind** is to bring people together.

→ *The victims of the flood were **bound** by their need to help each other.*



bruise [bru:z] *n.*

A **bruise** is a dark mark caused by being hit by something.

→ *She got a **bruise** on her knee from falling down.*



custom [kʌ́stəm] *n.*

A **custom** is a way of doing things that has been the same for a long time.

→ *It is a **custom** that the bride and groom have the first dance.*



disobedient [dìsəbí:diənt] *adj.*

When someone is **disobedient,** they do not follow the rules or instructions.

→ *The **disobedient** children didn't listen to their mother and had an accident.*



foresee [fɔ:rsí:] *v.*

To **foresee** something is to know about it before it happens.

→ *The teacher didn't **foresee** any problems with her large class.*



glimpse [glimps] *v.*

To **glimpse** something is to see it for a short time.

→ *She **glimpsed** outside the window as the plane was about to land.*



hoop [hu:p] *n.*

A **hoop** is a ring that is made of plastic, metal, or wood.

→ *The boys tried to toss the ball through the basketball **hoop**.*



misfortune [misfɔ́:rtʃən] *n.*

Misfortune is bad luck or an unlucky event.

→ *His family helped him when he encountered **misfortune**.*



negative [négətiv] *adj.*

When something is **negative,** it is unpleasant or sad.

→ *She doesn't like to say **negative** things about her friends.*





















per [pər] *prep.*

Per is used to mean "each" when giving a price, size, or amount.

→ *It costs $8 **per** person to watch the baseball game.*

plead [pli:d] *v.*

To **plead** is to ask for something you want very badly.

→ *He **pleaded** for his parents to let him go to the soccer game.*

rip [rip] *v.*

To **rip** something means to pull it apart.

→ *She **ripped** the paper in half by accident.*

sake [seik] *n.*

The **sake** of something is the reason for doing it.

→ *The parents worked hard for their children's **sake**.*

scrape [skreip] *v.*

To **scrape** something is to rub it very hard with something sharp.

→ *I accidentally **scraped** the paint off the side of the car.*

source [sɔ:rs] *n.*

A **source** of something is the place that it comes from.

→ *The river was the **source** of drinking water for the village.*

stern [stə:rn] *adj.*

When somebody is **stern**, they are very serious.

→ *The **stern** teacher didn't allow the students to speak during class.*

stitch [stitʃ] *v.*

To **stitch** is to use a needle and thread to join pieces of cloth together.

→ *My grandmother **stitched** the pieces together to make a big blanket.*

thump [ɵʌmp] *n.*

A **thump** is the sound of a heavy object falling.

→ *They heard the **thump** when the bowling ball hit the floor.*

vehement [ví:əmənt] *adj.*

When somebody is **vehement**, they are angry and emotional.

→ *Gina was **vehement** when she found out that Liz was bad in school.*

UNIT 17

Word List



civilization [sìvəlizéiʃən] *n.*

A **civilization** is an organized group of humans that have culture and government.

→ *Most early **civilizations** in Central America didn't use metal weapons.*



convenient [kənví:njənt] *adj.*

When something is **convenient**, it is easy to do and does not take a lot of work.

→ *The bus is a **convenient** way to get to school.*



den [den] *n.*

A **den** is a living space for some types of animals, such as lions.

→ *The mother lion left her babies in the **den**.*



dew [dju:] *n.*

Dew is the drops of water that form on the ground outside during the night.

→ *When we woke up, we saw that the grass was covered in **dew**.*



drastic [dræstik] *adj.*

When something is **drastic**, it is extreme or major.

→ *She made a **drastic** decision to get her long hair cut short.*



exit [égzit] *v.*

To **exit** means to leave.

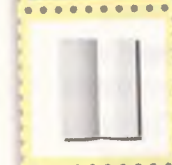
→ *The students **exited** through the front door.*



flock [flɑk] *n.*

A **flock** is a group of animals, such as birds, sheep or goats.

→ *There was one black sheep in the entire **flock**.*



fold [fould] *v.*

To **fold** is to bend something like paper or cloth so that it takes up less space.

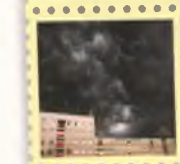
→ *I **folded** the paper and put it in my pocket.*



lid [lid] *n.*

A **lid** is a top for a box or container that can be removed.

→ *He lifted the **lid** of the box and revealed her present.*



loom [lu:m] *v.*

To **loom** is to seem very large and often scary.

→ *The ominous clouds **loomed** over the school.*



mighty [máiti] *adj.*

When something is **mighty**, it is strong and large.

→ *The **mighty** wrestler scared all who faced him.*



mushroom [mʌ́ʃru(ː)m] *n.*

A **mushroom** is a fungus with a round top. Some are used as food.

→ *The soup had fresh **mushrooms** in it.*



native [néitiv] *adj.*

When something is **native**, it is originating in a certain place or area.

→ *Avocadoes are **native** fruits of Mexico.*



poison [póizən] *n.*

Poison is a dangerous substance that causes illness or death.

→ *They used **poison** to get rid of the rats in their home.*



reed [riːd] *n.*

Reeds are tall and skinny plants that grow in groups near water.

→ *The sun set behind the **reeds** of the lake's shore.*



shield [ʃiːld] *v.*

To **shield** something is to protect it.

→ *She **shielded** her eyes from the sun with sunglasses.*



stormy [stɔ́ːrmi] *adj.*

Stormy describes something affected or characterized by storms.

→ *The golfers decided to go home because of the **stormy** weather.*



sway [swei] *v.*

To **sway** is to move slowly from side to side.

→ *She **swayed** while she listened to the music.*



urban [əːrbən] *adj.*

When something is **urban**, it is related to the city.

→ *Subways are an important form of **urban** transportation.*



wade [weid] *v.*

To **wade** is to walk in or pass through water.

→ *The child **waded** in the water at the beach.*

UNIT 18

Word List



accent [æksent] *n.*

An **accent** is a certain way of speaking that shows where a person is from.

→ *The new teacher's **accent** was clearly a German one.*



barber [bɑ́:rbər] *n.*

A **barber** is a person whose job is to cut hair.

→ *My hair is getting much too long. I'd better go to the **barber's** shop.*



basement [béismənt] *n.*

A **basement** of a house or building is a room that is built underground.

→ *They turned their **basement** into a game room.*



blank [blæŋk] *adj.*

When something is **blank**, it does not have anything on it.

→ *She got a **blank** paper to draw on.*



blink [bliŋk] *v.*

To **blink** means to shut the eyes and quickly open them again.

→ *I **blinked** many times so that my eyes could adjust to the bright light.*



choir [kwaiər] *n.*

A **choir** is a group of people who sing together.

→ *He had **choir** practice every day after school.*



comic [kɑ́mik] *adj.*

When something is **comic**, it is funny.

→ *The **comic** actor was famous for his jokes.*



complicate [kɑ́mplikèit] *v.*

To **complicate** something means to make it harder than necessary.

→ *The bad weather **complicated** finishing the job quickly.*



decline [diklάin] *v.*

To **decline** an offer or invitation means to say no to it.

→ *She **declined** his offer to pay for her dinner.*



errand [érənd] *n.*

An **errand** is a trip taken to do a specific activity.

→ *He couldn't go to practice because he had several **errands** to do.*



glove [glʌv] *n.*

A **glove** is a piece of clothing that covers your fingers and hand.

→ *When it gets cold, I always put on a pair of **gloves**.*



hermit [hə́:rmit] *n.*

A **hermit** is one who lives alone and does not spend time with others.

→ *The **hermit** lived a simple life in a small cave in the forest.*



justly [dʒʌ́stli] *adv.*

If something is done **justly**, then it is fair.

→ *We **justly** decided to give the prize to him.*



leather [léðə:r] *n.*

Leather is a material made from animal skin that is used to make clothing.

→ *He got a new **leather** jacket for his birthday.*



ponder [pɑ́ndər] *v.*

To **ponder** something is to think about it carefully.

→ *She sat in the park and **pondered** her problem.*



reserve [rizə́:rv] *v.*

To **reserve** something means to keep it for a certain person or time.

→ *He **reserved** a table at the busy restaurant.*



script [skript] *n.*

A **script** is the words of a film or play.

→ *He read the **script** of the play three times.*



search [sə:rtʃ] *v.*

To **search** for something or someone means to look for them carefully.

→ *I **searched** the newspaper for a new job.*



slam [slæm] *v.*

To **slam** is to close something hard.

→ *She **slammed** the book shut after she finished reading it.*



staircase [stɛ́ərkèis] *n.*

A **staircase** is a set of stairs found inside a building.

→ *The **staircase** leads directly into the kitchen.*

UNIT 19

Word List



afflicted [əflíktid] *adj.*

Afflicted means to suffer physically or mentally.

→ *He was **afflicted** by pain in his right arm.*



aisle [ail] *n.*

An **aisle** is a space between two things that people use to walk.

→ *They were told to clear the **aisle** because the plane was about to land.*



atmosphere [ætməsfiər] *n.*

The **atmosphere** is the air around the Earth where weather conditions form.

→ *Scientists worry that harmful substances are hurting the **atmosphere**.*



author [ɔ́:ər] *n.*

An **author** is a person who wrote a certain piece of writing.

→ *The **author** was hard at work on his next novel.*



breakdown [bréikdàun] *n.*

A **breakdown** is a failure to work correctly.

→ *Her car had a **breakdown**, and she wasn't sure how to fix it.*



cargo [kɑ́:rgou] *n.*

Cargo is the items carried by a ship or airplane.

→ *The **cargo** of the ship got wet when it started raining.*



chapter [tʃǽptər] *n.*

A **chapter** is a part of a book that usually has a number or a title.

→ *The first **chapter** of a book usually introduces the main character of a story.*



connect [kənékt] *v.*

To **connect** two things means to join them together.

→ *I **connected** the mouse to my laptop computer.*



etc. [etsétərə] *n.*

Etc. is short for "etcetera." It is used to refer to other unspecified objects.

→ *She was going to bring treats to the party: cookies, muffins, cake, **etc.***



flip [flip] *v.*

To **flip** means to press a switch quickly to turn it on or off.

→ *To turn on the lights, just **flip** this switch.*



idle [áidl] *adj.*

If you are **idle**, you are not doing anything.

→ *She read a book to keep from being **idle**.*



notify [nóutəfài] *v.*

To **notify** someone of something is to tell them about it.

→ *The teacher **notified** us about a change to our assignment.*



pea [pi:] *n.*

Peas are a vegetable that is small, round and green.

→ *His favorite food was **peas**.*



raisin [réizən] *n.*

A **raisin** is a dried grape.

→ ***Raisins** are one of my favorite snacks.*



retain [ritéin] *v.*

To **retain** something is to keep it.

→ *Even by the afternoon, the day had **retained** the morning's freshness.*



state [steit] *v.*

To **state** something means to say it in a definite way.

→ *The president **stated** his opinion about the world's health concerns.*



tray [trei] *n.*

A **tray** is a flat plate used to hold food.

→ *The waiter brought our food on a **tray**.*



unfortunate [ʌnfɔ́:rtʃənit] *adj.*

If something is **unfortunate**, it is bad or unlucky.

→ *It was **unfortunate** that Dave's team lost, but he still had fun.*



vivid [vívid] *adj.*

When something is **vivid**, it is bright and colorful.

→ *The figures in the painting were **vivid**.*



vomit [vámit] *v.*

To **vomit** means to have food come up from one's stomach.

→ *It is common for women to **vomit** when they are pregnant.*

UNIT 20

Word List



betray [bitréi] *v.*

To **betray** someone means to treat them in a dishonest way.

→ *The man **betrayed** his country when he gave away national secrets.*



blast [blæst] *n.*

A **blast** is a loud noise made by something that explodes.

→ *There was a loud **blast** when the police officer fired the gun.*



bracelet [bréislit] *n.*

A **bracelet** is a piece of jewelry that you wear around your wrist.

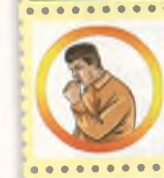
→ *My father gave me a pretty gold **bracelet** for my birthday.*



cease [si:s] *v.*

To **cease** means to stop.

→ *After about an hour, the rain **ceased**, and a rainbow appeared.*



choke [tʃouk] *v.*

To **choke** means to cough because you have difficulty breathing.

→ *There was a lot of smoke in the air, and it made me **choke**.*



civil [sívəl] *adj.*

When an event is **civil**, it happens inside a country.

→ *The country was torn apart by a terrible **civil** war.*



comment [kάment] *v.*

To **comment** means to say something that shows your personal opinion.

→ *Tom **commented** on the poor quality of the food.*



cross [krɔ:s] *v.*

To **cross** means to go from one side to the other side.

→ *We used his boat to **cross** to the other side of the lake.*



dent [dent] *n.*

A **dent** is damage caused by something heavy hitting something else.

→ *That blue car hit my car, and now there is a small **dent** in my car door.*



distrust [distrʌ́st] *v.*

To **distrust** someone means to believe that they are not honest.

→ *Don't lend money to someone if you **distrust** them!*



fort [fɔ:rt] *n.*

A **fort** is a small building that is specially built to defend an area from attack.

→ *When the army arrived, they built a big **fort** on the top of the hill.*



found [faund] *v.*

To **found** means to bring something into existence.

→ *The pastor **founded** his church in the countryside.*



lining [láiniŋ] *n.*

Lining is a piece of cloth that covers the inside of clothes.

→ *This jacket is very warm because it has a thick **lining**.*



mass [mæs] *n.*

A **mass** is a large number of things of one type.

→ *We received a **mass** of letters this morning.*



pray [prei] *v.*

To **pray** means to talk to God.

→ *When people go to church, they **pray** for their families and friends.*



rife [raif] *adj.*

If a place is **rife** with something bad, it is very common in that place.

→ *This part of the country is **rife** with disease.*



sole [soul] *adj.*

When something is the **sole** thing, it is the only thing of a particular type.

→ *His **sole** purpose in life was to help others.*



sweep [swi:p] *v.*

If you **sweep** the floor, you clean it with a tool like a broom or a brush.

→ *There is a lot of dirt on the floor. Can you **sweep** it please?*



treachery [trétʃəri] *n.*

Treachery is a behavior in which a person betrays a country or a person.

→ *The man ran away to escape from the **treachery** of his wife.*



tuck [tʌk] *v.*

To **tuck** something means to put it somewhere so that it is neat or safe.

→ *He looked sloppy without his shirt being **tucked** into his pants.*

UNIT 21

Word List



background [bækgràund] *n.*

A **background** is a person's education, family, and experience.

→ *The new teacher had a **background** in science and math.*



bait [beit] *n.*

Bait is something used to trick a person or thing to do something.

→ *The best **bait** for catching fish is a big, fat worm.*



chronicle [kránikl] *v.*

To **chronicle** something means to record an event or speech.

→ *The daily newspaper **chronicles** local and world events.*



copper [kápər] *n.*

Copper is a red-brown metal often used in electric wire and pipes.

→ *Ancient hunters melted **copper** to make knives and spears.*



disease [dizí:z] *n.*

A **disease** is an illness that causes specific problems.

→ *He had a **disease** that caused him to lose his hearing.*



folklore [fóuklɔ̀:r] *n.*

Folklore is the collection of beliefs and stories of a culture.

→ *India's **folklore** has stories written in long poems about great warriors.*



infect [infékt] *v.*

To **infect** someone means to give them an illness.

→ *The common cold **infects** hundreds of millions of people each year.*



itch [itʃ] *v.*

To **itch** means to rub the skin with your fingernails.

→ *The rough fabric in his shirt made the back of his neck **itch**.*



literature [lítərətʃər] *n.*

Literature is books, plays, and poetry.

→ *Early American **literature** covers the poetry and stories from 1500 to 1800.*



millennium [miléniəm] *n.*

A **millennium** is one thousand years.

→ *Stonehenge is believed to have been built about 5 **millenniums** ago.*



myth [miθ] *n.*

A **myth** is a traditional story that explains a culture's history and beliefs.

→ *In Greece, there was a **myth** about a woman who had snakes for hair.*



promote [prəmóut] *v.*

To **promote** someone means to raise them to a higher position or rank.

→ *After two years in the company, she was **promoted** to a manager.*



relate [riléit] *v.*

To **relate** to something means to have a connection with it.

→ *A company's plan usually **relates** to how much profit it can make.*



religion [rilídʒən] *n.*

A **religion** is a belief in a god or gods.

→ *Their **religion** taught that people should forgive their enemies.*



sum [sʌm] *n.*

A **sum** is a specific amount of money.

→ *He calculated the numbers to see what the **sum** of his bills would be.*



teller [télə:r] *n.*

A **teller** is a person who works with a bank's customers.

→ *The **teller** at the bank helped Kelly put money into a savings account.*



trustworthy [trʌ́stwə̀:rði] *adj.*

If someone is **trustworthy,** they are honest and truthful.

→ *Mary is one of the most **trustworthy** people I've ever met.*



update [ʌpdéit] *v.*

To **update** something means to make it more modern.

→ *We need to **update** the programs on our computers.*



vein [vein] *n.*

A **vein** is a tube in the body that carries blood toward the heart.

→ *The blue **veins** in my hand are just under my skin.*



venom [vénəm] *n.*

Venom is a poisonous substance that comes from animals or plants.

→ *A snake's **venom** can be used to cure the illnesses it creates.*

UNIT 22

Word List



charity [tʃærəti] *n.*

Charity is an act of giving help, usually money, to those who need it.

→ *Thanks to his friends' **charity**, he had enough money to pay the rent.*



commerce [kάmərs] *n.*

Commerce is the activity of buying and selling things.

→ *The new shopping mall increased the **commerce** in that section of town.*



condemn [kəndém] *v.*

To **condemn** someone means to give them a specific punishment.

→ *The judge **condemned** the criminal to five years in prison.*



cozy [kóuzi] *adj.*

If something is **cozy**, then it is comfortable, warm, and relaxing.

→ *The thick blanket made the bed very **cozy**.*



deplete [dìplíːt] *v.*

To **deplete** an amount of something means to use up all of it.

→ *All the driving he was doing was **depleting** his car's fuel supply.*



economy [ikάnəmi] *n.*

An **economy** is the money and businesses of a country or region.

→ *The factory was good for the **economy** because it brought jobs to the area.*



empire [émpaiər] *n.*

An **empire** is a large group of countries ruled by an emperor or empress.

→ *The emperor built roads to make travel easier throughout the **empire**.*



goods [gudz] *n.*

Goods are anything that can be bought or sold.

→ *Shoes, hats, dresses and purses were the **goods** she wanted to buy.*



heed [hiːd] *v.*

To **heed** something means to obey or follow it.

→ *You should **heed** the advice on the sign and not drive so fast.*



hitchhike [hítʃhàik] *v.*

To **hitchhike** means to travel by asking for rides from passing vehicles.

→ *She didn't have a car, so she **hitchhiked** several miles to her brother's home.*



mock [mɑk] *v.*

To **mock** someone means to tease them in a cruel way.

→ *The girls **mocked** Nancy because she was a new student.*



neutral [njúːtrəl] *adj.*

If someone is **neutral**, then they do not help either of the two fighting sides.

→ *The girl's friend remained **neutral** while the couple was arguing.*



persecute [pə́ːrsikjùːt] *v.*

To **persecute** means to treat someone badly.

→ *Dan felt **persecuted** because he was smaller than the other boys at school.*



pity [píti] *n.*

Pity is the feeling of sadness and kindness for those who are suffering.

→ *Because she had **pity** for the lost boy, she helped him find his parents.*



reduce [ridjúːs] *v.*

To **reduce** something means to make it less in size or number.

→ *When the store **reduced** its prices, people wanted to shop there.*



scribe [skraib] *n.*

A **scribe** was a person whose job was to copy written works.

→ *In Ancient Egypt, **scribes** recorded important events.*



temper [témpəːr] *n.*

A **temper** is someone's mood or a chance that they might get angry.

→ *She has a **temper**. Even the slightest mistakes make her angry.*



throne [eroun] *n.*

A **throne** is the special chair in which a ruler sits.

→ *Nobody except the king and queen sat in the **thrones** in the great hall.*



unity [júːnəti] *n.*

Unity is the state of people working together for a certain purpose.

→ *The project was finished early, thanks to the **unity** of the workers.*



victor [víktər] *n.*

A **victor** is a group or person that wins in a contest.

→ *At the end of the game, the blue team was the **victor**.*

UNIT 23

Word List



accurate [ækjərit] *adj.*

If something is **accurate**, it is completely correct.

→ *The story in the newspaper wasn't very **accurate**.*



analyze [ænəlàiz] *v.*

To **analyze** something is to study it.

→ *The scientist will **analyze** the blood sample.*



asteroid [æstərɔ̀id] *n.*

An **asteroid** is a giant rock from outer space.

→ *In 1908, a giant **asteroid** hit Siberia.*



controversy [kɑ́ntrəvə̀:rsi] *n.*

A **controversy** is a dispute about something that affects many people.

→ *There has been a lot of **controversy** over the judge's decision.*



evolve [iválv] *v.*

To **evolve** is to change over time.

→ *Many people think that humans **evolved** from animals.*



factor [fǽktər] *n.*

A **factor** is something that has an effect on the way another thing happens.

→ *Smoking is the main **factor** that causes lung cancer.*



genetic [dʒinétik] *adj.*

If something is **genetic**, it is related to the genes in one's body.

→ *The color of one's eyes is **genetic**.*



genome [dʒí:noum] *n.*

A **genome** is the collection of all the genes in a living thing.

→ *Understanding the human **genome** may help cure many diseases.*



identical [aidéntikəl] *adj.*

To be **identical** is to be the same as someone or something else.

→ *James and John are **identical** twins.*



intellectual [intəléktʃuəl] *n.*

An **intellectual** is a very smart person.

→ *We've always considered my Uncle Max the **intellectual** of the family.*



majority [mədʒɔ́(:)rəti] *n.*

A **majority** of something is almost all of the people or things in that group.

→ *A **majority** of the people voted for Tom Smith in the election.*

mammal [mǽməl] *n.*

A **mammal** is an animal that usually has hair and is not born from an egg.

→ *Even though it lives in the water, whales are actually **mammals**.*

multiply [mʌ́ltəplài] *v.*

To **multiply** is to increase in number.

→ *In the past year, the number of people at work **multiplied** by ten percent.*

offspring [ɔ́:fspriŋ] *n.*

Offspring are the children of a person or the babies of an animal.

→ *The dog's **offspring** had the same color of fur as she did.*

pesticide [péstəsàid] *n.*

A **pesticide** is a substance used to kill insects.

→ *The farmer sprayed his crops with a **pesticide** to keep bugs away.*

regulate [régjəlèit] *v.*

To **regulate** something is to control how it happens.

→ *The bank **regulates** how much money people can borrow from it.*

reinforce [rì:infɔ́:rs] *v.*

To **reinforce** something is to make it stronger.

→ *Peter **reinforced** his opinion with information from a book.*

stricken [stríkən] *adj.*

If one is **stricken** by a disease or problem, they are badly affected by it.

→ *Mike was **stricken** with a horrible illness.*

vast [væst] *adj.*

If something is **vast**, it is very large.

→ *The wealthy man bought a **vast** amount of land in the countryside.*

vegetarian [vèdʒətɛ́əriən] *n.*

A **vegetarian** is someone who does not eat any meat products.

→ *I became a **vegetarian** because I don't like the taste of meat.*

UNIT 24

Word List



cherish [tʃériʃ] *v.*

To **cherish** something means to hold it as very important.

→ *I **cherish** this trophy I won.*



compassion [kəmpǽʃən] *n.*

Compassion is a feeling of understanding for someone who is hurt or suffering.

→ *The veterinarian had **compassion** for the sick little puppy.*



consent [kənsέnt] *n.*

Consent is permission to do something.

→ *Their mother gave the children **consent** to go outside and play.*



core [kɔ:r] *n.*

The **core** is the center of something.

→ *The rings of a tree start forming at its **core**.*



cunning [kʌ́niŋ] *adj.*

If someone is **cunning**, they are good at tricking people.

→ *The **cunning** child fooled his parents into thinking that he was kind.*



dizzy [dízi] *adj.*

If someone is **dizzy**, then they feel off balance as if they will fall down.

→ *The pregnant woman was **dizzy** after standing up too quickly.*



equilibrium [i:kwəlíbriəm] *n.*

Equilibrium is the balance between different forces.

→ *The sudden drop in prices upset the **equilibrium** of the economy.*



foster [fɔ́(:)stər] *v.*

To **foster** a feeling or a skill means to help it develop.

→ *She helped **foster** a sense of calm in the little boy.*



grind [graind] *v.*

To **grind** something means to break it into very small pieces or powder.

→ *She wanted to **grind** the beans, so she could brew some coffee.*



growl [graul] *v.*

To **growl** means to make a deep, angry sound.

→ *The dog started to **growl** at the man walking by.*



moderation [màdərèiʃən] *n.*

Moderation is a state of being just enough but not too much.

→ *It is important to eat in **moderation** so that you can have a healthy body.*



predator [prédətər] *n.*

A **predator** is an animal that kills and eats other animals.

→ *The peregrine falcon is a **predator** that eats fish.*



sane [sein] *adj.*

If someone is **sane**, they can think in a normal way.

→ *Oliver does not act like a **sane** person when he is angry.*



saucer [sɔ́:sər] *n.*

A **saucer** is a small round dish that you set a cup on.

→ *He placed the spoon on the **saucer**.*



snatch [snætʃ] *v.*

To **snatch** something means to take it away with a quick motion.

→ *He was so hungry that he **snatched** an apple from a tree.*



stagger [stǽgər] *v.*

To **stagger** means to move in an unsteady way and almost fall over.

→ *He **staggered** around after having too much to drink.*



stumble [stʌ́mbəl] *v.*

To **stumble** means to put your foot down wrong so that you almost fall.

→ *He **stumbled** as he ran through the puddle.*



tense [tens] *adj.*

If someone is **tense**, they are worried something bad might happen.

→ *After the phone call, Monica was very **tense**.*



tumble [tʌ́mbəl] *v.*

To **tumble** means to fall, often in a rolling way.

→ *He lost his balance while snowboarding and **tumbled** to the ground.*



withhold [wiðhóuld] *v.*

To **withhold** something is to not give it to someone.

→ *They **withheld** all information until she paid her fine.*

UNIT 25

Word List



aircraft [ɛ́ərkræ̀ft] *n.*

An **aircraft** is a vehicle that flies in the sky, such as an airplane or helicopter.

→ *At the museum in the airport, you can see a lot of old **aircraft**.*



celebrity [səlébrəti] *n.*

A **celebrity** is someone who is famous.

→ *It was the highlight of the evening when the **celebrities** arrived.*



concrete [kánkri:t] *n.*

Concrete is a substance made from stones.

→ *The man covered the ground with **concrete**.*



decisive [disáisiv] *adj.*

If someone is **decisive**, they make decisions quickly.

→ *Our boss is very **decisive**, so it did not take long to organize the project.*



esteemed [istí:md] *adj.*

If someone is **esteemed**, many people like or respect them.

→ *An **esteemed** scientist is coming to the university to talk about her discoveries.*



ethical [éθikəl] *adj.*

If something is **ethical**, it is the right thing to do.

→ *Many people believe that it is **ethical** to help others in need.*



extinct [ikstíŋkt] *adj.*

If plants or animals are **extinct**, there are none left.

→ *There used to be dinosaurs all over the world, but now they are **extinct**.*



hardy [hɑ́:rdi] *adj.*

If a person or plant is **hardy**, it is strong and can live though difficult conditions.

→ *The farmer is a **hardy** man and doesn't mind working outside.*



institute [ínstətjù:t] *n.*

An **institute** is an organization that is interested in research or teaching.

→ *I am going to a lecture about ancient Rome at the Historical **Institute**.*



jealousy [dʒéləsi] *n.*

Jealousy is a feeling of wanting something that somebody else has.

→ *She felt a lot of **jealousy** when she saw Luke with two girls.*



migrate [máigreit] *v.*

To **migrate** means to move from one place to another.

→ *Many birds **migrate** to warmer countries in the winter.*

nurture [nə́:rtʃər] *v.*

To **nurture** something means to care for it as it grows or develops.

→ *Robert **nurtured** his plants, and that is why they grow so well.*

overhead [óuvərhéd] *adv.*

If something is **overhead**, it is located above you.

→ *As we sat on top of the hill, a plane flew **overhead**.*

principle [prínsəpəl] *n.*

A **principle** is a belief about the correct way to behave.

→ *To maintain **principles**, it's vital to watch, listen, and speak carefully.*

rural [rúərəl] *adj.*

If a place is **rural**, it is in the countryside instead of the city.

→ *I want to live in a small house in a **rural** area.*

secluded [siklú:did] *adj.*

If a place is **secluded**, it is far away from any other place.

→ *There was a **secluded** bench in the park.*

species [spí:ʃi(:)z] *n.*

A **species** is a type of plant or animal.

→ *There are 21 different **species** of butterfly in this forest.*

swamp [swɑmp] *n.*

A **swamp** is a very wet area of land.

→ *There are lots of wild animals living in the **swamp**.*

traverse [trævə́:rs] *v.*

To **traverse** means to move or travel through an area.

→ *The explorer **traversed** the desert alone on a camel.*

zoology [zouɑ́lədʒi] *n.*

Zoology is a subject in which people study animals.

→ *Helen wants to study **zoology** because she has always liked animals.*

UNIT 26

Word List



assumption [əsʌ́mpʃən] *n.*

An **assumption** is something that you believe is true but cannot prove.

→ *I went to the cafeteria on the **assumption** that everyone would be there.*



barley [bɑ́:rli] *n.*

Barley is a grain that is used for animal feed, health food and beer.

→ *The farmer grew **barley** to feed his cows in the winter.*



beast [bi:st] *n.*

A **beast** is a large, dangerous animal.

→ *A lion is one of the fiercest **beasts** on Earth.*



colonel [kə́:rnəl] *n.*

A **colonel** is a military officer.

→ *James has been given a promotion in the army. He is now a **colonel**.*



contagious [kəntéidʒəs] *adj.*

If a disease is **contagious**, it is easily carried from one person to another.

→ *You must wear protective clothing because the patient's illness is **contagious**.*



corpse [kɔ:rps] *n.*

A **corpse** is a dead body of a human.

→ *After the accident, the **corpse** was taken to the hospital.*



crisis [kráisis] *n.*

A **crisis** is a situation that is extremely stressful or dangerous.

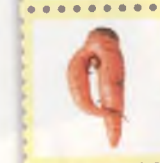
→ *The airport workers' strike led to a **crisis** at the airport.*



cure [kjuər] *v.*

To **cure** means to cause an illness or injury to end or disappear.

→ *My dentist **cured** me of my toothache.*



deformed [difɔ́:rmd] *adj.*

If something is **deformed**, it is not shaped normally and may appear ugly.

→ *Even though the carrot was **deformed**, it was still safe to eat.*



discriminate [diskrímənèit] *v.*

To **discriminate** means to judge people according to their looks.

→ *They **discriminated** against her because she was different.*



embassy [émbəsi] *n.*

An **embassy** is where government officials work in a foreign country.

→ *If you lose your passport, you should contact the **embassy**.*



extinguish [ikstíŋgwiʃ] *v.*

To **extinguish** a fire means to make it stop.

→ *Michael **extinguished** the small fire with the hose.*



flint [flint] *n.*

Flint is a hard stone that people used to make weapons for hunting.

→ *There are a lot of **flint** tools in the museum.*



harass [həræs] *v.*

To **harass** someone means to annoy or trouble them.

→ *The children **harassed** their mother because they wanted her attention.*



integrate [íntəgrèit] *v.*

To **integrate** means to join, communicate and socialize.

→ *Governments want immigrants to **integrate** with the population.*



miniature [míniətʃər] *adj.*

If something is **miniature**, it is very small.

→ *The boy enjoys playing with his **miniature** train set in his bedroom.*



nutrition [nju:tríʃən] *n.*

Nutrition is the process by which people use food to stay healthy.

→ *It is important to pay attention to **nutrition** if you want to be an athlete.*



promptly [prámptli] *adv.*

If something happens **promptly**, it happens quickly or on time.

→ *Arrive **promptly**, or we won't have time to discuss everything.*



technician [tekníʃən] *n.*

A **technician** is a person who is skilled in electronic or mechanical work.

→ *I need to call the **technician** to help me with my computer.*



tropics [trápiks] *n.*

The **tropics** are the areas of land and sea close to the equator.

→ *People like to go to the **tropics** for vacation because it's warm.*

UNIT 27

Word List



beneficial [bènəfíʃəl] *adj.*

If something is **beneficial**, it is good for you.

→ *Drinking milk everyday is **beneficial** to your bones.*



birthplace [bə́:rθplèis] *n.*

A **birthplace** is a place where a person is born or where something started.

→ *China is the **birthplace** of chopsticks.*



capacity [kəpǽsəti] *n.*

The **capacity** of something is the amount of things that can be put in it.

→ *The parking lot has reached its full **capacity**.*



comparative [kəmpǽrətiv] *adj.*

If something is **comparative**, it is being judged based on something else.

→ *The money that John has is **comparative** to most other adults.*



comprehensive [kὰmprihénsiv] *adj.*

If something is **comprehensive**, it has all the details about something else.

→ *The teacher gave us a **comprehensive** review for the exam.*



conserve [kənsə́:rv] *v.*

To **conserve** something is to protect it from being ruined or used completely.

→ *The group worked to **conserve** the beauty of Europe's national parks.*



crucial [krú:ʃəl] *adj.*

If something is **crucial**, it is extremely important to another thing.

→ *Clean air is **crucial** to the survival of humans, plants, and animals.*



cumulative [kjú:mjəlèitiv] *adj.*

Cumulative describes an increase by adding one after another.

→ *The **cumulative** snowfall in the area is 50 centimeters per year.*



deposit [dipɑ́zit] *v.*

To **deposit** something is to put it into a place or another thing.

→ *I **deposited** the money into my bank account.*



distribute [distríbju:t] *v.*

To **distribute** something is to give it to a number of people.

→ *The teacher **distributed** crayons and markers to his students.*



equator [ikwéitər] *n.*

The **equator** is an imaginary line that splits the Earth into north and south.

→ *The **equator** crosses the northern part of South America.*



exotic [igzɑ́tik] *adj.*

Exotic describes something unusual because it is from far away.

→ *Rebecca tried many **exotic** foods on her trip to Africa.*



federal [fédərəl] *adj.*

If something is **federal,** it comes from the government of a country.

→ *Sometimes **federal** laws are different from state laws.*



formation [fɔ:rméiʃən] *n.*

A **formation** is the way that something is made.

→ *The **formation** of ice happens when water freezes.*



frequency [frí:kwənsi] *n.*

The **frequency** of something is the number of times that it happens.

→ *The **frequency** of rainstorms is very high, especially during the spring.*



objective [əbdʒéktiv] *n.*

An **objective** is a goal or plan that someone has.

→ *My **objective** this week is to finish my homework by 7:30 every night.*



oxygen [ɑ́ksidʒən] *n.*

Oxygen is a gas that all living things need to breathe.

→ *My aunt believes that the **oxygen** in the country is cleaner than in the city.*



rainforest [réinfɔ̀(:)rist] *n.*

A **rainforest** is a forest that is in a place where it rains very often.

→ *The **rainforest** is home to many animals.*



strategy [strǽtədʒi] *n.*

A **strategy** is a plan for how to do something.

→ *The team came up with a **strategy** to win the game.*



wooded [wúdid] *adj.*

If an area is **wooded,** it is covered with trees.

→ *Jim and Ben decided to go hiking in the **wooded** area by the river.*

UNIT 28

Word List



avail [əvéil] *n.*

Avail is help. It is often used in the achievement of a goal.

→ *His studying was to no **avail** because he failed the test.*



expand [ikspǽnd] *v.*

To **expand** is to become bigger in size.

→ *A balloon will **expand** as you blow air into it.*



define [difáin] *v.*

To **define** means to clearly state, show, or explain what something is.

→ *People **define** success in many different ways.*



dread [dred] *v.*

To **dread** is to be afraid of something that could, or is going to, happen.

→ *I **dread** the idea that I will not get into college.*



fundamental [fʌ̀ndəméntl] *adj.*

If something is **fundamental,** it is a basic part of something.

→ *The **fundamental** rules of basketball are easy.*



horrifying [hɔ́:rəfàiŋ] *adj.*

If something is **horrifying,** it is frightening and very unpleasant.

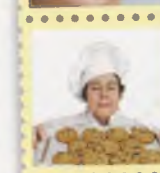
→ *There was a **horrifying** car accident today.*



incredulous [inkrédʒələs] *adj.*

If someone is **incredulous** about something, they do not believe that it is true.

→ *She was **incredulous** that monkeys could ever drive a car.*



linger [líŋgər] *v.*

To **linger** is to last for a long time.

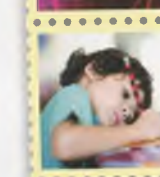
→ *The smell of fresh cookies **lingered** in the bakery.*



organism [ɔ́:rgənizəm] *n.*

An **organism** is a living thing, especially a very small one.

→ *We studied the **organism** on the microscope.*



paraphrase [pǽrəfrèiz] *v.*

To **paraphrase** is to make someone else's writing or speech shorter.

→ *The students were asked to **paraphrase** the story they just heard.*



plague [pleig] *n.*

A **plague** is a serious disease that quickly spreads to many people.

→ *A **plague** in Europe killed millions of people.*



presently [prézəntli] *adv.*

If something happens **presently**, it is happening right now.

→ ***Presently**, our profits are good, but by next year we can do even better.*



random [rændəm] *adj.*

If something is **random**, it happens without any pattern or reason.

→ *Young children often ask **random** questions.*



riot [ráiət] *n.*

A **riot** is a crowd that reacts to bad news by violently breaking laws.

→ *A **riot** broke out after the candidate lost the election.*



scribble [skríbəl] *v.*

To **scribble** is to write something quickly without caring about how it looks.

→ *I **scribbled** a rough diagram of our plan and gave it to him.*



shrine [ʃrain] *n.*

A **shrine** is a religious building built to honor a person, event, or god.

→ *He prayed at the **shrine** for an hour.*



solitude [sɑ́litʃùːd] *n.*

Solitude is the state of being totally alone.

→ *John lives a life of **solitude** because he doesn't get along well with people.*



stark [stɑːrk] *adj.*

If a contrast is **stark**, then the things being compared are utterly different.

→ *There is a **stark** contrast between their test scores.*



summon [sʌ́mən] *v.*

To **summon** a person is to ask them to come to you.

→ *We **summoned** the doctor as soon as we noticed she was sick.*



worsen [wə́ːrsən] *v.*

To **worsen** is to get worse.

→ *The weather suddenly **worsened**, and we had to stay inside.*

UNIT 29

Word List



automobile [ɔ̀:təməbì:l] *n.*

An **automobile** is a car.

→ *The first **automobiles** were very different from the ones that exist today.*



candidate [kǽndidèit] *n.*

A **candidate** is a person who is competing to win something such as a job.

→ *Alice is the best **candidate** for the job.*



confidential [kɑ̀nfidénʃəl] *adj.*

If something is **confidential**, it must be kept secret.

→ *The information from the meeting is **confidential**.*



corporate [kɔ́:rpərit] *adj.*

If something is **corporate**, it is related to a large business.

→ *Tom enjoys working in the **corporate** world.*



enhance [enhǽns] *v.*

To **enhance** something is to make it better.

→ *Amy's blue shirt really **enhances** the color of her eyes.*



era [érə] *n.*

An **era** is a period of time that has something special about it.

→ *During the medieval **era**, knights wore protective armor.*



guideline [gáidlàin] *n.*

A **guideline** is a rule about how to do something.

→ *Before they began the project, the teacher gave them some **guidelines**.*



incorporate [inkɔ́:rpərèit] *v.*

To **incorporate** is to add something to another thing.

→ *I decided to **incorporate** a new ingredient into my cake recipe.*



interact [intərǽkt] *v.*

To **interact** is to talk to or do something with another person.

→ *The kids began to **interact** when the adults left the room.*



interval [íntərvəl] *n.*

An **interval** is the time between two things happening.

→ *Tony rested for brief **intervals** while he worked in the yard.*



mobile [móubail] *adj.*

If something is **mobile**, it can be moved easily.

→ *__Mobile__ phones are popular because you can take them anywhere.*

modify [mádəfài] *v.*

To **modify** something is to change it a little bit.

→ *I __modified__ my outfit by adding a belt to it.*

parallel [pǽrəlèl] *adj.*

If two things are **parallel**, they are the same distance away from each other.

→ *There are two yellow __parallel__ lines dividing both sides of traffic.*

phenomenon [finámənàn] *n.*

A **phenomenon** is something that can be seen as it is happening.

→ *I was amazed when I saw the __phenomenon__ of shooting stars.*

pollute [pəlúːt] *v.*

To **pollute** means to make air, water, or land dirty, unclean, or foul.

→ *The careless factory __polluted__ the river with chemicals.*

ridicule [rídikjùːl] *v.*

To **ridicule** is to make fun of something in a mean way.

→ *The other students __ridicule__ Peter's foreign accent.*

solar [sóulərː] *adj.*

If something is **solar**, it is related to the sun.

→ *Using __solar__ energy is good for the environment.*

territory [térətɔ̀ːri] *n.*

A **territory** is a piece of land that belongs to a country but isn't a state.

→ *Gibraltar is a __territory__ of Great Britain.*

tournament [túərnəmənt] *n.*

A **tournament** is a competition, usually with many people participating.

→ *My dad is playing in a golf __tournament__ tomorrow.*

transportation [trænspərtéiʃən] *v.*

Transportation is any type of vehicle that can carry people or things.

→ *I don't have a car, so my normal __transportation__ is the train.*

UNIT 30

Word List



bill [bil] *n.*

A **bill** is a statement of money owed for goods or a service.

→ *I have so many **bills** that I do not know how to pay for them all.*



boundary [báundəri] *n.*

A **boundary** is the line where one area of land stops, and another begins.

→ *This fence shows the **boundary** between our yard and yours.*



chaos [kéiɑs] *n.*

Chaos is a situation that is confusing and not ordered.

→ *His presentation was in **chaos**. I couldn't understand what he meant.*



consistent [kənsístənt] *adj.*

If a person is **consistent**, they keep the same behavior or attitude.

→ *Sara comes in every day and is our most **consistent** worker.*



cyclone [sáikloun] *n.*

A **cyclone** is a large storm with heavy rain and winds that spin in a circle.

→ *Hundreds of homes were damaged by the **cyclone**.*



doomed [du:md] *adj.*

If someone or something is **doomed**, they are going to fail or be destroyed.

→ *Since I spent all my money, my date with Jane is **doomed**.*



heir [ɛər] *n.*

An **heir** is a person who receives money or property of someone who dies.

→ *The princess was the **heir** to the king and queen's throne.*



martial [mɑ́:rʃəl] *adj.*

If something is **martial**, it is related to fighting or war.

→ *Karate is a **martial** art that began many years ago in Japan.*



organic [ɔ:rgǽnik] *adj.*

If food is **organic**, it is grown without adding chemicals to it.

→ *The **organic** carrots are more expensive, but they're better for you.*



poultry [póultri] *n.*

Poultry is a bird, such as a chicken, that is used for meat and eggs.

→ *He raises **poultry** and sells their meat for extra money.*



scramble [skræmbl] *v.*

To **scramble** is to move somewhere quickly and desperately.

→ *The hikers **scrambled** down the side of the hill.*



sergeant [sáːrdʒənt] *n.*

A **sergeant** is a soldier or police officer of middle rank.

→ *He was promoted to **sergeant** after a year in the army.*



sheer [ʃiəːr] *adj.*

If you describe something as **sheer**, it is complete and very strong.

→ *I was impressed by her **sheer** dedication to jogging.*



stance [stæns] *n.*

A **stance** is an attitude about an issue that someone states clearly.

→ *My **stance** is that using oil and gas is bad for the environment.*



telegraph [téləgræf] *n.*

A **telegraph** is a method of sending electric messages on wires.

→ *In the 1900s, the **telegraph** was the fastest way to send a message.*



textile [tékstail] *n.*

Textile is cloth that has been woven or knitted.

→ *The blue **textile** was going to be used to make blouses.*



tornado [tɔːrnéidou] *n.*

A **tornado** is a tube-shaped formation of air that spins very quickly.

→ *During a **tornado**, the safest place to be is underground.*



typhoon [taifúːn] *n.*

A **typhoon** is a large tropical storm that moves in circles.

→ *Thousands of people lost electricity after a **typhoon** hit Australia.*



wail [weil] *v.*

To **wail** is to show sadness by crying loudly.

→ *The baby **wailed** because it was hungry.*



wardrobe [wɔ́ːrdròub] *n.*

A **wardrobe** is the collection of all of a person's clothing.

→ *She bought some new clothes to expand her **wardrobe**.*

Index

A

absolute 38
accent 110
access 50
accident 14
account 44
accurate 140
admiral 14
admonish 20
affect 80
afflicted 116
aircraft 152
aisle 116
alas 38
alliance 68
alongside 56
alternative 74
although 92
altogether 98
analyze 140
animate 62
appetite 56
applause 68
apply 92
arc 14
architect 44
armed 68
aroma 8
assist 56
assumption 158
asteroid 140
atmosphere 116
attentive 38
audible 20
author 116
authoritative 68
autograph 80
automobile 176
avail 170
avenue 74
await 92
awesome 20
awhile 32

B

background 128
bait 128
barber 110
barley 158
basement 110
bead 80
beak 26
beast 158
belly 74
beloved 92
beneficial 164
betray 122
beverage 8
beware 20
bid 74
bill 182
bind 98
birthplace 164
blank 110
blast 122
blink 110
blow 74
boundary 182
bracelet 122
brag 20
breakdown 116
breeze 56
brew 80
brick 86
bruise 98
bury 92

C

candidate 176
capacity 164
cape 38
cargo 116
cease 122
celebrity 152
ceremony 68
chaos 182
chapter 116
character 14
charity 134
charm 80
cherish 146
choir 110
choke 122
chronicle 128
civil 122
civilization 104
classify 62
climate 92
cluster 8
colonel 158
combine 8
comic 110
comment 122
commerce 134
comparative 164
compassion 146
complain 92
complicate 110
comprehensive 164
conceal 44
concede 62
concept 62
concrete 152
condemn 134
condensed 8
conduct 50
confidential 176
conflict 74
confuse 92
connect 116
conscience 14
conscious 20
consent 146
conserve 164
consistent 182
constant 50
construct 62
contagious 158
contemporary 8
continent 74
controversy 140
convenient 104
copper 128
core 146
corporate 176
corpse 158
cozy 134
crack 50
crime 44
crisis 158
cross 122
crucial 164
crumble 86
cultivate 8
culture 68
cumulative 164
cunning 146
cure 158
current 74
custom 98
cyberspace 32
cyclone 182

D

damp 26
decade 62
decisive 152
decline 110
deed 44
defense 68
define 170
deformed 158
defy 56
den 104
dent 122
deplete 134
deposit 164
destiny 80
detail 68
device 50
dew 104
diagram 62
disagree 20

disapprove 26
discriminate 158
disease 128
disobedient 98
display 56
disrespect 74
distribute 164
distrust 122
diverse 68
divine 8
dizzy 146
doomed 182
dough 86
drastic 104
dread 170
due 92

E

echo 20
economy 134
edit 32
efficient 56
embassy 159
empire 134
enchant 68
enclose 50
enhance 176
enthusiasm 74
entire 92
envision 38
equator 165
equilibrium 146
equip 69
era 176
errand 110
essay 32
establish 93
esteemed 152
etc. 116
ethical 152
evaluate 32
evenly 38
eventual 20
evolve 140
except 26
exception 69
exit 104
exotic 165
expand 170
express 86
extinct 152
extinguish 159

F

factor 140
faint 32
federal 165
feeble 56
ferry 62
fiery 14
fist 86
flesh 14
flexible 86
flight 26
flint 159
flip 116
flock 104
flush 86
fold 104
folk 38
folklore 128
fond 26
foresee 98
forgive 56
formation 165
fort 123
foster 146
found 123
frequency 165
fundamental 170
furnace 93

G

genetic 140
genome 140
genre 69
glimpse 98
global 32
glove 111
goods 134
grapefruit 14
gratitude 44
grind 146
grip 50
growl 146
guideline 176
gymnasium 32

H

habitat 44
halt 50
handy 62
harass 159
hardy 152
harsh 75
hay 14
heed 134
heir 182
hermit 111
highlight 32
hint 20
hitchhike 134
hoop 98
horn 80
horrified 14
horrifying 170
humid 8

I

identical 140
idiot 21
idle 117
ignorant 32
immense 21
immoral 26
impact 69
impending 50
incorporate 176
incredulous 170
index 33
indirect 21
infect 128
influence 50
injure 86
institute 152
integrate 159
intellectual 140
interact 176
interval 176
intervene 44
irritable 80
isolate 62
itch 128
ivy 26

J

jealousy 152
justly 111

K

kerosene 15

L

lag 80
landmark 44
law 51
lean 75
leash 93
leather 111
lecture 33
legal 44
lid 104
linger 170
lining 123
literature 128
lively 56
longing 63

loom 104
loop 15
lump 86
lure 69

M

majestic 57
majority 141
mammal 141
martial 182
mass 123
mature 93
maximize 80
meantime 75
measure 93
melt 38
memorable 45
midst 93
mighty 105
migrate 153
millennium 128
miniature 159
mischief 75
misery 93
misfortune 98
mixture 86
moan 26
mobile 177
mock 135
mode 51
moderation 147
modify 177
moral 33
multiply 141
muscle 75
mushroom 105
myth 129

N

native 105
negative 98
neutral 135
nightmare 81
nor 57
notify 117
numerous 63
nurture 153
nutrition 159
nutritious 81

O

objective 165
oblige 45
oblivious 26
obstacle 69
odor 8
offense 45
offspring 141
operate 33
option 21
organic 182
organism 170
outraged 57
overhead 153
oxygen 165

P

paddle 15
palate 9
paradise 9
parallel 177
paraphrase 170
particle 63
pastime 21
patch 38
pea 117
per 99
perfect 21
perish 27
persecute 135
perspire 51
pessimistic 57
pesticide 141
phenomenon 177
pinpoint 21
pit 27
pity 135
plague 171
plantation 9
plea 63
plead 99
pleasure 38
poison 105
pollute 177
ponder 111
pop 39
poultry 182
pray 123
predator 147
presently 171
principle 153
prior 93
private 33
proclaim 45
promote 129
promptly 159
protein 81
pudding 39

R

raft 15
rail 39
rainforest 165
raisin 117
rally 45
random 171
rapid 9
rate 9
recent 33
recipe 39
reconcile 87
reduce 135
reed 105
refrain 63
regulate 141
reinforce 141
relate 129
religion 129
replace 51
rescue 75
research 93
reserve 111
resolution 33
resolve 45
resource 45
retain 117
review 63
ridicule 177
rife 123
rim 27
riot 171
rip 99
role 39
roost 27
ruin 87
rumor 57
rural 153

S

sake 99
sane 147
saucer 147
scramble 183
scrape 99
scribble 171
scribe 135
script 111
search 111
secluded 153
semester 33
sentence 45
sergeant 183
shatter 87
sheer 183
shelter 69
shield 105
shrine 171
shrink 39
shutter 87
sift 87

signature 81
slam 111
slap 57
slight 87
slippery 27
sly 51
smash 57
snap 51
snatch 147
soak 39
soar 27
solar 177
sole 123
solitude 171
soothing 9
sophisticated 63
sort 69
sour 15
source 99
spark 39
sparkle 87
species 153
spirit 39
sprinkle 87
stagger 147
staircase 111
stake 15
stale 87
stance 183
stark 171
state 117
stern 99
steward 15
stitch 99
stormy 105
strategy 165
stricken 141
string 15
stuff 81
stumble 147
subconscious 81
subject 57
subtle 9
succession 75
suit 39
sum 129
summon 171
supply 69
surrender 63
swamp 153
sway 105
sweep 123
switch 21

T

technician 159
telegraph 183
teller 129
temper 135
tend 51
tense 147
terrain 75
territory 177
textile 183
texture 9
thorn 15
thorough 21
throne 135
thump 99
timid 75
torment 21
tornado 183
tournament 177
toxic 9
transportation 177
traverse 153
tray 117
treachery 123
trivial 27
tropics 159
trustworthy 129
tuck 123
tumble 147
typewritten 33
typhoon 183
typical 27

U

unfortunate 117
unity 135
update 129
upright 63
urban 105
utter 87
utterly 27

V

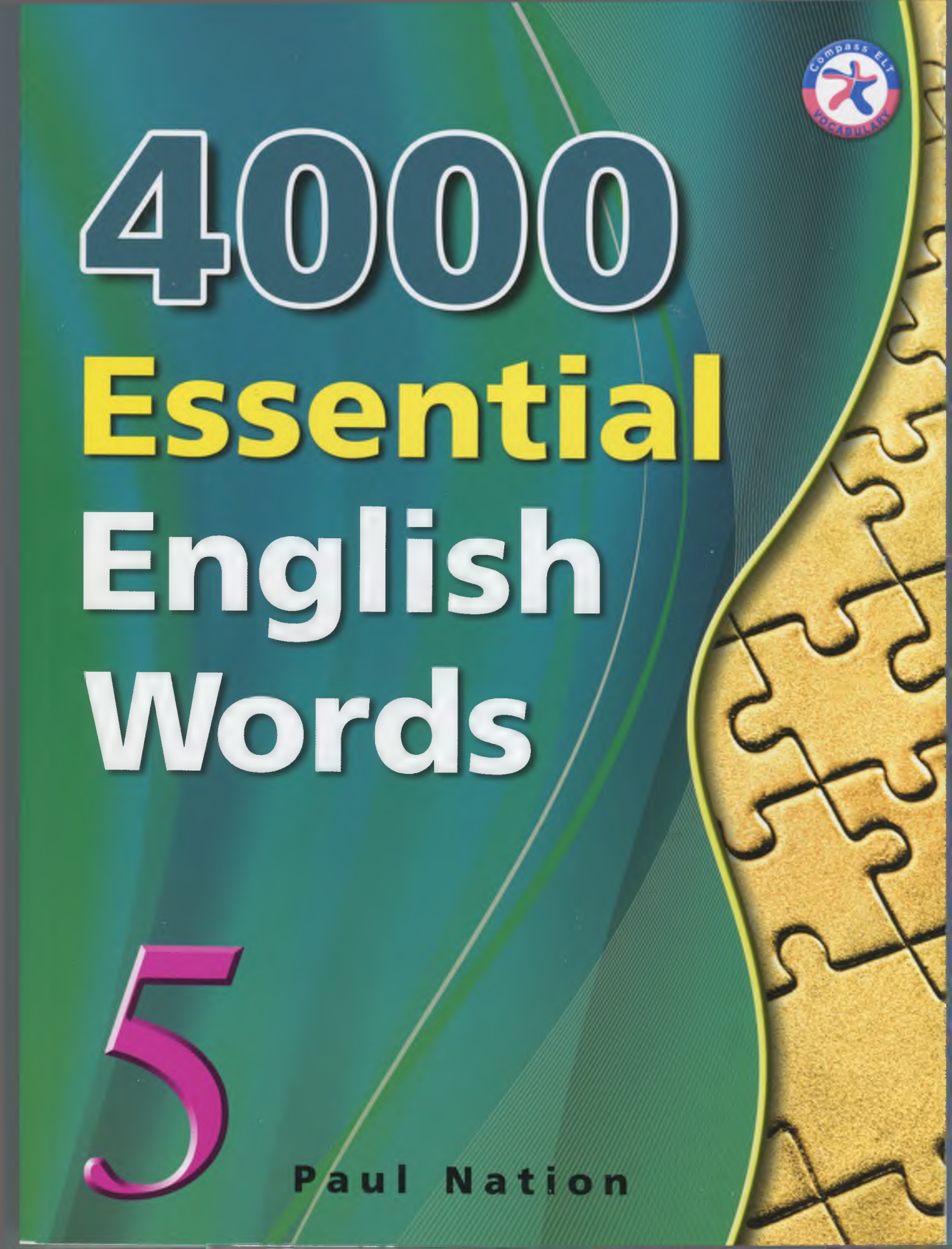
vain 69
valid 51
van 81
variety 93
vary 9
vast 141
vegetarian 141
vehement 99
vein 129
venom 129
version 51
victor 135
violence 75
vivid 117
volunteer 45
vomit 117

W

wade 105
wage 57
wail 183
wardrobe 183
warn 81
weep 27
weird 33
whatsoever 51
whereas 57
withhold 147
witness 45
wooded 165
workout 81
worsen 171
worthwhile 63
wreck 15

Z

zoology 153
zoom 81


Compass ELT
VOCABULARY
4000
Essential
English
Words
5
Paul Nation

4000 Essential English Words 5

4000 Essential English Words *5*

Paul Nation

© 2009 Compass Publishing

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without prior permission in writing from the publisher.

Acquisitions Editor: Fidel Cruz
Project Coordinator: Annie Cho
Design: Design Plus

email: info@compasspub.com
http://www.compasspub.com

ISBN: 978-1-59966-406-4

10 9 8 7 6 5 4
12 11

Photo Credits

All images © Shutterstock, Inc.

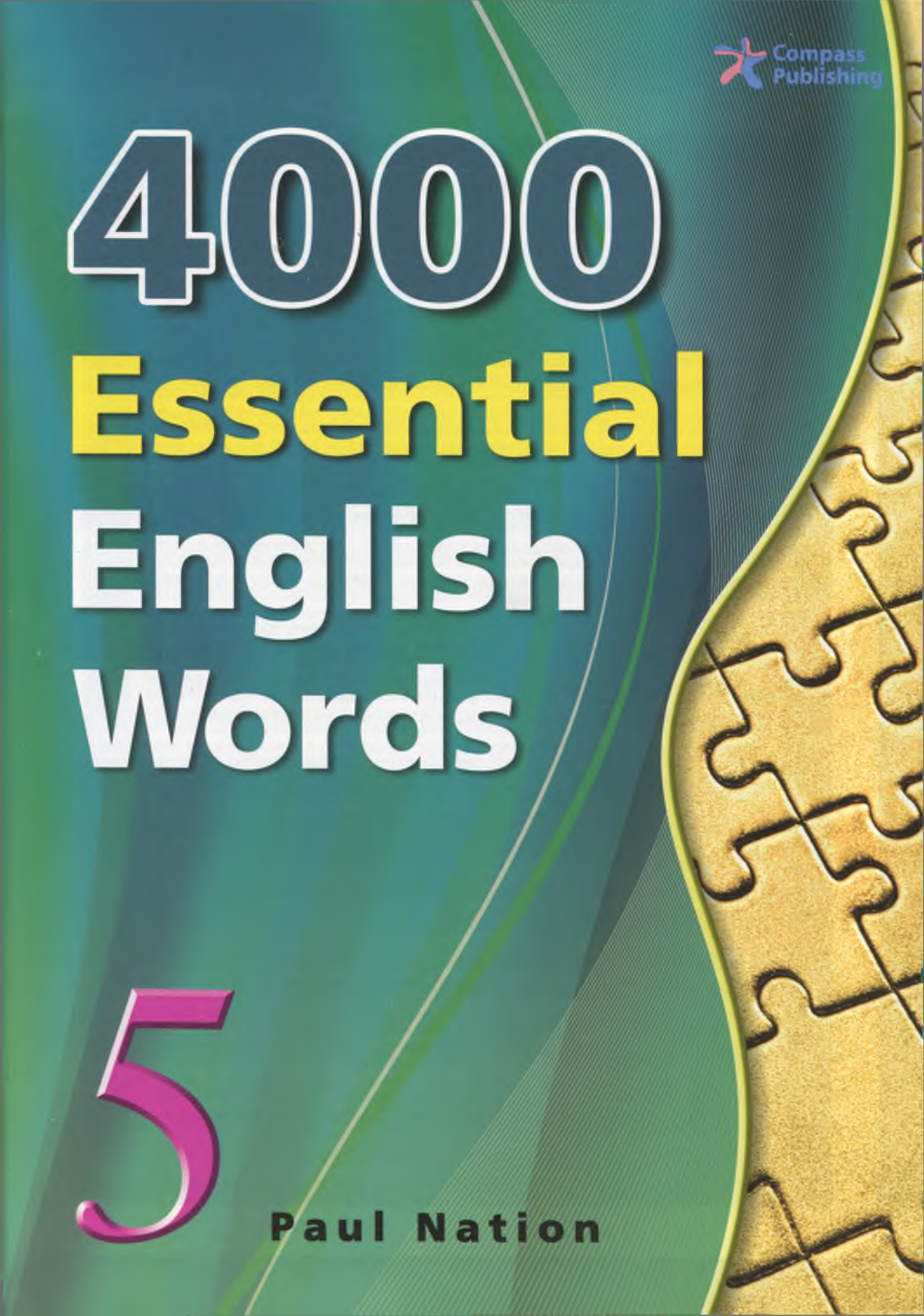

Compass Publishing
4000
Essential
English
Words
5
Paul Nation

Table of Contents

Unit	Target Words	Page
Introduction		6
1	allot, appall, cache, convenience, dearth, deliberate, dire, elapse, empathy, fanciful, gripe, grueling, mundane, opt, outrage, paltry, rectify, resourceful, sustenance, tedious	8
2	abbey, abundant, adjoin, ample, arid, cathedral, deprive, drought, eligible, fast, grumble, inland, moisture, nonetheless, oath, prairie, ragged, rugged, scarce, speculate	14
3	analytic, assert, bachelor, calculus, celestial, cognitive, collision, competent, diploma, excel, geology, harness, intellect, keen, mythology, physiology, radioactive, relativity, sociology, theoretical	20
4	administrator, affluent, audit, automate, bribe, corrupt, dispose, headquarters, incentive, infrastructure, legislate, legitimate, manipulate, merchandise, retail, revenue, rubbish, subsidy, transaction, violate	26
5	assess, astonish, commence, essence, extract, fabulous, haste, impulse, latter, molecule, ongoing, pharmaceutical, precise, proximity, publicity, remedy, significance, subsequent, synthetic, terminal	32
6	altitude, coastline, deter, devise, expertise, fracture, impair, implement, indigenous, insight, limb, migraine, optimism, peculiar, proficient, quest, ridge, spouse, thrust, tolerate	38
7	aquatic, biosphere, bizarre, Celsius, coarse, companion, digest, duration, ecology, feat, infinite, nucleus, parasite, prominent, repetitive, reproductive, temperate, tolerance, undergo, vulnerable	44
8	adept, barren, ceramic, culinary, dense, dignity, dominate, edible, hostile, intake, likewise, malnutrition, medication, misconception, obscure, oppress, peel, prescription, respirator, strive	50
9	archaic, benevolent, brass, capitalism, component, dependence, diminish, drawback, fad, impose, managerial, medieval, obsolete, peninsula, prestige, proportion, radical, refute, spectacular, weave	56
10	accountant, capitalist, contempt, dedicate, ditch, enterprise, exquisite, finance, indifferent, irrigate, maximize, monetary, precaution, preliminary, saturate, simplicity, sow, soy, spade, upcoming	62
11	acute, aggression, banquet, biography, boost, clap, compel, dominance, gorgeous, inevitable, legacy, masterpiece, multiple, narrate, notorious, outdated, overall, partiality, spontaneous, virtue	68
12	anthropology, applaud, appoint, compatible, competence, confer, consecutive, crude, cube, feedback, ignorance, masculine, monument, muscular, posture, situate, supervise, symmetry, tattoo, undergraduate	74
13	brook, cater, considerate, consumption, criteria, crust, degrade, entitle, escort, external, facility, faculty, heap, hemisphere, hound, impersonal, ornament, pedestrian, sanctuary, spectator	80
14	asset, aspect, Braille, bud, coordinate, disprove, humanitarian, hypothesis, imprint, informative, optic, premise, rack, Renaissance, revere, simultaneous, skeptic, spatial, specify, wax	86
15	accessory, acquisition, adequate, cardboard, dilemma, elaborate, facilitate, fleet, grid, import, infer, inflate, innate, marble, mast, nausea, naval, pouch, saturated, updated	92

Unit	Target Words	Page
16	addict, archeological, archeology, brainstorm, budget, chaotic, cite, correspond, courtyard, estate, fraud, hydrogen, integrity, knit, outlook, parachute, prehistoric, proponent, refine, restrict	98
17	attorney, chronic, discipline, donor, fellow, gossip, graduate, graffiti, guardian, implicate, kin, referee, sever, shaft, stab, stimulus, suspicion, terminate, theme, tuition	104
18	aggressive, amnesty, arena, auditorium, captive, combat, commonplace, compound, corps, distract, dumb, foe, hack, meditate, nick, provoke, realm, reign, rust, sacred	110
19	accordingly, anchor, buoy, catastrophe, context, designate, distort, dock, fore, frequent, genuine, grease, intricate, offset, overlap, precipitate, secondhand, slot, submerge, tactic	116
20	aggregate, antibiotic, circuit, complement, compress, database, equivalent, immune, input, intimate, magnet, metabolism, microchip, phase, pinch, prevalent, quantum, ratio, spiral, viral	122
21	astounded, attribute, bilingual, clone, colloquial, cosmetics, dash, disgust, fluorescent, furious, gulf, humanities, knot, linguist, participant, plausible, ritual, sibling, skinny, vague	128
22	acid, administration, administrative, biotechnology, cholesterol, coalition, deceptive, diabetes, eliminate, erosion, ethics, explicit, framework, manufacture, mechanism, minimize, nectar, notion, prone, straightforward	134
23	astronomical, atom, breadth, circumference, comet, crater, crescent, debris, despair, embed, fragment, galaxy, gigantic, gloom, radiate, roam, solitary, spectrum, sphere, status	140
24	bankrupt, conform, employ, expel, extension, forthcoming, furnish, hygiene, hygienic, landlord, lease, mandatory, mend, mortgage, personnel, plumbing, tenant, trendy, utility, whereby	146
25	aesthetic, arrogant, bias, canyon, creek, drill, executive, fatigue, incline, nasty, perceive, primate, primitive, stereotype, sticky, termite, thereby, trail, twig, welfare	152
26	behalf, flap, glacier, globe, horizontal, hum, inventory, inward, loaf, oracle, orbit, overview, preview, previous, provide, recur, relevant, rite, stall, supernatural	158
27	adapt, biological, cellular, dynamic, fantasy, heredity, internal, minimal, pioneer, prescribe, respective, revive, rigid, sequence, substitute, surgeon, therapy, transfer, transition, transplant	164
28	aquarium, arbitrary, autobiography, convention, gracious, improve, insulate, intrigue, longevity, misplace, naughty, norm, orangutan, overload, philanthropy, probe, recipient, reptile, thrive, ultimate	170
29	antique, applicant, artifact, authentic, chronology, diplomat, epic, excerpt, fossil, humiliate, lyric, majesty, monarch, precede, punctual, recruit, refund, register, renown, tusk	176
30	burden, compromise, craft, crook, currency, enigma, fragile, hybrid, innocence, merge, moderate, overwhelm, perception, reunion, rig, shiver, sociable, talkative, tow, tramp	182
Index		188

Introduction

About the Vocabulary

The 600 words in each book of this series along with the additional target words presented in the appendices included in the first three books of the series are the most useful words in English. They were found by analysis of a collection of English course books from various levels in the primary, secondary and tertiary school systems. The words included in this series were chosen because they occurred many times in different levels of these materials. Because of the way
that they were chosen, these words have the following characteristics:

1 They are useful in both spoken and written English. No matter what English course you are studying, the words in these books will be of value to you.

2 Each word in these books is a high-frequency word. This means that the effort in learning the words is well repaid by the number of times learners have a chance to encounter or use them.

3 These books as a whole cover a large proportion of the words in any spoken or written text. They cover at least 80% of the words in newspapers and academic texts, and at least 90% of the words in novels. They also cover at least 90% of the words in conversation.

About the Books

The activities in these books are specially designed to make use of important learning conditions. Firstly, the words are introduced using sentence definitions and an example sentence. The activities that follow in the units encourage learners to recall the meanings and forms of the words. Some activities also make the learners think about the meaning of the words in the context of a sentence—a sentence different from the sentences that occurred in the introduction of the words. Moreover, each unit ends with a story containing the target words. While reading the story, the learners have to recall the meanings of the words and suit them to the context of the story. Such activities help learners develop a better understanding of a common meaning for a given word which fits the different uses.

Illustrations for each target word are provided to help learners visualize the word as it is being used in the example sentence. These word/image associations aim to help students grasp the meaning of the word as well as recall the word later.

It should be noted that words have more than one grammatical category. However, this series focuses on the word's most common form. This is mentioned to remind learners that just because a word is labeled and utilized as a noun in this series does not mean that it can never be used in another form such as an adjective. This series has simply focused on the word in the form that it is most likely to be expressed.

Supporting Learning with Outside Activities

A well-balanced language course provides four major opportunities for learning: learning through input, learning through output, deliberate learning, and fluency development. The highly structured activities in these books support all four types of learning opportunities. In addition, learning can further be supported through the following activities:

1 Have students create vocabulary cards with one word from the unit on one side of the card and the translation of the word in the student's first language on the other side. Students should use the cards for study in free moments during the day. Over several weeks, students will find that quick repeated studying for brief periods of time is more effective than studying for hours at one sitting.

2 Assign graded readers at students' appropriate levels. Reading such books provides both enjoyment as well as meaning-focused input which will help the words stick in students' memory.

3 Practice reading fluency to promote faster recall of word meaning for both sight recognition and usage. Compass Publishing's *Reading for Speed and Fluency* is a good resource for reading fluency material.

4 Include listening, speaking, and writing activities in classes. Reinforcement of the high-frequency vocabulary presented in this series is important across all the four language skills.

Author **Paul Nation**

Paul Nation is professor of Applied Linguistics in the School of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies at Victoria University of Wellington, New Zealand. He has taught in Indonesia, Thailand, the United States, Finland, and Japan. His specialist interests are language teaching methodology and vocabulary learning.



UNIT 1

Word List



allot [əlάt] *v.*

To **allot** something means to give it to someone.

→ *The coach **allotted** each team five minutes to prepare a strategy.*



appall [əpɔ́:l] *v.*

To **appall** means to horrify, shock, or disgust someone.

→ *The boy was **appalled** when he saw the accident.*



cache [kæʃ] *n.*

A **cache** is a hiding place for valuable things.

→ *The pirates kept their jewelry in a **cache** hidden in a cave.*



convenience [kənvi:njəns] *n.*

Convenience is a state of being able to do something with little effort.

→ *The Internet allows consumers to shop at their own **convenience**.*



dearth [də:rθ] *n.*

A **dearth** is an amount or supply which is not large enough.

→ *There is a **dearth** of money in my bank account. I can't afford a new car.*



deliberate [dilíbərit] *adj.*

If a thing you do is **deliberate**, you intend to do it.

→ *She made a **deliberate** effort to save money each month.*



dire [daiər] *adj.*

When something is **dire**, it is terrible and very serious.

→ *The tornado created a **dire** situation for the small town.*



elapse [ilǽps] *v.*

To **elapse** means to pass, as in seconds, minutes, or hours.

→ *A few seconds must **elapse** before you can take another picture.*



empathy [émpəei] *n.*

Empathy is sharing or understanding another person's feelings.

→ *The caring nurse had **empathy** for her patients.*



fanciful [fǽnsifəl] *adj.*

When something is **fanciful**, it is unusual or unrealistic.

→ *The girl had **fanciful** ideas about doing well in school without studying.*



gripe [graip] *v.*

To **gripe** means to complain constantly.

→ *Lawrence always **gripes** when he has to do chores.*



grueling [grú:əliŋ] *adj.*

When something is **grueling**, it is very hard to do.

→ *The climber faced the **grueling** task of reaching the top of the steep mountain.*



mundane [mʌ́ndein] *adj.*

When something is **mundane**, it is boring, common, or ordinary.

→ *The man had the **mundane** chore of raking thousands of leaves into piles.*



opt [ɑpt] *v.*

To **opt** is to make a choice, especially when deciding in favor of something.

→ *My brother likes chocolate ice cream, but I always **opt** for vanilla.*



outrage [áutrèidʒ] *n.*

Outrage is a very strong emotion of anger or shock.

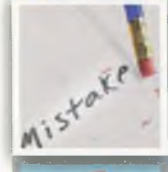
→ *Tommy was feeling **outrage** when his parents said he couldn't go to the dance.*



paltry [pɔ́:ltri] *adj.*

When an amount of something is **paltry**, it is very small.

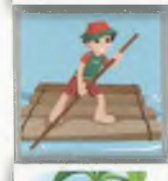
→ *The poor man had a **paltry** sum of money.*



rectify [rèktəfài] *v.*

To **rectify** something means to correct it.

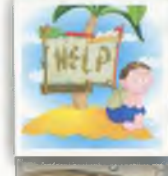
→ *I quickly **rectified** the spelling mistakes that I had on my essay.*



resourceful [ri:sɔ́:rsfəl] *adj.*

When someone is **resourceful**, they are good at dealing with hard situations.

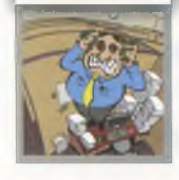
→ *After his boat sunk, Matt was **resourceful** enough to build a raft.*



sustenance [sʌ́stənəns] *n.*

Sustenance is food and water needed to keep a person, animal, or plant alive.

→ *Without the proper **sustenance**, the man will starve.*



tedious [tí:diəs] *adj.*

When something is **tedious**, it is long, frustrating, and boring.

→ *His job involved a lot of **tedious** typing, filing, and organizing.*

UNIT 2

Word List



abbey [ǽbi] *n.*

An **abbey** is a house or group of houses where monks or nuns live.

→ *When the monk returned to the **abbey**, he went immediately to his bedroom.*



abundant [əbʌ́ndənt] *adj.*

If something is **abundant**, then it is available in large quantities.

→ *Cakes, cookies, and candy were so **abundant** that the child was very happy.*



adjoin [ədʒɔ́in] *v.*

To **adjoin** something means to be next to or attached to something else.

→ *She can listen to her brother's conversations because her room **adjoins** his.*



ample [ǽmpl] *adj.*

If something is **ample**, then it is enough or more than enough.

→ *There was an **ample** supply of oats to feed the horses.*



arid [ǽrid] *adj.*

If a place is **arid**, then it is hot and dry and gets very little or no rain.

→ *Not many plants grow in the **arid** desert.*



cathedral [kəəí:drəl] *n.*

A **cathedral** is an important and often large and beautifully built church.

→ *The large **cathedral** is full of people on Sunday mornings.*



deprive [diprâiv] *v.*

To **deprive** someone of something means to not let them have it.

→ *Because the child was bad, she was **deprived** of her dessert after dinner.*



drought [draut] *n.*

A **drought** is a long period of time in which little or no rain falls.

→ *After three months of **drought**, the vegetation and trees started dying.*



eligible [élidʒəbəl] *adj.*

If someone is **eligible**, then they are permitted to do or have something.

→ *Only people who bought tickets were **eligible** to win a prize.*



fast [fæst] *v.*

To **fast** means to go without food or drink for a period of time.

→ *In her religion, they **fast** for five days and then have a big feast.*



grumble [grʌ́mbəl] *v.*

To **grumble** means to complain.

→ *He **grumbled** about having to work late on Friday.*



inland [ínlənd] *adv.*

If someone goes **inland**, they travel into the center of a country or land.

→ *The river curved **inland** near the campground.*



moisture [mɔ́istʃər] *n.*

Moisture is small drops of water in the air or on a surface.

→ *If you breathe on a window, **moisture** from your breath collects on the glass.*



nonetheless [nʌ̀nðəlés] *adv.*

If something happens **nonetheless**, then it occurs despite some other thing.

→ *She tried to keep the dog out of the mud, but it got dirty **nonetheless**.*



oath [ouə] *n.*

An **oath** is a formal, often public, promise.

→ *Judges must take an **oath** to be fair to everyone in court.*



prairie [prɛ́əri] *n.*

A **prairie** is a large flat area of grassland.

→ *The **prairie** was perfect for a farm because there were hills and trees.*



ragged [rægid] *adj.*

If something is **ragged**, then it is old, torn, and falling apart.

→ *They could see his toes through the holes in his **ragged** shoes.*



rugged [rʌ́gid] *adj.*

If an area of land is **rugged**, then it is rocky and difficult to travel through.

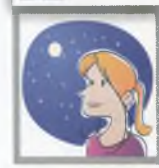
→ *Their car couldn't make it far along the **rugged** roads.*



scarce [skɛəːrs] *adj.*

If something is **scarce**, then it is in a very small amount.

→ *When gasoline was **scarce**, we rode our bikes, instead of driving, to school.*



speculate [spékjəlèit] *v.*

To **speculate** means to guess about something.

→ *My sister looked at the sky and **speculated** that it would rain tomorrow.*

UNIT 3

Word List



analytic [ænəlítik] *adj.*

If something is **analytic**, it is related to logic and reasoning.

→ *The **analytic** article criticized the new plan and presented one of its own.*



assert [əsə́:rt] *v.*

To **assert** a fact or belief means to state it with confidence.

→ *He **asserted** that his mother's cooking was better than his best friend's.*



bachelor [bǽtʃələr] *n.*

A **bachelor** is an unmarried man.

→ *Since he was a **bachelor**, Jason did his shopping by himself.*



calculus [kǽlkjələs] *n.*

Calculus is an advanced type of mathematics.

→ *By using **calculus**, scientists determined small changes in the stars' brightness.*



celestial [səlέstʃəl] *adj.*

If something is **celestial**, it is related to the sky or to outer space.

→ *Comets are **celestial** objects that are rarely seen.*



cognitive [kάgnətiv] *adj.*

If something is **cognitive**, it is related to learning and knowing things.

→ *After her physical examination, her **cognitive** strengths were tested.*



collision [kəlíʒən] *n.*

A **collision** is the act of two things hitting into each another.

→ *The **collision** between the two cars created a loud noise.*



competent [kάmpətənt] *adj.*

If someone is **competent**, they are able to think or act successfully.

→ ***Competent** employees are much better than unknowledgeable ones.*



diploma [diplóumə] *n.*

A **diploma** is a certificate proving that someone has completed their studies.

→ *After four years of college, Mary finally had a **diploma**.*



excel [iksél] *v.*

To **excel** at a subject or activity means to be very good at it.

→ *Jenny **excels** at playing the piano.*



geology [dʒi:ɑ́lədʒi] *n.*

Geology is the study of the Earth's natural structures and how they change.

→ *Because he studied **geology**, he knew how the mountains were formed.*



harness [hɑ́:rnis] *v.*

To **harness** something means to control and use it, usually to make energy.

→ *The sails **harness** the wind in order to move.*



intellect [íntəlèkt] *n.*

An **intellect** is a person's ability to understand things easily.

→ *She was known for her quick and strong **intellect** as well as her beauty.*



keen [ki:n] *adj.*

If someone is **keen**, they are intelligent.

→ *Only the **keenest** of students could have solved that math problem.*



mythology [miəɑ́lədʒi] *n.*

Mythology is a group of stories from a particular country or region.

→ *Egyptian **mythology** was the basis for a religion.*



physiology [fiziɑ́lədʒi] *n.*

Physiology is the study of the various parts of living things.

→ *His work in **physiology** helped him understand how the human body works.*



radioactive [rèidiouǽktiv] *adj.*

If something is **radioactive**, then it lets out, or is related to, radiation.

→ ***Radioactive** materials can be very bad for anyone's health.*



relativity [rèlətívəti] *n.*

Relativity is a set of ideas about time and space developed by Albert Einstein.

→ ***Relativity** teaches that light travels at the same speed in the universe.*



sociology [sòusiɑ́lədʒi] *n.*

Sociology is the study of human society, its organizations, and problems.

→ ***Sociology** teaches that people's problems are a result of their society.*



theoretical [θi:ərétikəl] *adj.*

If something is **theoretical**, it is based on theory rather than experience.

→ *His conclusion was only **theoretical** and not meant to be publicized.*

UNIT 4

Word List



administrator [ædmínəstrèitər] *n.*

An **administrator** is a person who controls a business, company, or organization.

→ *Everyone in the store did whatever the **administrator** asked them to do.*



affluent [æflu(:)ənt] *adj.*

If someone is **affluent**, they are wealthy.

→ *People in the city are usually more **affluent** than people in the country.*



audit [ɔ́:dit] *v.*

To **audit** means to inspect financial records from a person or business.

→ *The government usually **audits** companies that report lower than usual incomes.*



automate [ɔ́:təmèit] *v.*

To **automate** a company means to install machines or computers to do the work.

→ *When the bank **automated**, it started installing ATM machines.*



bribe [braib] *v.*

To **bribe** someone means to illegally persuade them for a favor with money.

→ *The judge was **bribed** so that she would set the suspect free.*



corrupt [kərʌ́pt] *adj.*

If someone is **corrupt**, they break the law for money or fame.

→ *The **corrupt** policemen didn't arrest the man because he gave them money.*



dispose [dispóuz] *v.*

To **dispose** of something means to get rid of it.

→ *He **disposed** of the can by throwing it into the recycle bin.*



headquarters [hédkwɔ́:rtərz] *n.*

A **headquarters** is a building where the bosses of a company work.

→ *He drove the long route to **headquarters** because it was a nice day.*



incentive [insέntiv] *n.*

An **incentive** is what makes a person want to do something.

→ *The chance of winning a prize was **incentive** to get people to play the game.*



infrastructure [ínfrəstrʌ̀ktʃər] *n.*

An **infrastructure** is a collection of services needed to run a society or business.

→ *Power lines are important parts of a city's **infrastructure**.*



legislate [lédʒislèit] *v.*

To **legislate** means to make laws.

→ *Senators have to **legislate** fairly, so most people will enjoy the benefits.*



legitimate [lidʒítəmit] *adj.*

If something is **legitimate**, then it is acceptable according to the law.

→ *She found a **legitimate** plan to raise extra funds for her vacation.*



manipulate [mənípjəlèit] *v.*

To **manipulate** something means to skillfully or unfairly control or affect it.

→ *The Dr. **manipulated** the data to make it look like the cure was working.*



merchandise [mə́:rtʃəndàiz] *n.*

Merchandise is goods ready to be purchased or sold.

→ *The store added more **merchandise** because there were more shoppers.*



retail [rí:teil] *n.*

Retail is the activity of selling goods to the public, often for personal use.

→ *Though cheap to make, once a t-shirt reaches **retail**, it costs ten times as much.*



revenue [révənjù:] *n.*

Revenue is the income made by a company.

→ *The new products really increased the business's monthly **revenue**.*



rubbish [rʌ́biʃ] *n.*

Rubbish is trash or waste.

→ *The floor around the garbage can was covered with all kinds of **rubbish**.*



subsidy [sʌ́bsidi] *n.*

A **subsidy** is money given by the government to companies to assist them.

→ *The official gave the company a **subsidy**, so it could open two new factories.*



transaction [trænsǽkʃən] *n.*

A **transaction** is an act of buying or selling something.

→ *Because the clerk was new at the job, the simple **transaction** took a long time.*



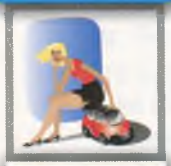
violate [váiəlèit] *v.*

To **violate** a law, rule, or agreement means to break it.

→ *I was given a ticket because the policeman said I **violated** the speed limit.*

UNIT 5

Word List



assess [əsés] *v.*

To **assess** something means to judge the structure, purpose, or quality of it.

→ *She **assessed** the condition of the toy car before buying it.*



astonish [əstάniʃ] *v.*

To **astonish** someone means to greatly surprise them.

→ *The amount of people that came to her party **astonished** her.*



commence [kəmέns] *v.*

To **commence** something means to begin it.

→ *His speech **commenced** with a "thank you" to all who had helped him succeed.*



essence [ésəns] *n.*

The **essence** of something is its important qualities or basic characteristics.

→ *The **essence** of the argument was that both sides felt they had lost money.*



extract [ikstrækt] *v.*

To **extract** something means to remove it.

→ *The dentist **extracted** the woman's damaged tooth and put in a fake one.*



fabulous [fæbjələs] *adj.*

If something is **fabulous**, it is extremely good.

→ *This strawberry is the best I've ever had. It's **fabulous**.*



haste [heist] *n.*

Haste is speed in movement or action.

→ *In order to get to the meeting in time, he proceeds with **haste**.*



impulse [ímpʌls] *n.*

An **impulse** is a sudden thoughtless urge to do something.

→ *Because of the scary noise, she had an **impulse** to run somewhere and hide.*



latter [lætəːr] *adj.*

Latter describes something last in a series or the second choice of two things.

→ *In the **latter** minutes of the game, the visitors scored the winning goal.*



molecule [málәkjùːl] *n.*

A **molecule** is the smallest basic unit that makes up a physical substance.

→ *A tiny drop of water is made up of thousands of **molecules** of water.*



ongoing [ángòuiŋ] *adj.*

If something is **ongoing**, then it is still happening or still growing.

→ *The development of plants is **ongoing** because it takes time for them to mature.*



pharmaceutical [fɑ̀:rməsú:tikəl] *adj.*

If something is **pharmaceutical**, then it is related to the development of drugs.

→ ***Pharmaceutical** companies discover new cures to illnesses all the time.*



precise [prisáis] *adj.*

If someone is **precise**, then they are exact and careful about their work.

→ *The builder was very **precise** about where he placed the nails.*



proximity [prɑksíməti] *n.*

Proximity is closeness in time, space, or relationships.

→ *All the trees in the **proximity** of the beach had been cut down.*



publicity [pʌblísəti] *n.*

Publicity is public attention given to someone or something by the media.

→ *She received a lot of **publicity** after her performance in the film.*



remedy [rémədi] *n.*

A **remedy** is a cure for a disease, argument, or problem.

→ *A good **remedy** for a headache is an aspirin and a glass of water.*



significance [signífikəns] *n.*

The **significance** of something is the quality that makes it important.

→ *The **significance** of the snowy weather was that we didn't have to go to school.*



subsequent [sʌ́bsikwənt] *adj.*

If something is **subsequent**, then it comes after something else in time.

→ *The flood and the **subsequent** rescue of those caught in the flood were on TV.*



synthetic [sinθétik] *adj.*

If something is **synthetic**, then it is made to be like something natural.

→ *Clothing made out of **synthetic** fabrics is very effective at keeping people warm.*



terminal [tə́:rmənəl] *adj.*

If something is **terminal**, then it causes or results in death.

→ *Since his condition was not **terminal**, he felt a great sense of relief.*

UNIT 6

Word List



altitude [ǽltətjùːd] *n.*

The **altitude** of a place is its height above sea level.

→ *The air was thin at such a high **altitude** on the mountain.*



coastline [kóustlàin] *n.*

A **coastline** is the outline of a country's coast.

→ *He noticed that most of the cities in Australia are on the **coastline**.*



deter [ditə́ːr] *v.*

To **deter** means to prevent or discourage someone from doing something.

→ *Icy roads **deter** people from driving their cars.*



devise [diváiz] *v.*

To **devise** something means to have an idea or plan about it in the mind.

→ *The thieves **devised** a plan to steal the diamonds.*



expertise [èkspəːrtíːz] *n.*

Expertise is the knowledge and skills to do something well.

→ *John has a lot of advertising **expertise**. He can sell anything!*



fracture [frǽktʃəːr] *n.*

A **fracture** is a crack or break in something.

→ *Don't stand on that leg because there is a **fracture**. It might get worse.*



impair [impɛ́ər] *v.*

To **impair** something means to damage it or make it worse.

→ *Drinking coffee **impairs** my ability to go to sleep.*



implement [ímpləmènt] *v.*

To **implement** something means to ensure that what has been planned is done.

→ *The school decided to **implement** a new teaching strategy.*



indigenous [indídʒənəs] *adj.*

If something is **indigenous**, it is originally from, or native to, a place.

→ *Tomatoes are **indigenous** to the Americas.*



insight [ínsàit] *n.*

Insight is a deep and accurate understanding of something.

→ *The physics textbook gave the student new **insight** about gravity.*



limb [lim] *n.*

A **limb** is a large branch on a tree.

→ *The monkey sat on the tree **limb** and enjoyed a piece of fruit.*



migraine [máigrein] *n.*

A **migraine** is a painful headache that makes one feel sick.

→ *My sister gets a **migraine** every time she has a lot of stress.*



optimism [áptəmizəm] *n.*

Optimism is the feeling of being hopeful about the future or success of something.

→ *The mother had **optimism** about her children's futures.*



peculiar [pikjúːljər] *adj.*

When something is **peculiar**, it is strange, sometimes in a bad way.

→ *That **peculiar** smell coming from the kitchen reminds me of rotten eggs.*



proficient [prəfíʃənt] *adj.*

When a person is **proficient** at something, they can do it well.

→ *Secretaries are **proficient** at typing quickly.*



quest [kwest] *n.*

A **quest** is a long and difficult search for something.

→ *The treasure hunter went on a **quest** to find an ancient gold necklace.*



ridge [ridʒ] *n.*

A **ridge** is a long, narrow piece of raised land.

→ *The brown bear walked along the edge of the mountain **ridge**.*



spouse [spaus] *n.*

A **spouse** is the person to whom someone is married.

→ *I live in a home with my **spouse** and our two children.*



thrust [ərʌst] *v.*

To **thrust** means to push or move something quickly with a lot of force.

→ *The boxer **thrust** his fist into the punching bag.*



tolerate [tálərèit] *v.*

To **tolerate** something means to be able to accept it even when it is unpleasant.

→ *When you are in a hurry, it can be hard to **tolerate** traffic signals.*

UNIT 7

Word List



aquatic [ækwətik] *adj.*

If a plant or animal is **aquatic,** it lives or grows in water.

→ *The dolphin is an **aquatic** mammal.*



biosphere [báiəsfiər] *n.*

The **biosphere** is the earth's surface and atmosphere where there are living things.

→ *Birds, trees, and worms all thrive in the **biosphere**.*



bizarre [bizɑ́:r] *adj.*

When something is **bizarre,** it is very strange.

→ *My **bizarre** dreams make no sense to me when I am awake.*



Celsius [sélsiəs] *n.*

Celsius is a scale for measuring temperature.

→ *Water freezes at zero degrees **Celsius**.*



coarse [kɔ:rs] *adj.*

If something is **coarse,** that means it has a rough texture.

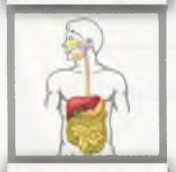
→ *The **coarse** sweater made my skin itch.*



companion [kəmpǽnjən] *n.*

A **companion** is a person that someone spends a lot of time with.

→ *I always walk to school with my **companion** Frank.*



digest [didʒést] *v.*

To **digest** means to swallow food and pass it through the body.

→ *Allow some time for food to be **digested** before going swimming.*



duration [djuəréiʃən] *n.*

The **duration** of an event is the time during which it happens.

→ *The girls watched television for the **duration** of the evening.*



ecology [i:kɑ́lədʒi] *n.*

Ecology is the study of the environment and living things.

→ *We study **ecology** to learn how to help improve the Earth.*



feat [fi:t] *n.*

A **feat** is an impressive or difficult achievement or action.

→ *The elephant's standing up on one leg was a **feat**.*



infinite [ínfənit] *adj.*

If something is **infinite**, it has no limit or end.

→ *Many scientists believe that the universe is **infinite**.*



nucleus [n(y)úːkliəs] *n.*

The **nucleus** is the central part of an atom or cell.

→ *The **nucleus** is made up of many tiny particles.*



parasite [pǽrəsàit] *n.*

A **parasite** is a tiny animal or plant that attaches to another animal to get food.

→ *The sick dog was covered in **parasites**.*



prominent [prámənənt] *adj.*

When something is **prominent**, it is important and well known.

→ *Queen Victoria was a **prominent** person in history.*



repetitive [ripétətiv] *adj.*

When something is **repetitive**, it is repeated many times and becomes boring.

→ *Working on an assembly line making cars every day is a **repetitive** job.*



reproductive [rìːprədʌ́ktiv] *adj.*

If something is **reproductive**, it has to do with a living thing producing young.

→ *The **reproductive** system of a plant is simple.*



temperate [témpərit] *adj.*

When a place is **temperate**, it never gets too hot or cold.

→ *In Peru, the weather is **temperate** and rarely gets too hot or cold.*



tolerance [tálərəns] *n.*

Tolerance is the ability to accept something painful or unpleasant.

→ *Boxers have a high **tolerance** for pain.*



undergo [ʌ̀ndərgóu] *v.*

To **undergo** an action means to have it happen to you.

→ *The cancer patient **undergoes** treatments twice a week.*



vulnerable [vʌ́lnərəbəl] *adj.*

When someone is **vulnerable**, they are weak and without protection.

→ *He felt very **vulnerable** when he was stranded in the desert.*

UNIT 8

Word List



adept [ədépt] *adj.*

If someone is **adept** at something, they are very good at doing it.

→ *The carpenter is very **adept** at building houses.*



barren [bǽrən] *adj.*

If land is **barren**, it has no plants growing on it.

→ *People cannot farm in **barren** lands.*



ceramic [sərǽmik] *adj.*

If something is **ceramic**, it is made of baked clay.

→ *The house's roof was made of **ceramic** tiles.*



culinary [kʌ́lənèri] *adj.*

If something is **culinary**, it is related to cooking.

→ *I gained **culinary** skills after working in a restaurant for many years.*



dense [dens] *adj.*

If something is **dense**, it has a lot of things close together.

→ *I easily became lost in the **dense** forest.*



dignity [dígnəti] *n.*

Dignity is the ability to be calm and worthy of respect.

→ *When his company went out of business, he faced it with **dignity**.*



dominate [dɑ́mənèit] *v.*

To **dominate** someone or something is to control them.

→ *The loud man **dominated** the conversation.*



edible [édəbəl] *adj.*

If something is **edible**, you can eat it.

→ *We learn about **edible** plants when we go camping.*



hostile [hɑ́stʌl] *adj.*

If someone is **hostile**, they are angry and unfriendly.

→ *We were happy to move away from our **hostile** neighbor.*



intake [íntèik] *n.*

Your **intake** of food is the amount of food you take into your body.

→ *The doctor said I needed to increase my **intake** of fruits and vegetables.*



likewise [laikwàiz] *adv.*

If someone does something **likewise**, they do the same thing as someone else.

→ *If Joe is staying away from school to go swimming, I want to do **likewise**.*



malnutrition [mælnju:tríʃən] *n.*

Malnutrition is the condition of not getting enough nutrients.

→ *After eating only a meager amount of food, she suffered from **malnutrition**.*



medication [mèdəkéiʃən] *n.*

Medication is medicine or drugs given to people who are sick.

→ *The doctor gave me **medication** to treat my illness.*



misconception [miskənsépʃən] *n.*

A **misconception** is a wrong idea about something.

→ *People once believed the **misconception** that the Earth is flat.*



obscure [əbskjúər] *adj.*

If something is **obscure**, it is not well-known.

→ *The old man travels the world in search of **obscure** books.*



oppress [əprés] *v.*

To **oppress** someone means to rule over them in a cruel and unfair way.

→ *Free speech had been **oppressed** in his country.*



peel [pi:l] *v.*

To **peel** fruits and vegetables is to remove their skin.

→ *We **peeled** the apple before eating it.*



prescription [priskrípʃən] *n.*

A **prescription** is permission from a doctor to get medicine.

→ *The doctor gave me a **prescription** for my medication.*



respirator [réspərèitə:r] *n.*

A **respirator** is a machine that helps weak or sick people breathe.

→ *The man needed a **respirator** to breathe.*



strive [straiv] *v.*

To **strive** is to struggle to achieve something.

→ *People who **strive** to succeed often do.*

UNIT 9

Word List



archaic [ɑːrkéik] *adj.*

If something is **archaic**, it is very old or outdated.

→ *To be competitive, we must update our **archaic** equipment.*



benevolent [bənévələnt] *adj.*

If someone is **benevolent**, they are kind and generous.

→ *My father was a **benevolent** man and gave lots of money to charity.*



brass [bræs] *n.*

Brass is a metal that is used to make musical instruments and ornaments.

→ ***Brass** is used to make musical instruments like trumpets.*



capitalism [kǽpitəlizəm] *n.*

Capitalism is an economic system where private companies make goods for profit.

→ *Most industries in the world today are based on **capitalism**.*



component [kəmpóunənt] *n.*

A **component** is a part of a larger machine.

→ *Computers have many different **components**, so they are complicated to build.*



dependence [dipéndəns] *n.*

Dependence is a situation in which somebody relies on something else.

→ *Young children have a **dependence** on their parents.*



diminish [dəmíniʃ] *v.*

To **diminish** means to reduce or get smaller.

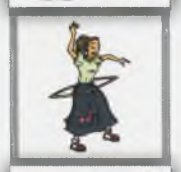
→ *As the economy got worse, my savings **diminished**.*



drawback [drɔ́ːbæ̀k] *n.*

A **drawback** is a disadvantage.

→ *The **drawback** of having a car is that it is very expensive to maintain.*



fad [fæd] *n.*

A **fad** is something that is popular for a short time.

→ *The hula hoop was a **fad** for a few years, but it soon lost its popularity.*



impose [impóuz] *v.*

To **impose** means to interrupt or force your ideas on other people.

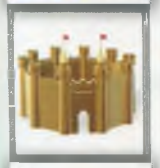
→ *He **imposes** on his wife every morning by expecting her to make breakfast.*



managerial [mænədʒíəriəl] *adj.*

Managerial describes something related to a manager or management.

→ *Nancy has a **managerial** position at the bank.*



medieval [mì:dií:vəl] *adj.*

If something is **medieval,** it comes from the period between 650 and 1500 CE.

→ *We visited a castle that was built during **medieval** times.*



obsolete [ɑ̀bsəlí:t] *adj.*

If something is **obsolete,** it is not used anymore because something better exists.

→ *Since computers became inexpensive, typewriters have become **obsolete**.*



peninsula [pənínsələ] *n.*

A **peninsula** is a large piece of land that is surrounded by the sea on three sides.

→ *The state of Florida is an example of a **peninsula**.*



prestige [prestí:ʤ] *n.*

If a person has **prestige,** people admire or respect them.

→ *The young actress gained much **prestige** after she won an award.*



proportion [prəpɔ́:rʃən] *n.*

A **proportion** is an amount that shows the link between the parts and the whole.

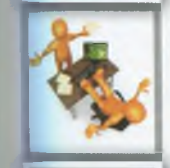
→ *Only a small **proportion** of the people in this town actually work here.*



radical [rædikəl] *adj.*

If something is **radical,** it is very new or different.

→ *The president is planning to make some **radical** changes to the law.*



refute [rifjú:t] *v.*

To **refute** something means to prove that it is false or incorrect.

→ *The bank manager has **refuted** the claims that he lied to his customers.*



spectacular [spektǽkjələr] *adj.*

If something is **spectacular,** it looks or sounds very impressive.

→ *There was a **spectacular** fireworks display in the park at New Year.*



weave [wi:v] *v.*

To **weave** means to make cloth using horizontal and vertical threads.

→ *We saw a woman **weave** a blanket on our vacation to South America.*

UNIT 10

Word List



accountant [əkáuntənt] *n.*

An **accountant** is a person whose job is to keep financial accounts.

→ *The **accountant** helped me keep track of my money.*



capitalist [kǽpitəlist] *n.*

A **capitalist** is a business person who invests in trade and industry for profit.

→ *The **capitalist** invested in a factory that made wheat into cereal.*



contempt [kəntémpt] *n.*

Contempt is the feeling of having no respect for something.

→ *The judge had **contempt** for the wicked criminal.*



dedicate [dédikèit] *v.*

To **dedicate** oneself to something means to put a lot of time and effort into it.

→ *The nun **dedicated** herself to helping people in need.*



ditch [ditʃ] *n.*

A **ditch** is a narrow hole cut into the ground by a road or a field.

→ *When the car slid off of the road, it fell into the **ditch**.*



enterprise [éntərpràiz] *n.*

An **enterprise** is a company or business.

→ *My father owns an advertising **enterprise**.*



exquisite [ikskwízit] *adj.*

When something is **exquisite**, it is very beautiful or pleasant.

→ *The artist made **exquisite** watercolor paintings.*



finance [finǽns] *v.*

To **finance** someone or something means to provide money for them.

→ *The government **financed** the scientist's experiments with new weapons.*



indifferent [indífərənt] *adj.*

When someone is **indifferent** toward something, they have a lack of interest in it.

→ *Lisa is **indifferent** toward school. She doesn't care what her final grades are.*



irrigate [írəgèit] *v.*

To **irrigate** means to supply water to land so that crops can grow.

→ *In dry climates, it is important to **irrigate** fields of crops.*



maximize [mæksəmàiz] *v.*

To **maximize** something is to make it as great in amount, size, or importance.

→ *You should exercise regularly to **maximize** a healthy lifestyle.*



monetary [mánətèri] *adj.*

When something is **monetary**, it relates to money.

→ *A strong **monetary** policy is important for a country to be successful.*



precaution [prikɔ́:ʃən] *n.*

A **precaution** is an action that is meant to stop something bad from happening.

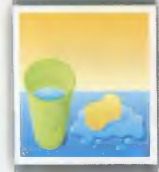
→ *As a **precaution**, you should put on a heavy coat before going out in cold weather.*



preliminary [prilimənèri] *adj.*

Preliminary describes something that happens before a more important event.

→ *The runners must do well in the **preliminary** races to qualify for the final race.*



saturate [sætʃərèit] *v.*

To **saturate** something means to completely soak it with a liquid.

→ *The sponge was **saturated** with soapy water and dripped all over the floor.*



simplicity [simplísəti] *n.*

The **simplicity** of something is the fact that it is easy to do or understand.

→ *We were able to find the house thanks to the **simplicity** of the directions.*



sow [sou] *v.*

To **sow** seeds means to plant them in the ground.

→ *He always **sows** his garden seeds in the springtime.*



soy [sɔi] *n.*

Soy is a food made from soybeans, such as flour or butter.

→ ***Soy** can be made into tofu, sauce, and also milk.*



spade [speid] *n.*

A **spade** is a tool used for digging.

→ *The gardener used her **spade** to make a hole for the seed.*



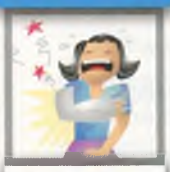
upcoming [ʌpkʌ̀miŋ] *adj.*

When something is **upcoming**, that means it will happen in the near future.

→ *The kids were worried about their **upcoming** exam.*

UNIT 11

Word List



acute [əkjúːt] *adj.*

When a bad thing is **acute**, it is very severe and intense.

→ *When she fell out of the tree, the girl felt an **acute** pain in her arm.*



aggression [əgréʃən] *n.*

Aggression is behavior that is mean or violent to others.

→ *The problem was only made worse by Mark's **aggression**.*



banquet [bǽŋkwit] *n.*

A **banquet** is a grand formal dinner.

→ *Both families brought a lot of food for the wedding **banquet**.*



biography [baiάgrəfi] *n.*

A **biography** is an account of someone's life that is written by someone else.

→ *We read a **biography** about Charles Darwin in science class.*



boost [buːst] *v.*

To **boost** something means to increase or improve it.

→ *Lowering prices **boosts** customers' interest in shopping.*



clap [klæp] *v.*

To **clap** means to hit one's hands together to express pleasure or get attention.

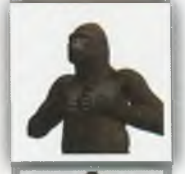
→ *After the speech, everyone in the crowd **clapped** their hands for the speaker.*



compel [kəmpél] *v.*

To **compel** someone to do something means to force them to do it.

→ *Traffic signs **compel** drivers to drive safely.*



dominance [dάmənəns] *n.*

The **dominance** of a person is their state of being more powerful than others.

→ *Large gorillas hit their chests to express their **dominance** over others.*



gorgeous [gɔ́ːrdʒəs] *adj.*

When something is **gorgeous**, it is very pleasing and attractive.

→ *The girl picked out a **gorgeous** dress to wear to the dance.*



inevitable [inévitəbəl] *adj.*

When something is **inevitable**, it is certain to happen or cannot be avoided.

→ *It is **inevitable** that the days will get longer in the summer.*



legacy [legəsi] *n.*

A **legacy** is an effect that exists because of a person or thing in the past.

→ *The **legacy** of the ancient Egyptians can be seen in their monuments.*



masterpiece [mæstərpi:s] *n.*

A **masterpiece** is a very good painting, novel, movie, or other work of art.

→ *The Arc de Triomphe is considered a **masterpiece** in the world of architecture.*



multiple [mʌltəpəl] *adj.*

If there are **multiple** things, there are many of them.

→ *When the stunt went wrong, the man suffered **multiple** injuries.*



narrate [næreit] *v.*

To **narrate** a story means to write about it or read it aloud.

→ *This story was written by John, but Aaron is **narrating** it to the crowd.*



notorious [noutɔ:riəs] *adj.*

When something is **notorious**, it is well-known because of something bad.

→ *This area of town is **notorious** for gang activity.*



outdated [autdéitid] *adj.*

When something is **outdated**, it is old and no longer useful in modern time.

→ *Tape players are becoming **outdated** because of digital music.*



overall [óuvərɔ:l] *adv.*

When a thing is talked about **overall**, the whole thing is considered.

→ ***Overall**, the party was a huge success.*



partiality [pɑ:rʃiæləti] *n.*

A **partiality** is a tendency to prefer one thing to another.

→ *She has a **partiality** for walking to school instead of driving.*



spontaneous [spɑntéiniəs] *adj.*

When an act is **spontaneous**, it is not planned. It happens suddenly.

→ *My wife made a **spontaneous** decision to buy a new sofa while I was at work.*



virtue [və:rtʃu:] *n.*

A **virtue** is a good quality or way of behaving.

→ *My best **virtue** is forgiveness.*

UNIT 12

Word List



anthropology [ænərəpɑ́lədʒi] *n.*

Anthropology is the study of people, society, and culture.

→ *In **anthropology** class, I learned about simple tools that ancient cultures used.*



applaud [əplɔ́:d] *v.*

To **applaud** means to clap in order to show approval.

→ *Everyone cheered and **applauded** Manny's efforts.*



appoint [əpɔ́int] *v.*

To **appoint** someone to a job means to give the job to them.

→ *Two students were **appointed** to help the scientists with their research.*



compatible [kəmpǽtəbəl] *adj.*

When things are **compatible**, they work well or exist together successfully.

→ *Jan and Fred are too different. They will never be **compatible**.*



competence [kɑ́mpətəns] *n.*

Competence is the ability to do something well or effectively.

→ *The job was easy because the group had enough **competence** to do it well.*



confer [kənfə́:r] *v.*

To **confer** with someone means to discuss something with them to make a decision.

→ *I will have to **confer** with my wife before I can purchase a new car.*



consecutive [kənsékjətiv] *adj.*

When things are **consecutive**, they happen one after another without interruption.

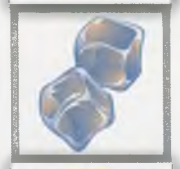
→ *The king ruled for ten **consecutive** years.*



crude [kru:d] *adj.*

When something is **crude**, it is not exact or detailed, but it can still be useful.

→ *She drew **crude** hearts on the ground to show how much she loved him.*



cube [kju:b] *n.*

A **cube** is a solid object with six square surfaces that are all the same size.

→ *Please get me some ice **cubes** to put in my soda.*



feedback [fí:dbæ̀k] *n.*

Feedback is comments to a person about how they are doing something.

→ *I asked my boss for **feedback** on my work.*



ignorance [ignərəns] *n.*

Ignorance of something is lack of knowledge about it.

→ *When he failed the test, his **ignorance** of math was obvious.*



masculine [mæskjəlin] *adj.*

When something is **masculine**, it is a quality or thing related to men.

→ *American football is usually considered a **masculine** sport.*



monument [mánjəmənt] *n.*

A **monument** is a structure that is built to remind people of a person or event.

→ *A large **monument** was built to honor the brave soldiers.*



muscular [mʌskjələ:r] *adj.*

When someone is **muscular**, they are very fit and strong.

→ *He exercised regularly so that his body could become **muscular**.*



posture [pástʃər] *n.*

A person's **posture** is the position in which they stand or sit.

→ *Your back will feel better if you improve your **posture**.*



situate [sítʃuèit] *v.*

To **situate** something means to place or build it in a certain place.

→ *The road was **situated** between the forest and the lake.*



supervise [sú:pərvàiz] *v.*

To **supervise** something means to make sure that it is done correctly.

→ *Allen **supervised** the construction workers to ensure everyone's safety.*



symmetry [símətri] *n.*

Symmetry is the state of having two halves that are exactly the same.

→ *The artist made sure to use perfect **symmetry** when painting the butterfly.*



tattoo [tætú:] *n.*

A **tattoo** is a design that is drawn permanently on the skin with needles.

→ *The surfer had **tattoos** on both his arms.*



undergraduate [ʌndərgrædʒuit] *n.*

An **undergraduate** is a student at a college who is studying for a bachelor's degree.

→ *She was excited to finish high school and enroll as an **undergraduate** in the fall.*

UNIT 13

Word List



brook [bruk] *n.*

A **brook** is a small stream.

→ *Water flows down several **brooks** on the mountain.*



cater [kéitər] *v.*

To **cater** to someone means to provide them with all the things needed or wanted.

→ *Bill was too sick to get out of bed, so his nurse **catered** to his needs.*



considerate [kənsídərit] *adj.*

When someone is **considerate**, they pay attention to the needs of others.

→ *The **considerate** boy gave a present to his girlfriend on Valentine's Day.*



consumption [kənsʌ́mpʃən] *n.*

The **consumption** of food or drink is the act of eating or drinking it.

→ *These apples are too rotten for **consumption**.*



criteria [kraitíəriə] *n.*

Criteria are factors on which a person judges or decides something.

→ *Before she got the job, she had to meet all the necessary **criteria**.*



crust [krʌst] *n.*

Crust is the tough outer part of a loaf of bread.

→ *The little boy never ate the **crust** of his pizza.*



degrade [digréid] *v.*

To **degrade** someone means to cause people to have shame.

→ *The teacher **degraded** Bob when she announced his poor performance to the class*



entitle [entáitl] *v.*

To **entitle** someone means to give them the rights to have or do something.

→ *His golden ticket **entitled** him to sit in the front row at the concert.*



escort [ésko:rt] *v.*

To **escort** people means to safely accompany them to a place.

→ *Her bodyguards **escorted** her to the movie theater.*



external [ikstə́:rnəl] *adj.*

When something is **external**, it is connected to an outer part.

→ *It is warm inside my house, but the **external** temperature is freezing.*



facility [fəsíləti] *n.*

A **facility** is a building that exists for a particular purpose.

→ *There are many educational **facilities** in big cities.*



faculty [fǽkəlti] *n.*

A **faculty** is a mental or physical ability.

→ *The boy's mental **faculties** impressed all of his teachers.*



heap [hi:p] *n.*

A **heap** of things is a large pile of them.

→ *After the building was torn down, all that was left was a **heap** of bricks.*



hemisphere [hémisfiər] *n.*

A **hemisphere** is one half of the earth.

→ *In the northern **hemisphere**, the weather is usually warmest in July and August.*



hound [haund] *n.*

A **hound** is a type of dog that is often used for racing or hunting.

→ *The men took their **hounds** with them when they went on the hunting trip.*



impersonal [impə́:rsənəl] *adj.*

If something is **impersonal**, it is not friendly and makes people feel unimportant.

→ *The boy felt scared on his first day at the big, **impersonal** high school.*



ornament [ɔ́:rnəmənt] *n.*

An **ornament** is an attractive object that people display in their homes.

→ *The woman kept some colorful **ornaments** on the shelves.*



pedestrian [pədéstriən] *n.*

A **pedestrian** is a person who is walking on a street.

→ *Cars should be careful when **pedestrians** are walking around.*



sanctuary [sǽŋktʃuèri] *n.*

A **sanctuary** is a place where people in danger can go to be safe.

→ *The church was made into a **sanctuary** for homeless people in the winter.*



spectator [spékteitə:r] *n.*

A **spectator** is someone who watches something, especially a sports event.

→ *There were thousands of **spectators** at the big game.*

UNIT 14

Word List



asset [æset] *n.*

An **asset** is a skill or quality that is useful or valuable.

→ *The coach realized the boy's speed was an **asset** to the team.*



aspect [æspekt] *n.*

An **aspect** is one part or feature of something.

→ *I thought about the different **aspects** of owning two dogs.*



Braille [breil] *n.*

Braille is a system of raised patterns on paper that allows the blind to read.

→ *The boy enjoyed reading his favorite books written in **Braille**.*



bud [bʌd] *n.*

A **bud** is a part of a plant that turns into a flower or a leaf.

→ *Two weeks after planting the seed, a small **bud** appeared.*



coordinate [kouɔ́:rdənèit] *v.*

To **coordinate** things is to make different parts work together.

→ *Each skating team had to **coordinate** their movements for the show.*



disprove [disprúːv] *v.*

To **disprove** something means to show that it is not true.

→ *The scientist **disproved** the theory that the sun moved around the Earth.*



humanitarian [hjuːmæ̀nətɛ́əriən] *adj.*

If something is **humanitarian**, it is connected to helping people's lives.

→ *After the flood, several **humanitarian** organizations offered help.*



hypothesis [haipɑ́əəsis] *n.*

A **hypothesis** is an idea for something that has not been proved yet.

→ *The teacher did an experiment to prove whether his **hypothesis** was right.*



imprint [ímprint] *n.*

An **imprint** is an effect or lesson from an experience that is hard to forget.

→ *The experience of war left an **imprint** on his mind that troubled him.*



informative [infɔ́:rmətiv] *adj.*

When something is **informative**, it provides a lot of information.

→ *The travel guide had a lot of **informative** facts about the region.*



optic [áptik] *adj.*

When something is **optic**, it relates to the eyes or light.

→ *Her blindness was caused by a problem with her **optic** nerve.*



premise [prémis] *n.*

A **premise** is an idea on which something is based.

→ *The **premise** of the movie that Bobbi and I watched was unrealistic.*



rack [ræk] *n.*

A **rack** is an object with shelves that holds things.

→ *He stored his tools on a **rack**.*



Renaissance [rènəsɑ́:ns] *n.*

The **Renaissance** was a period between the 14th and 17th centuries.

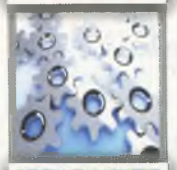
→ *Leonardo Da Vinci was a popular artist of the **Renaissance**.*



revere [riviə:r] *v.*

To **revere** something is to admire it greatly.

→ *The students **revere** their teacher, who has taught them a lot.*



simultaneous [sàiməltéiniəs] *adj.*

When something is **simultaneous**, it occurs at the same time as something else.

→ *The movement of the gears inside the watch was **simultaneous**.*



skeptic [sképtik] *n.*

A **skeptic** is a person who does not believe something.

→ *The scientist showed the **skeptic** that dinosaurs did exist by providing evidence.*



spatial [spéiʃəl] *adj.*

When something is **spatial**, it relates to the position and size of things.

→ *He was asked where the books were located to test his **spatial** ability.*



specify [spésəfài] *v.*

To **specify** is to describe something clearly.

→ *The poster didn't **specify** where the concert was taking place.*



wax [wæks] *n.*

Wax is a substance that is slightly shiny and melts when heated.

→ *The candles are made of **wax**.*

UNIT 15

Word List



accessory [æksésəri] *n.*

An **accessory** is a thing that is added to another thing to make it look better.

→ *The store sold colorful **accessories** like bags, sunglasses, and makeup.*



acquisition [ækwəzíʃən] *n.*

An **acquisition** is something that a person buys or gets in some way.

→ *Marty was happy with his new **acquisition**: a very fast bicycle.*



adequate [ædikwit] *adj.*

When something is **adequate**, it is good enough for something else.

→ *Without **adequate** notice of the road block, they will have to turn around.*



cardboard [ká:rdbɔ̀:rd] *n.*

Cardboard is a material made out of stiff paper. It is often used to make boxes.

→ *We packed our things into **cardboard** boxes and moved to our new home.*



dilemma [diléma] *n.*

A **dilemma** is a difficult situation in which a choice has to be made.

→ *Choosing either the tastier or healthier drink proved to be quite a **dilemma**.*



elaborate [ilæbərit] *adj.*

When something is **elaborate**, it contains a lot of details.

→ *She gave the teacher an **elaborate** explanation of her project.*



facilitate [fəsílətèit] *v.*

To **facilitate** something is to make it easier.

→ *To **facilitate** the meeting, Melissa used a simple computer program.*



fleet [fli:t] *n.*

A **fleet** is a group of ships.

→ *The **fleet** of ships spent a few days at the dock.*



grid [grid] *n.*

A **grid** is a pattern of squares with numbers and letters to find places on a map.

→ *We located our town using the **grid**.*



import [impɔ́:rt] *v.*

To **import** means to bring in a product from another country.

→ *Foods that have been **imported** are usually more expensive.*



infer [infə́:r] *v.*

To **infer** something is to decide it is true based on other information one has.

→ *By the position of the sun in the sky, she **inferred** that it was noon.*



inflate [inflèit] *v.*

To **inflate** something means to fill it up with air.

→ *I helped him **inflate** the balloons.*



innate [inèit] *adj.*

When something is **innate**, it is something that one is born with, it is not learned.

→ *He had the **innate** desire to please his teachers.*



marble [mɑ́:rbəl] *n.*

Marble is a type of rock that feels cold and is smooth when cut.

→ *The large house had floors made of **marble**.*



mast [mæst] *n.*

A **mast** is a long pole on a ship that holds the sail.

→ *The **mast** held both sails of the ship upright.*



nausea [nɔ́:ziə] *n.*

Nausea is the feeling of being sick to your stomach.

→ *The doctor said the medicine would help get rid of her **nausea**.*



naval [nèivəl] *adj.*

When something is **naval**, it relates to a country's navy or military ships.

→ *The country sent all of its **naval** forces to protect them.*



pouch [pautʃ] *n.*

A **pouch** is a small, flexible bag that is usually made of cloth.

→ *I keep my money in a small **pouch**.*



saturated [sætʃərèitid] *adj.*

If something is **saturated**, it is completely wet.

→ *Leigh's hair became **saturated** in the rain storm.*



update [ʌpdèit] *n.*

An **update** is an act of making something more modern.

→ *I'm doing an **update** on my personal phone directory.*

UNIT 16

Word List



addict [ædikt] *n.*

An **addict** is a person who cannot stop doing or having something.

→ *She was a coffee **addict**. She had more than three cups each day.*



archeological [à:rkiəlάdʒikəl] *adj.*

When something is **archeological**, it relates to archeology.

→ *They found **archeological** evidence that proved an ancient species of man.*



archeology [à:rkiάlədʒi] *n.*

Archeology is the study of ancient people through their artifacts.

→ *He studied **archeology** to learn more about ancient Egyptian culture.*



brainstorm [bréinstɔ̀:rm] *v.*

To **brainstorm** is to have a lot of ideas about a certain topic.

→ *The students met after school to **brainstorm** ideas for their assignment.*



budget [bʌ́dʒit] *n.*

A **budget** is the amount of money available to spend on something.

→ *His **budget** for food was very tight.*



chaotic [keiάtik] *adj.*

When something is **chaotic**, it is crazy, confused, and hectic.

→ *The first day of school can be **chaotic** for a new student.*



cite [sait] *v.*

To **cite** something is to mention it as an example or as proof of something.

→ *She **cited** six reasons that the school needed to build new classrooms.*



correspond [kɔ̀:rəspάnd] *v.*

To **correspond** is to match or to be similar to something.

→ *The boy's story didn't **correspond** with his mother's version.*



courtyard [kɔ́:rtjɑ̀:rd] *n.*

A **courtyard** is an outdoor area that is surrounded by the walls of a building.

→ *During the summer, the **courtyard** is a nice place to have lunch.*



estate [istéit] *n.*

An **estate** is a large area of land owned by a family or organization.

→ *He lived on his father's **estate** in the country.*



fraud [frɔːd] *n.*

Fraud is the crime of gaining money by lying or by tricking people.

→ *Experts say that credit card **fraud** increases around the holidays.*



hydrogen [háidrədʒən] *n.*

Hydrogen is a gas that has no taste, color, or smell.

→ *Balloons filled with **hydrogen** can easily float away if you aren't careful.*



integrity [intégrəti] *n.*

Integrity is honesty and good morals.

→ *The principal had a lot of **integrity**.*



knit [nit] *v.*

To knit is to make fabric by connecting strings together.

→ *My grandmother **knitted** me a sweater.*



outlook [áutlùk] *n.*

An outlook is a person's opinion or way of thinking about something.

→ *He changed his **outlook** about rats after he read a book about them.*



parachute [pǽrəʃùːt] *n.*

A parachute is a device that helps people and things fall to the ground safely.

→ *They used **parachutes** dropped from airplanes to send supplies to the civilians.*



prehistoric [priːhistɔ́ːrik] *adj.*

When something is prehistoric, it is from a time when there was no written history.

→ *The scientists found **prehistoric** pots used by the people in the area.*



proponent [prəpóunənt] *n.*

A proponent is a person who supports an idea or a plan.

→ *He was a **proponent** of using environmentally friendly products.*



refine [rifáin] *v.*

To refine something is to make it better by making changes.

→ *The principal **refined** his method of controlling students over the years.*



restrict [ristríkt] *v.*

To restrict is to limit something and prevent it from getting bigger.

→ *The club **restricted** the amount of members.*

UNIT 17

Word List



attorney [ətə́ːrni] *n.*

An **attorney** is one who gives others advice about the law.

→ *The **attorney** appeared in front of the judge for me.*



chronic [krάnik] *adj.*

When something is **chronic**, it happens over and over again over time.

→ *He had **chronic** pain in his chest and needed to see a doctor.*



discipline [disəplin] *n.*

Discipline is training that helps people follow the rules.

→ *One of the teacher's jobs is to teach her students **discipline**.*



donor [dóunər] *n.*

A **donor** is somebody who gives something to an organization.

→ *He was proud to be a blood **donor**.*



fellow [félou] *n.*

A **fellow** is someone who shares a job or quality with someone else.

→ *All of my **fellow** patients at the hospital have also complained about the food.*



gossip [gάsip] *n.*

Gossip is information that might be untrue but is still discussed anyway.

→ *The friends exchanged **gossip** about the people they knew in school.*



graduate [grǽdʒuèit] *v.*

To **graduate** from a school means to complete and pass all courses of study there.

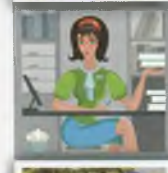
→ *At the end of the spring, my friends and I will **graduate** from high school.*



graffiti [grəfíːtiː] *n.*

Graffiti is words or drawings in public places.

→ *The wall was covered with colorful **graffiti**.*



guardian [gάːrdiən] *n.*

A **guardian** is someone who protects somebody or something.

→ *The librarians are the **guardians** of the books.*



implicate [ímpləkèit] *v.*

To **implicate** someone is to show that they have done a crime or something bad.

→ *The man was **implicated** in the theft at the store.*



kin [kin] *n.*

Kin is a person's family and relatives.

→ *His **kin** were all farmers.*



referee [rèfərí:] *n.*

A **referee** is a person who makes sure that the rules are followed in sports.

→ *The soccer player didn't agree with the **referee**.*



sever [sévə:r] *v.*

To **sever** something is to cut through it completely.

→ *He **severed** the string using scissors.*



shaft [ʃæft] *n.*

A **shaft** is a handle of a tool or weapon.

→ *The golf club had a long wooden **shaft** that he held in his hands.*



stab [stæb] *v.*

To **stab** means to cut someone or something with a sharp object like a knife.

→ *He **stabbed** the fork into the potato and passed it to his daughter.*



stimulus [stímjələs] *n.*

A **stimulus** is something that causes growth or activity.

→ *Having a lot of money is a **stimulus** for people to buy more things.*



suspicion [səspíʃən] *n.*

A **suspicion** is a feeling that something is possible or true in a crime.

→ *The police had a **suspicion** that the driver had stolen the purse.*



terminate [tə́:rmənèit] *v.*

To **terminate** something means to stop or end it.

→ *The trip was **terminated** after the car broke down.*



theme [θi:m] *n.*

A **theme** is the main subject of a book, movie, or painting.

→ *The students discussed the book's **theme** in class.*



tuition [tju:íʃən] *n.*

Tuition is the amount of money paid to go to a school.

→ *University **tuitions** have increased by fifty percent in the last five years.*

UNIT 18

Word List



aggressive [əgrésiv] *adj.*

If someone is **aggressive,** then they constantly want to fight.

→ *Nobody liked to play games with him because he was always too **aggressive**.*



amnesty [ǽmnəsti] *n.*

Amnesty is a pardon given to prisoners of war.

→ *She was denied **amnesty** for her involvement in the war.*



arena [əríːnə] *n.*

An **arena** is a building where people can watch sports and concerts.

→ *The new **arena** was all set to hold the championship match.*



auditorium [ɔ̀ːditɔ́ːriəm] *n.*

An **auditorium** is a large building used for public events.

→ *People have gathered at the school **auditorium** to watch the play.*



captive [kǽptiv] *n.*

A **captive** is a prisoner.

→ *The guards told the **captive** that there was no way he could escape the prison.*



combat [kámbæt] *n.*

Combat is fighting between two people or groups.

→ *The two warriors were locked in **combat**.*



commonplace [kámənplèis] *adj.*

If something is **commonplace,** then it is ordinary.

→ *There is nothing **commonplace** about the way Morris dresses.*



compound [kámpaund] *n.*

A **compound** is an enclosed area such as a prison or factory.

→ *The workers waited outside the **compound** for the gates to the factory to open.*



corps [kɔːr] *n.*

A **corps** is a division of a military force.

→ *The army had a **corps** of archers who trained apart from the regular soldiers.*



distract [distrǽkt] *v.*

To **distract** someone means to stop them from concentrating on something.

→ *The phone call **distracted** him so much that he forgot all about his homework.*



dumb [dʌm] *adj.*

If someone is **dumb**, they are unable to speak.

→ *She did not share the secret. She remained silent as if she were **dumb**.*



foe [fou] *n.*

A **foe** is an enemy or opponent.

→ *It was hard to believe that anyone could be his **foe**.*



hack [hæk] *v.*

To **hack** something means to cut it into uneven pieces.

→ *My uncle used the ax to **hack** the tree into many logs.*



meditate [médətèit] *v.*

To **meditate** means to focus or think deeply in silence.

→ *She liked to **meditate** for several hours of each day.*



nick [nik] *v.*

To **nick** someone means to cut them slightly with a sharp object.

→ *While cutting the carrots, the cook **nicked** his finger with the edge of his knife.*



provoke [prəvóuk] *v.*

To **provoke** someone means to annoy them on purpose to cause violence.

→ *The older boy **provoked** Paul by calling him mean names.*



realm [relm] *n.*

A **realm** is any area of activity or interest.

→ *He was not very active in the **realm** of business.*



reign [rein] *n.*

A **reign** is the period of time in which a ruler rules.

→ *The emperor's **reign** lasted for only two years.*



rust [rʌst] *n.*

Rust is a red and brown coating on iron objects caused by water and air.

→ *The old metal gate would not swing because the hinges were covered in **rust**.*



sacred [séikrid] *adj.*

If something is **sacred**, then it is worshipped and respected.

→ *One religion in India will not harm cows because it believes that they are **sacred**.*

UNIT 19

Word List



accordingly [əkɔ́:rdiŋli] *adv.*

If someone acts **accordingly,** they act in a way that is suitable.

→ *He feels like he did a good job, and his boss should pay him **accordingly**.*



anchor [ǽŋkər] *n.*

An **anchor** is a heavy object dropped from a boat to make it stay in one place.

→ *When the ship reached its destination, the crew dropped the **anchor**.*



buoy [bú:i] *n.*

A **buoy** is a floating sign that warns boats of dangerous areas.

→ *Don't steer the boat near those **buoys**. There are rocks underneath the water.*



catastrophe [kətǽstrəfi] *n.*

A **catastrophe** is an unexpected event that causes great suffering or damage.

→ *It was a **catastrophe** for my family when my dad lost his job.*



context [kɑ́ntekst] *n.*

Context is the situations that form the background of an event.

→ *They studied the **context** of the battle before giving their presentation.*



designate [dézigneit] *v.*

To **designate** someone or something means to give them a particular description.

→ *The famous lighthouse was **designated** a historical monument.*



distort [distɔ́:rt] *v.*

To **distort** something means to lie about it.

→ *His lawyer **distorted** the facts so that he would be set free.*



dock [dɑk] *n.*

A **dock** is an enclosed area where ships go to be loaded, unloaded, and repaired.

→ *The huge ship pulled into the **dock**, and the crew unloaded the cargo.*



fore [fɔ:r] *n.*

The **fore** of something is the front part of it.

→ *The teacher's desk is at the **fore** of the classroom.*



frequent [frí:kwənt] *adj.*

If something is **frequent,** then it happens or is done often.

→ *While Dad was sick, the doctor made **frequent** visits to his house.*



genuine [dʒénjuin] *adj.*

When something is **genuine**, it is true or real.

→ *After the painting was determined to be **genuine**, it sold for a million dollars.*



grease [gri:s] *n.*

Grease is an oily substance put on moving parts, so they work smoothly.

→ *When I was done working on the car, I had **grease** all over my hands.*



intricate [íntrəkit] *adj.*

When something is **intricate**, it has many small parts or details.

→ *The **intricate** painting on the quilt was very lovely.*



offset [ɔ́:fsèt] *v.*

To **offset** means to use one thing to cancel out the effect of another thing.

→ *Increased wages are **offset** by higher prices for goods.*



overlap [òuvərlǽp] *v.*

To **overlap** something means to cover a piece of it.

→ *The gift on top **overlaps** the other gift on the bottom.*



precipitate [prisípətèit] *v.*

To **precipitate** an event means to cause it to happen sooner than normal.

→ *The violent attack **precipitated** an all-out war.*



secondhand [sékəndhǽnd] *adj.*

When something is **secondhand**, it has been owned by someone else.

→ *Her **secondhand** jeans were a bit faded in the front.*



slot [slɑt] *n.*

A **slot** is a narrow opening in a machine or container.

→ *To operate the machine, put your coins into the **slot**.*



submerge [səbmə́:rdʒ] *v.*

To **submerge** something means to put it below the surface of a liquid.

→ *The whale **submerged** its huge body into the ocean.*



tactic [tǽktik] *n.*

A **tactic** is a careful plan to achieve something.

→ *Sam thought of a good **tactic** in order to attract more business.*

UNIT 20

Word List



aggregate [ǽgrəgit] *adj.*

When a number is **aggregate,** it is made up of smaller amounts added together.

→ *The company totaled its **aggregate** sales for the entire year.*



antibiotic [æ̀ntibaiátik] *n.*

An **antibiotic** is a medical drug used to kill bacteria and treat infections.

→ *The doctor gave me a shot of an **antibiotic** when I got the flu.*



circuit [sə́:rkit] *n.*

A **circuit** is a piece of an electronic device that allows electricity to flow.

→ *Be very careful not to shock yourself when fixing an electrical **circuit.***



complement [kámpləmènt] *v.*

To **complement** something or someone is to make them better.

→ *The wool scarf **complemented** her lovely eyes.*



compress [kəmprés] *v.*

To **compress** something means to press or squeeze it so that it takes up less space.

→ *I **compressed** my clothes to fit into a single suitcase.*



database [déitəbèis] *n.*

A **database** is a collection of data that is stored in a computer.

→ *The company has a **database** of all the names and accounts of their customers.*



equivalent [ikwívələnt] *n.*

An **equivalent** is an amount or value that is the same as another amount or value.

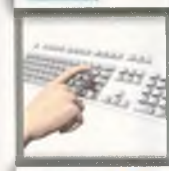
→ *I worked the **equivalent** of sixty hours this week.*



immune [imjú:n] *adj.*

When someone is **immune** to a disease, they cannot be affected by it.

→ *Children usually get shots to make them **immune** to certain diseases.*



input [ínpùt] *n.*

Input is information that is put into a computer.

→ *Type the **input** into the computer program.*



intimate [íntəmit] *adj.*

When a relationship is **intimate,** the two things are very closely connected.

→ *I only tell my secrets to my most **intimate** friends.*



magnet [mǽgnit] *n.*

A **magnet** is a piece of iron or other material which attracts iron toward it.

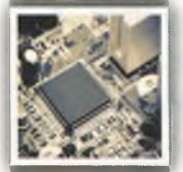
→ *I used a **magnet** to pick up the nails that were scattered on the floor.*



metabolism [mətǽbəlizəm] *n.*

A person's **metabolism** is the way chemical processes in their body use energy.

→ *If you exercise every day, your **metabolism** speeds up.*



microchip [máikroutʃip] *n.*

A **microchip** is a small device inside a computer that holds information.

→ *I can put more data on my computer if I buy a more powerful **microchip**.*



phase [feiz] *n.*

A **phase** is a stage in a process or the gradual development of something.

→ *The first **phase** in the recycling project involves finding volunteers to help out.*



pinch [pintʃ] *v.*

To **pinch** means to take a piece of skin between one's fingers and squeeze.

→ *I **pinched** my nose, so I couldn't smell the odor from the garbage.*



prevalent [prévələnt] *adj.*

When something is **prevalent**, it is common.

→ *Growing a beard is more **prevalent** behavior in men than women.*



quantum [kwántəm] *adj.*

When something is **quantum**, it relates to the behavior of atomic particles.

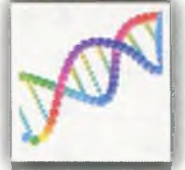
→ *The physics student studied **quantum** mechanics.*



ratio [réiʃou] *n.*

A **ratio** is a relationship between two things expressed in numbers or amounts.

→ *The boy to girl **ratio** is one to three.*



spiral [spáiərəl] *n.*

A **spiral** is a shape which winds round and round in a larger and larger circle.

→ *A strand of DNA looks like two interlocking **spirals**.*



viral [váiərəl] *adj.*

When something is **viral**, it is a disease or infection that is caused by a virus.

→ *The girl was in bed for a week when she had a **viral** infection.*

UNIT 21

Word List



astounded [əstáundid] *adj.*

If you are **astounded,** you are very surprised.

→ *I was **astounded** that Monica won the art competition.*



attribute [ætribjù:t] *n.*

An **attribute** is a characteristic of a person or thing.

→ *He isn't very clever, but he does have some other positive **attributes**.*



bilingual [bailíŋgwəl] *adj.*

If someone is **bilingual,** then they can speak two languages.

→ *Since you already know English, after learning French you'll be **bilingual**.*



clone [kloun] *n.*

A **clone** is an identical copy of a living creature.

→ *Scientists recently made a **clone** of a sheep.*



colloquial [kəlóukwiəl] *adj.*

Colloquial describes informal words that are more suitable for speech than writing.

→ *I find it difficult to understand people if they use **colloquial** language.*



cosmetics [kɑzmétiks] *n.*

Cosmetics are substances that make the face and skin more beautiful.

→ *Girls often look nicer when they don't use so many **cosmetics**.*



dash [dæʃ] *v.*

To **dash** means to run or move quickly.

→ *Helen **dashed** up the stairs, so she wouldn't be late for her appointment.*



disgust [disgʌ́st] *n.*

Disgust is a feeling of distaste and anger caused by something rude or unpleasant.

→ *He felt **disgust** toward his date because she had such terrible eating habits.*



fluorescent [flùərésnt] *adj.*

If something is **fluorescent,** it is such a bright color that it seems to give off light.

→ *She highlighted the key words in the document with a **fluorescent** yellow pen.*



furious [fjúəriəs] *adj.*

If you are **furious,** you are extremely angry.

→ *My father was **furious** when he read my bad school report.*



gulf [gʌlf] *n.*

A **gulf** is a gap between people who do not understand each other.

→ *There has been a **gulf** between James and Tony since their parents died.*



humanities [hju:mænətiz] *n.*

Humanities are subjects which analyze human ideas, such as history and literature.

→ *Jennifer has always been more interested in **humanities** than science.*



knot [nɑt] *n.*

A **knot** is made when you tie the ends of rope or cord together.

→ *He tied a **knot** in his shoelaces, so they wouldn't come off during the race.*



linguist [liŋgwist] *n.*

A **linguist** is someone who studies languages.

→ *Tony is a good **linguist** and speaks four different languages.*



participant [pɑ:rtisəpənt] *n.*

A **participant** is someone who joins in a social event or competition.

→ *There were thousands of **participants** in this year's marathon.*



plausible [plɔ:zəbəl] *adj.*

If something is **plausible**, it is reasonable or possible.

→ *It is **plausible** that Jack isn't here today because he is sick.*



ritual [ritʃuəl] *n.*

A **ritual** is a formal custom that people do regularly.

→ *Ken was very interested to learn about the religious **rituals** of the natives.*



sibling [sibliŋ] *n.*

A ***sibling*** is a brother or sister.

→ *Jane has two **siblings**, an older brother and a younger sister.*



skinny [skĭni] *adj.*

If someone is **skinny**, they are extremely thin.

→ *Polly is very **skinny**. I think she needs to eat more.*



vague [veig] *adj.*

If something is **vague**, it is not clear, and it gives very few details.

→ *I asked him about his mother's health, but he was very **vague** about it.*

UNIT 22

Word List



acid [ǽsid] *n.*

An **acid** is a chemical that can burn or dissolve other substances.

→ *In chemistry class, we mixed two **acids** together and watched the reaction.*



administration [ədmìnəstréiʃən] *n.*

An **administration** is the group of people who manage a company or organization.

→ *She hoped she could be promoted to a job in the **administration**.*



administrative [ədmínəstrèitiv] *adj.*

Administrative describes anything related to managing a company or organization.

→ *I work as an **administrative** assistant to the owner of the company.*



biotechnology [bàiouteknɑ́lədʒi] *n.*

Biotechnology is the use of living parts, such as cells, in industry and technology.

→ *Researchers at the **biotechnology** company use bacteria to make medicine.*



cholesterol [kəléstəròul] *n.*

Cholesterol is a substance in fat, tissues, and blood of all animals.

→ *When people have too much **cholesterol**, they are at a high risk for heart problems.*



coalition [kòuəlíʃən] *n.*

A **coalition** is a group of people or organizations working for a common purpose.

→ *The companies formed a **coalition** to make trade less expensive.*



deceptive [diséptiv] *adj.*

When something is **deceptive**, it encourages one to believe something that is false.

→ *The scary-looking man's appearance is **deceptive**, but he is actually very nice.*



diabetes [dàiəbí:tis] *n.*

Diabetes is a medical condition where a person has too much sugar in their blood.

→ *Overweight people are more likely to suffer from **diabetes** than slimmer ones.*



eliminate [ilímənèit] *v.*

To **eliminate** something that is unwanted means to completely remove it.

→ *Wearing a seatbelt **eliminates** some of the dangers of driving a car.*



erosion [iróuʒən] *n.*

Erosion is the destruction of rock or soil due to flowing water or weather.

→ *Canyons are formed because rivers of fast-moving water caused **erosion**.*



ethics [éθiks] *n.*

Ethics are moral beliefs or rules about right or wrong.

→ *The act of stealing certainly doesn't go against some people's* ***ethics****.*



explicit [iksplísit] *adj.*

If something is **explicit**, it is very clear, open, and truthful.

→ *The man gave a very* ***explicit*** *account of the car accident.*



framework [fréimwə̀:rk] *n.*

A **framework** is a set of rules or ideas that people use to solve problems.

→ *His ideas fit into the* ***framework*** *of a successful business plan.*



manufacture [mæ̀njəfǽktʃə:r] *v.*

To **manufacture** something means to make it in a factory.

→ *My father's company* ***manufactures*** *steel building materials.*



mechanism [mékənìzəm] *n.*

A **mechanism** is a part of a machine that performs a certain function.

→ *I can't open my car door because the locking* ***mechanism*** *is broke.*



minimize [mínəmàiz] *v.*

To **minimize** means to reduce something to the lowest possible level.

→ *I checked my homework twice to* ***minimize*** *errors I might have made.*



nectar [néktər] *n.*

Nectar is a sweet liquid produced by flowers that bees and other insects collect.

→ *Bees use* ***nectar*** *to make their honey.*



notion [nóuʃən] *n.*

A **notion** is an idea or belief about something.

→ *I have a* ***notion*** *that this route would get us to the beach.*



prone [proun] *adj.*

When things are **prone** to some bad thing, they are likely affected by it.

→ *Some people are more* ***prone*** *to catching colds than others.*



straightforward [strèitfɔ́:rwərd] *adj.*

When something is **straightforward**, it is good because it is easy to understand.

→ *The teacher's grading system was* ***straightforward*** *and fair.*

UNIT 23

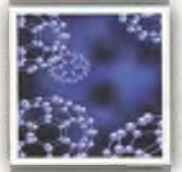
Word List



astronomical [æstrənɑ́mikkəl] *adj.*

If something is **astronomical**, then it is extremely large.

→ *It's an **astronomical** distance between the Milky Way galaxy and the nearest galaxy.*



atom [ætəm] *n.*

An **atom** is the smallest unit of a substance.

→ *A molecule consists of a combination of two or more **atoms**.*



breadth [bredθ] *n.*

Breadth is the distance from one side to the other side of something.

→ *The **breadth** of the northern wall of the house is twenty meters.*



circumference [sərkʌ́mfərəns] *n.*

A **circumference** is the distance completely around a circular object.

→ *The **circumference** of the Earth is obviously much larger than a baseball's.*



comet [kɑ́mit] *n.*

A **comet** is an object in space made of ice and rock with a tail of glowing dust.

→ ***Comets** take many decades to complete an orbit around a star.*



crater [krèitər] *n.*

A **crater** is a large hole in a planet's or moon's surface.

→ *They could clearly see the big **crater** on the moon through the telescope.*



crescent [krésənt] *n.*

A **crescent** is the curved shape lit on the moon's face during its early and late stages.

→ *Ten days ago the entire moon was bright, but now only a small **crescent** is shining.*



debris [dəbrí:] *n.*

Debris is the small pieces scattered from something wrecked or destroyed.

→ *The **debris** from the cube scattered on the floor.*



despair [dispɛ̀ər] *n.*

Despair is the complete loss of hope.

→ *After the other company won the account, our salespeople were filled with **despair**.*



embed [imbɛ́d] *v.*

To **embed** something means to place it firmly within a surrounding thing.

→ *The logger **embedded** the ax into the wood after chopping several logs.*



fragment [frǽgmənt] *n.*

A **fragment** is a small part of something.

→ *After the light broke, there were **fragments** of glass to clean up.*



galaxy [gǽləksi] *n.*

A **galaxy** is any extremely large collection of star systems.

→ *Our solar system is located in the outer area of our **galaxy**.*



gigantic [dʒaigǽntik] *adj.*

If something is **gigantic**, then it is extremely large.

→ *Some dinosaurs were so **gigantic** that they were the size of buildings.*



gloom [glu:m] *n.*

Gloom is a state of being almost completely dark.

→ *In the **gloom** of the morning, it was difficult to see the boat on the lake.*



radiate [réidièit] *v.*

To **radiate** means to send out energy or heat.

→ *The heat from the fireplace **radiated** throughout the room.*



roam [roum] *v.*

To **roam** means to move around without a plan or purpose.

→ *All day the cows **roamed** around the field eating grass.*



solitary [sɑ́litèri] *adj.*

If something is **solitary**, then it is lonely or the only one.

→ *The only thing in the room was a **solitary** chair.*



spectrum [spéktrəm] *n.*

The ***spectrum*** is the full range of color ranging from red to violet.

→ *You can see the entire **spectrum** in a rainbow.*



sphere [sfiə:r] *n.*

A **sphere** is a three-dimensional round shape, like a ball.

→ *The balloons were inflated into a variety of colorful **spheres**.*



status [stéitəs] *n.*

Status is the position of something or someone in relation to others.

→ *She had achieved the **status** of being the smartest girl in the class.*

UNIT 24

Word List



bankrupt [bǽŋkrʌpt] *adj.*

If someone is **bankrupt**, then they are unable to pay their debts.

→ *The store had few customers and soon went **bankrupt**.*



conform [kənfɔ́:rm] *v.*

To **conform** to rules or laws is to obey them.

→ *The new student had to **conform** to the school's dress code.*



employ [implɔ́i] *v.*

To **employ** someone means to give work to them.

→ *The bookstore **employed** two full-time clerks.*



expel [ikspél] *v.*

To **expel** someone means to force them to leave a place.

→ *Since he would not follow the rules, the principal had to **expel** the student.*



extension [iksténʃən] *n.*

An **extension** is a part added to something to give it more time or space.

→ *My parents decided to add an **extension** to our house for the new baby.*



forthcoming [fɔ̀:rəkʌ́miŋ] *adj.*

If something is **forthcoming**, then it is about to happen in the future.

→ *Some economists predicted that the **forthcoming** world economy would be severe.*



furnish [fə́:rniʃ] *v.*

To furnish means to put **furniture** in a house or room.

→ *Most homes are **furnished** with tables, chairs, and beds.*



hygiene [hάidʒi:n] *n.*

Hygiene is the conditions or methods needed for health and cleanliness.

→ *People who brush their teeth at least twice a day are practicing good **hygiene**.*



hygienic [hàidʒínik] *adj.*

If something is **hygienic**, then it is clean and unlikely to cause disease.

→ *My sister works very hard to keep her entire home as **hygienic** as possible.*



landlord [lǽndlɔ̀:rd] *n.*

A **landlord** is a man who rents property to a person.

→ *The **landlord** collected everyone's rent money on the first day of every month.*



lease [li:s] *v.*

To **lease** means to rent property, usually an apartment or land.

→ *When the family first **leased** the apartment, the rent was very low.*



mandatory [mǽndətɔ̀:ri] *adj.*

If something is **mandatory**, then it is required by law.

→ *It's **mandatory** that everyone be at least sixteen to drive a car in the US.*



mend [mend] *v.*

To **mend** something means to fix it when it is broken or damaged.

→ *Mother **mended** the rip in my pants with a piece of cloth.*



mortgage [mɔ́:rgidʒ] *n.*

A **mortgage** is a loan for property, especially homes and businesses.

→ *When they bought their new home, the married couple had to sign a **mortgage**.*



personnel [pə̀:rsənél] *n.*

Personnel are employees in a business.

→ *When business increased, we had to hire more **personnel**.*



plumbing [plʌ́miŋ] *n.*

Plumbing is the system of pipes used in a home to supply water.

→ *When the **plumbing** stopped working, no one was allowed to use the toilets.*



tenant [ténənt] *n.*

A **tenant** is a person who rents property from a landlord.

→ *The new **tenants** moved into the house across the street.*



trendy [trέndi] *adj.*

If something is **trendy**, then it is very popular and new.

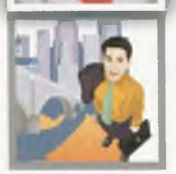
→ *Carlo bought a **trendy** new car.*



utility [ju:tíləti] *n.*

A **utility** is a business that supplies services such as water or electricity.

→ *If you don't pay the **utilities**, you may have your electricity turned off.*



whereby [*h*wɛə:rbâi] *conj.*

Whereby means by which or through which.

→ *The mayor had a new bridge built **whereby** the citizens could cross the river.*

UNIT 25

Word List



aesthetic [əseétik] *adj.*

If something is **aesthetic**, then it is concerned with a love of beauty.

→ *The dresses were noteworthy for their **aesthetic** design.*



arrogant [ǽrəgənt] *adj.*

If someone is **arrogant**, they think that they are more important than others.

→ *He is very **arrogant**. Even though he's not the boss, he tells everyone what to do.*



bias [báiəs] *n.*

A **bias** is a person's likelihood to like one thing more than another thing.

→ *The mothers had a natural **bias** for their own child's picture.*



canyon [kǽnjən] *n.*

A **canyon** is a narrow valley with steep walls through which a river often flows.

→ *The **canyon** was so deep that the ground inside was covered in shadow.*



creek [kri:k] *n.*

A **creek** is a stream or small river.

→ *Only small fish lived in the shallow waters of the **creek**.*



drill [dril] *n.*

A **drill** is a tool with a point that spins in order to make a hole.

→ *The carpenter used the **drill** to make several holes in the wood.*



executive [igzékjətiv] *n.*

An **executive** is the top manager of a business.

→ *After twenty years at the company, he finally became the **executive**.*



fatigue [fətí:g] *n.*

Fatigue is a feeling of extreme tiredness.

→ *After three days with little sleep, she was feeling a lot of **fatigue**.*



incline [inklain] *n.*

An **incline** is a sharp rise in something, especially a hill or mountain.

→ *This mountain has one of the steepest **inclines** in the world.*



nasty [nǽsti] *adj.*

If something is **nasty**, then it is not nice or pleasant.

→ *The rotten apple left a **nasty** taste inside her mouth.*



perceive [pərsíːv] *v.*

To **perceive** something means to be aware of it.

→ *He was talking loudly, so he did not **perceive** that the music had stopped.*



primate [práimeit] *n.*

A **primate** is a type of mammal that includes monkeys, apes, and humans.

→ ***Primates** use their hands for such tasks as swinging from branches.*



primitive [prímətiv] *adj.*

If something is **primitive**, then it is simple, basic, and not very developed.

→ *The computers of the 1980s are **primitive** compared to those of todays.*



stereotype [stériətàip] *n.*

A **stereotype** is a general but often incorrect idea about a person or thing.

→ *There's a **stereotype** that pigs are dirty animals. But they are rather clean.*



sticky [stíki] *adj.*

If something is **sticky**, then it is covered with a substance that things stick to.

→ *Place the **sticky** part of the tape against the paper, so it will cling to the wall.*



termite [tə́ːrmait] *n.*

A **termite** is an insect that lives in groups and feeds on wood.

→ *The wood we found was full of **termites**.*



thereby [ðɛ̀əːrbái] *adv.*

If something happens **thereby** an action, then it is the result of that action.

→ *He didn't score a goal, **thereby** ending his chance at setting a record.*



trail [treil] *n.*

A **trail** is a path through a wild area.

→ *A narrow **trail** cut through the field and over the hills.*



twig [twig] *n.*

A **twig** is a short and thin branch from a tree or bush.

→ *They started the fire with a handful of dry **twigs**.*



welfare [wélfɛ̀əːr] *n.*

Welfare is the health and happiness of a person or group.

→ *Having plenty of clean water is necessary for the **welfare** of people.*

UNIT 26

Word List



behalf [bihǽf] *n.*

If something is done on one's **behalf**, it is done for that person by another.

→ *The original speaker was sick, so his son gave the speech on his **behalf**.*



flap [flæp] *v.*

To **flap** means to move quickly up and down or from side to side.

→ *The tiny bird **flapped** its wings and ate from the flowers.*



glacier [gléiʃər] *n.*

A **glacier** is a large piece of ice that moves very slowly.

→ *The North Pole is covered by a huge **glacier**.*



globe [gloub] *n.*

The **globe** refers to the Earth.

→ *Water covers most of the **globe**.*



horizontal [hɔ̀:rəzɑ́ntl] *adj.*

When something is **horizontal**, it is flat and level with the ground.

→ *The Russian flag has three **horizontal** stripes of white, blue, and red.*



hum [hʌm] *v.*

To **hum** means to make a low, continuous noise.

→ *The man **hummed** his favorite song.*



inventory [ínvəntɔ̀:ri] *n.*

An **inventory** is a supply of something.

→ *Gwen was checking the **inventory** to make sure we had what we needed.*



inward [ínwərd] *adj.*

If a thought or feeling is **inward**, it is not expressed or shown to others.

→ *She had an **inward** feeling of guilt when she lied to her mother.*



loaf [louf] *n.*

A **loaf** of bread is bread shaped and baked in one piece.

→ *Could you please buy a **loaf** of bread for sandwiches?*



oracle [ɔ́(:)rəkəl] *n.*

An **oracle** is person who speaks with gods and gives advice about the future.

→ *The king went to the **oracle** to ask if going to war was a good idea.*



orbit [ɔ́:rbit] *v.*

To **orbit** something means to move around it in a continuous, curving path.

→ *The moon **orbits** the Earth.*



overview [óuvərvjù:] *n.*

An **overview** is a general description of a situation.

→ *My brother gave me an **overview** of the important parts of the book.*



preview [prí:vjù:] *n.*

A **preview** is an opportunity to see something before it is available to the public.

→ *The band played us a **preview** of their new song.*



previous [prí:viəs] *adj.*

If something is **previous**, then it happened earlier in time or order.

→ *He turned back to the **previous** page to read the paragraph again.*



provide [prəváid] *v.*

To **provide** something means to supply it.

→ *Each student was **provided** with a test and three sharp pencils.*



recur [rikə́:r] *v.*

To **recur** means to happen more than once.

→ *Burglaries seem to **recur** over and over in our neighborhood.*



relevant [réləvənt] *adj.*

When something is **relevant**, it is important to a certain person or situation.

→ *The thirty-year-old book about politics is still **relevant** to our society today.*



rite [rait] *n.*

A **rite** is a traditional ceremony carried out by a particular group or society.

→ *Special masks are worn during the **rite** when a new baby is born.*



stall [stɔ:l] *v.*

To **stall** means to stop a process and continue it at a later time.

→ *If you give the car a push, it won't **stall**.*



supernatural [sù:pərnǽtʃərəl] *adj.*

If something is **supernatural**, it is not real or explainable by natural law.

→ *The dragon had **supernatural** powers such as flying and breathing fire.*

UNIT 27

Word List



adapt [ədǽpt] *v.*

To **adapt** means to change in order to deal with a new situation or addition.

→ *When he went to the new town, he had to **adapt** to all the weather changes.*



biological [bàiəlάdʒikəl] *adj.*

Biological describes the process of life and living things.

→ *In science, we learned about the **biological** process of bacterial growth.*



cellular [séljələr] *adj.*

When something is **cellular,** it relates to the cells of animals or plants.

→ *She used a microscope to see the activity at a **cellular** level.*



dynamic [dainǽmik] *adj.*

When people are **dynamic,** they are lively and have creative ideas.

→ *The new, **dynamic** employee came up with a good way to juggle his work load.*



fantasy [fǽntəsi] *n.*

A **fantasy** is a pleasant situation that people think about but is unlikely to happen.

→ *Becoming an astronaut is a **fantasy** shared by many children.*



heredity [hirédəti] *n.*

Heredity is the process of passing on features from parents to children.

→ *The boy's face is similar to his father's because of **heredity**.*



internal [intə́:rnl] *adj.*

When something is **internal,** it exists or happens inside a person, object, or place.

→ *We removed the outer case to reveal the computer's **internal** wires.*



minimal [mínəməl] *adj.*

When something is **minimal,** it is very small.

→ *My lazy husband does a **minimal** amount of work around the house.*



pioneer [pàiəníər] *n.*

A **pioneer** is a person who is the first to discover or be involved in something.

→ *He was a **pioneer** of computer programming.*



prescribe [priskráib] *v.*

To **prescribe** medicine means to tell someone to take it.

→ *When I was sick, the doctor **prescribed** me flu medicine.*



respective [rispéktiv] *adj.*

When things are **respective**, they relate separately to each person just mentioned.

→ *The boxers were told to return to their **respective** corners.*



revive [riváiv] *v.*

To **revive** someone or something means to restore health or life to them.

→ *She **revived** the feeling of warmth in her leg by rubbing it softly.*



rigid [rídʒid] *adj.*

When rules or systems are **rigid**, they are severe because they cannot be changed.

→ *Societies often have **rigid** rules about the way that people are supposed to act.*



sequence [sí:kwəns] *n.*

A **sequence** is a number of events or things that come one after another.

→ *The dominos fell in a **sequence** of one after another.*



substitute [sʌ́bstitjù:t] *v.*

To **substitute** something or someone means to have them take the place of another.

→ *When I ran out of juice, I had to **substitute** water to drink in the morning.*



surgeon [sə́:rdʒən] *n.*

A **surgeon** is a doctor who is trained to do surgery.

→ *The **surgeon** operated on the old man's heart.*



therapy [θérəpi] *n.*

Therapy is treatment for a particular physical or mental illness or condition.

→ *After she broke her legs, she used physical **therapy** to learn how to walk again.*



transfer [trænsfə́:r] *v.*

To **transfer** something means to move it from one place to another.

→ *The family **transferred** the groceries from the shopping cart to the car.*



transition [trænzíʃən] *n.*

A **transition** is a process where there is a change from one form to another.

→ *The weather gets colder during the **transition** from summer to autumn.*



transplant [trænsplænt] *n.*

A **transplant** is an operation in which a damaged part of one's body is replaced.

→ *The sick child needed a heart **transplant** to live.*

UNIT 28

Word List



aquarium [əkwéəriəm] *n.*

An **aquarium** is a building where fish and underwater animals are kept.

→ *We took a trip to the **aquarium** and saw a scary shark.*



arbitrary [á:rbitrèri] *adj.*

If something is **arbitrary,** it is not based on any plan or system, so it seems random.

→ *The classroom had many **arbitrary** rules that made me confused.*



autobiography [ɔ̀:təbaiάgrəfi] *n.*

An **autobiography** is a true story of a person's life written by that person.

→ *I read an **autobiography** about my favorite entertainer.*



convention [kənvénʃən] *n.*

A **convention** is behavior that is considered to be common or polite.

→ *In the US, a popular **convention** is to shake hands when you meet someone.*



gracious [gréiʃəs] *adj.*

If someone is **gracious,** then they are kind and helpful to those who need it.

→ *The operator was **gracious** enough to help me find his number.*



improve [imprú:v] *v.*

To **improve** something means to make it better.

→ *He studied hard to **improve** his test scores from the previous year.*



insulate [insəlèit] *v.*

To **insulate** something means to protect it from heat, cold, or noise.

→ *People can conserve energy by **insulating** their houses.*



intrigue [intrí:g] *v.*

To **intrigue** means to cause an interest in something or someone.

→ *Her mysterious past **intrigued** her new friend.*



longevity [lɑndʒévəti] *n.*

Longevity is the ability to live for a long time.

→ *Sea turtles have an amazing **longevity**.*



misplace [mispléis] *v.*

To **misplace** something means to lose it.

→ *I **misplaced** my wallet, and I didn't find it until a week later.*



naughty [nɔ́:ti] *adj.*

When children are **naughty**, they behave badly or do not do what they are told.

→ *The boy had to go to his room because he was being **naughty**.*



norm [nɔ:rm] *n.*

A **norm** is a way of behaving that is considered normal in a particular society.

→ *Wearing a heavy coat all summer is not considered a **norm** in the desert.*



orangutan [ɔ:rǽŋutæ̀n] *n.*

An **orangutan** is a large ape with red and brown hair and long arms.

→ ***Orangutans** use their long arms to swing from trees.*



overload [òuvərlóud] *v.*

To **overload** something means to put more things into it than it is meant to hold.

→ *If you **overload** the truck, it might crash.*



philanthropy [filǽnərəpi] *n.*

Philanthropy is the act of helping others, without wanting anything in return.

→ *The wealthy business owner is well known for his acts of **philanthropy**.*



probe [proub] *v.*

To **probe** into something means to ask questions to discover facts about it.

→ *The bank **probed** into his financial history to see if he qualified for a loan.*



recipient [risípiənt] *n.*

A **recipient** of something is the person who receives it.

→ *I was the **recipient** of four phone calls today.*



reptile [réptail] *n.*

A **reptile** is a cold-blooded animal that lays eggs and has skin covered with scales.

→ *Lizards are my favorite type of **reptile**.*



thrive [θraiv] *v.*

To **thrive** means to do well and be successful, healthy, or strong.

→ *He may be an old man, but he continues to **thrive**.*



ultimate [ʌ́ltəmit] *adj.*

When something is **ultimate**, it is the final result or aim of a long series of events.

→ *By trying hard in school, I will reach my **ultimate** goal of becoming a doctor.*

UNIT 29

Word List



antique [æntíːk] *adj.*

If something is **antique**, it is very old and rare, and therefore valuable.

→ *My grandmother's **antique** rocking chair is worth a lot of money.*



applicant [ǽplikənt] *n.*

An **applicant** is someone who writes a request to be considered for a job or prize.

→ *Lots of **applicants** came into the store when the job position became available.*



artifact [ɑ́ːrtəfæ̀kt] *n.*

An **artifact** is an old object made by humans that is historically interesting.

→ *We studied **artifacts** from an ancient Chinese settlement.*



authentic [ɔːθéntik] *adj.*

When something is **authentic**, it is not false or a copy of the original.

→ *We ate **authentic** Italian food on our vacation to Rome.*



chronology [krənɑ́lədʒi] *n.*

The **chronology** of a series of past events is when they happened.

→ *We learned the **chronology** of World War II in history class.*



diplomat [dípləmæ̀t] *n.*

A **diplomat** is a representative of a country who works with another country.

→ *The Spanish **diplomat** discussed trade issues with officials in Peru.*



epic [épik] *n.*

An **epic** is a long book, poem, or movie about a period of time or a great event.

→ *The poet wrote an **epic** about the great discoveries of the past thousand years.*



excerpt [éksəːrpt] *n.*

An **excerpt** is a short piece of writing or music taken from a larger piece.

→ *I didn't listen to the entire symphony online, but I did play an **excerpt**.*



fossil [fɑ́sl] *n.*

A **fossil** is the hard remains of a prehistoric animal or plant.

→ *The expert arranged the **fossils** to build the skeleton of the dinosaur.*



humiliate [hjuːmílièit] *v.*

To **humiliate** someone means to make them feel ashamed and embarrassed.

→ *I was **humiliated** when I tripped and fell down in front of the whole school.*



lyric [lírik] *adj.*

When a poem is considered **lyric**, it is written in a simple and direct style.

→ *I enjoy reading and creating my own **lyric** poetry.*



majesty [mǽdʒisti] *n.*

Majesty is supreme greatness or authority.

→ *You should address the king and queen as your **majesty**.*



monarch [mánərk] *n.*

The **monarch** of a country is the king, queen, emperor, or empress.

→ *The **monarch** lived in a beautiful palace with a grand gate.*



precede [prisíːd] *v.*

To **precede** something means to come before it.

→ *The hurricane was **preceded** by a moment of still wind and clear sky.*



punctual [pʌ́ŋktʃuəl] *adj.*

When someone is **punctual**, they do something or arrive at the right time.

→ *My mother hates being late. She is the most **punctual** person I know.*



recruit [rikrúːt] *v.*

To **recruit** people means to select them to join or work for an organization.

→ *We successfully **recruited** someone to be the new manager.*



refund [ríːfʌnd] *n.*

A **refund** is money given back to a person when an item is returned to a store.

→ *I asked for a **refund** because the shoes I bought were too tight.*



register [rédʒəstəːr] *n.*

A **register** is an official list or record of people or things.

→ *At a wedding there is **register** for all of the guests to sign.*



renown [rináun] *n.*

Renown is the quality of being well known due to having done good things.

→ *Michael is a singer of great **renown** in New Zealand.*



tusk [tʌsk] *n.*

A **tusk** is a long, curved, pointed tooth of an elephant, boar, or walrus.

→ *Sadly, some people hunt elephants and remove their **tusks** to sell them.*

UNIT 30

Word List



burden [bə́:rdn] *n.*

A **burden** is a serious or difficult responsibility.

→ *Children who do not behave are a **burden** to their parents.*



compromise [kámprəmàiz] *v.*

To **compromise** is to agree to something that is not exactly what you want.

→ *We both **compromised** about the game we decided to play.*



craft [kræft] *v.*

To **craft** something is to make it using skill.

→ *She **crafted** the bookcase out of solid pine wood and then painted it.*



crook [kruk] *n.*

A **crook** is someone who is not honest or who commits crimes.

→ *The manager was arrested by the police for being a **crook**.*



currency [kə́:rənsi] *n.*

Currency is the form of money used in a certain place.

→ *Elizabeth had to exchange her dollars for foreign **currency**.*



enigma [inígmə] *n.*

An **enigma** is someone or something that is mysterious or hard to understand.

→ *The theft of the paintings is an **enigma** to the investigators.*



fragile [frǽdʒəl] *adj.*

When people or things are **fragile**, they are not strong and can be damaged easily.

→ *The **fragile** glassware was carefully packed into boxes.*



hybrid [háibrid] *n.*

A **hybrid** is a mixture of different things or styles.

→ *In Greek mythology, a centaur is a **hybrid** of a man and a horse.*



innocence [ínəsns] *n.*

Innocence is a lack of experience of difficult or complex things in life.

→ *Everyone who met her found her **innocence** to be charming.*



merge [mə:rdʒ] *v.*

To **merge** two things is to combine them into one whole thing.

→ *The storm clouds **merged** into one large menacing cloud that filled the sky.*



moderate [mɑ́dərèit] *adj.*

When something is **moderate**, it is not too big or too small in size or amount.

→ *It takes a **moderate** amount of patience to be around small children all day.*



overwhelm [òuvərhwélm] *v.*

To **overwhelm** is to exist in such a large amount that someone cannot deal with it.

→ *The amount of homework her teacher assigned has **overwhelmed** her.*



perception [pərsépʃən] *n.*

A **perception** of a situation is a way of thinking about it or understanding it.

→ *Since he couldn't see, his **perception** of life was much different than mine.*



reunion [ri:jú:njən] *n.*

A **reunion** is the meeting of people or things that have been separated.

→ *Every summer we have a family **reunion** at the lake.*



rig [rig] *v.*

To **rig** something means to dishonestly arrange it.

→ *The bad politician **rigged** the election so that he would win.*



shiver [ʃívə:r] *n.*

A **shiver** is a shaking movement the body makes when someone is cold or scared.

→ *I got **shivers** on my way home because it was so cold.*



sociable [sóuʃəbəl] *adj.*

When someone is **sociable**, they are friendly.

→ *Many of my good friends are **sociable**, but I am shy.*



talkative [tɔ́:kətiv] *adj.*

When someone is **talkative**, they talk a lot.

→ *My aunt is very **talkative** whenever she is on the phone.*



tow [tou] *v.*

To **tow** something is to pull it.

→ *The truck was **towing** a trailer behind it.*



tramp [træmp] *v.*

To **tramp** is to put your feet down in a loud, heavy way as you walk.

→ *The baby **tramped** across the floor as he was learning to walk.*

Index

A

abbey 114
abundant 14
accessory 92
accordingly 116
accountant 62
acid 134
acquisition 92
acute 68
adapt 164
addict 98
adept 50
adequate 92
adjoin 14
administration 134
administrative 134
administrator 26
aesthetic 152
affluent 26
aggregate 122
aggression 68
aggressive 110
allot 8
altitude 38
amnesty 110
ample 14
analytic 20
anchor 116
anthropology 74
antibiotic 122
antique 176
appall 8
applaud 74
applicant 176
appoint 74
aquarium 170
aquatic 44
arbitrary 170
archaic 56
archeological 98
archeology 98
arena 110
arid 14
arrogant 152
artifact 176
aspect 86
assert 20
assess 32
asset 86
astonish 32
astounded 128
astronomical 140
atom 140
attorney 104
attribute 128
audit 26
auditorium 110
authentic 176
autobiography 170
automate 26

B

bachelor 20
bankrupt 146
banquet 68
barren 50
behalf 158
benevolent 56
bias 152
bilingual 128
biography 68
biological 164
biosphere 44
biotechnology 134
bizarre 44
boost 68
Braille 86
brainstorm 98
brass 56
breadth 140
bribe 26
brook 80
bud 86
budget 98
buoy 116
burden 182

A

cache 8
calculus 20
canyon 152
capitalism 56
capitalist 62
captive 110
cardboard 92
catastrophe 116
cater 80
cathedral 14
celestial 20
cellular 164
Celsius 44
ceramic 50
chaotic 98
cholesterol 134
chronic 104
chronology 176
circuit 122
circumference 140
cite 98
clap 68
clone 128
coalition 134
coarse 44
coastline 38
cognitive 20
collision 20
colloquial 128
combat 110
comet 140
commence 32
commonplace 110
companion 44
compatible 74
compel 68
competence 74
competent 20
complement 122
component 56
compound 110
compress 122
compromise 182
confer 74
conform 146
consecutive 74
considerate 80
consumption 80
contempt 62
context 116
convenience 8
convention 170
coordinate 86
corps 110
correspond 98
corrupt 26
cosmetics 128
courtyard 98
craft 182
crater 140
creek 152
crescent 140
criteria 80
crook 182
crude 74
crust 80
cube 74
culinary 50
currency 182

D

dash 128
database 122
dearth 8
debris 140
deceptive 134
dedicate 62
degrade 80
deliberate 8
dense 50
dependence 56
deprive 14
designate 116
despair 140
deter 38
devise 38

diabetes 134
digest 44
dignity 50
dilemma 92
diminish 56
diploma 20
diplomat 176
dire 8
discipline 104
disgust 128
dispose 26
disprove 86
distort 116
distract 110
ditch 62
dock 116
dominance 68
dominate 50
donor 104
drawback 56
drill 152
drought 14
dumb 111
duration 44
dynamic 164

E

ecology 44
edible 50
elaborate 92
elapse 8
eligible 14
eliminate 134
embed 140
empathy 8
employ 146
enigma 182
enterprise 62
entitle 80
epic 176
equivalent 122
erosion 134
escort 80
essence 32
estate 98
ethics 134
excel 20
excerpt 176
executive 152
expel 146
expertise 38
explicit 135
exquisite 62
extension 146
external 80
extract 32

F

fabulous 32
facilitate 92
facility 81
faculty 81
fad 56
fanciful 8
fantasy 164
fast 14
fatigue 152
feat 44
feedback 74
fellow 104
finance 62
flap 158
fleet 92
fluorescent 128
foe 111
fore 116
forthcoming 146
fossil 176
fracture 38
fragile 182
fragment 141
framework 135
fraud 99
frequent 116
furious 128
furnish 146

G

galaxy 141
genuine 117
geology 21
gigantic 141
glacier 158
globe 158
gloom 141
gorgeous 68
gossip 104
gracious 170
graduate 104
graffiti 104
grease 117
grid 92
gripe 9
grueling 9
grumble 15
guardian 104
gulf 129

H

hack 111
harness 21
haste 32
headquarters 26
heap 81
hemisphere 81
heredity 164
horizontal 158
hostile 50
hound 81
hum 158
humanitarian 86
humanities 129
humiliate 176
hybrid 182
hydrogen 99
hygiene 146
hygienic 146
hypothesis 86

I

ignorance 75
immune 122
impair 38
impersonal 81
implement 38
implicate 104
import 92
impose 56
imprint 86
improve 170
impulse 32
incentive 26
incline 152
indifferent 62
indigenous 38
inevitable 68
infer 93
infinite 45
inflate 93
informative 86
infrastructure 26
inland 15
innate 93
innocence 182
input 122
insight 38
insulate 170
intake 50
integrity 99
intellect 21
internal 164
intimate 122
intricate 117
intrigue 170
inventory 158
inward 158
irrigate 62

K

keen 21
kin 105

knit 99
knot 129

L

landlord 146
latter 32
lease 147
legacy 69
legislate 27
legitimate 27
likewise 51
limb 39
linguist 129
loaf 158
longevity 170
lyric 177

M

magnet 123
majesty 177
malnutrition 51
managerial 57
mandatory 147
manipulate 27
manufacture 135
marble 93
masculine 75
mast 93
masterpiece 69
maximize 63
mechanism 135
medication 51
medieval 57
meditate 111
mend 147
merchandise 27
merge 182
metabolism 123
microchip 123
migraine 39
minimal 164
minimize 135
misconception 51
misplace 170
moderate 183
moisture 15
molecule 32
monarch 177
monetary 63
monument 75
mortgage 147
multiple 69
mundane 9
muscular 75
mythology 21

N

narrate 69
nasty 152
naughty 171
nausea 93
naval 93
nectar 135
nick 111
nonetheless 15
norm 171
notion 135
notorious 69
nucleus 45

O

oath 15
obscure 51
obsolete 57
offset 117
ongoing 33
oppress 51
opt 9
optic 87
optimism 39
oracle 158
orangutan 171
orbit 159
ornament 81
outdated 69
outlook 99
outrage 9
overall 69
overlap 117
overload 171
overview 159
overwhelm 183

P

paltry 9
parachute 99
parasite 45
partiality 69
participant 129
peculiar 39
pedestrian 81
peel 51
peninsula 57
perceive 153
perception 183
personnel 147
pharmaceutical 33
phase 123
philanthropy 171
physiology 21
pinch 123
pioneer 164
plausible 129
plumbing 147
posture 75
pouch 93
prairie 15
precaution 63
precede 177
precipitate 117
precise 33
prehistoric 99
preliminary 63
premise 87
prescribe 164
prescription 51
prestige 57
prevalent 123
preview 159
previous 159
primate 153
primitive 153
probe 171
proficient 39
prominent 45
prone 135
proponent 99
proportion 57
provide 159
provoke 111
proximity 33
publicity 33
punctual 177

Q

quantum 123
quest 39

R

rack 87
radiate 141
radical 57
radioactive 21
ragged 15
ratio 123
realm 111
recipient 171
recruit 177
rectify 9
recur 159
referee 105
refine 99
refund 177
refute 57
register 177
reign 111
relativity 21
relevant 159
remedy 33

Renaissance 87
renown 177
repetitive 45
reproductive 45
reptile 171
resourceful 9
respective 165
respirator 51
restrict 99
retail 27
reunion 183
revenue 27
revere 87
revive 165
ridge 39
rig 183
rigid 165
rite 159
ritual 129
roam 141
rubbish 27
rugged 15
rust 111

S

sacred 111
sanctuary 81
saturate 63
saturated 93
scarce 15
secondhand 117
sequence 165
sever 105
shaft 105
shiver 183
sibling 129
significance 33
simplicity 63
simultaneous 87
situate 75
skeptic 87
skinny 129
slot 117
sociable 183
sociology 21
solitary 141
sow 63
soy 63
spade 63
spatial 87
specify 87
spectacular 57
spectator 81
spectrum 141
speculate 15
sphere 141
spiral 123
spontaneous 69
spouse 39
stab 105
stall 159
status 141
stereotype 153
sticky 153
stimulus 105
straightforward 135
strive 51
submerge 117
subsequent 33
subsidy 27
substitute 165
supernatural 159
supervise 75
surgeon 165
suspicion 105
sustenance 9
symmetry 75
synthetic 33

T

tactic 117
talkative 183
tattoo 75
tedious 9
temperate 45
tenant 147
terminal 33
terminate 105
termite 153
theme 105
theoretical 21
therapy 165
thereby 153
thrive 171
thrust 39
tolerance 45
tolerate 39
tow 183
trail 153
tramp 183
transaction 27
transfer 165
transition 165
transplant 165
trendy 147
tuition 105
tusk 177
twig 153

U

ultimate 171
undergo 45
undergraduate 75
upcoming 63
updated 93
utility 147

V

vague 129
violate 27
viral 123
virtue 69
vulnerable 45

W

wax 87
weave 57
welfare 153
whereby 147



4000 Essential English Words

6

Paul Nation

4000 Essential English Words 6

4000 Essential English Words 6

Paul Nation

© 2009 Compass Publishing

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without prior permission in writing from the publisher.

Acquisitions Editor: Fidel Cruz
Project Coordinator: Annie Cho
Design: Design Plus

email: info@compasspub.com
http://www.compasspub.com

ISBN: 978-1-59966-407-1

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2
12 11

Photo Credits
All images © Shutterstock, Inc.

Table of Contents

Unit	Target Words	Page
Introduction		6
1	alleviate, astrology, differentiate, disrupt, equation, err, erroneous, frantic, hull, inadvertent, improvise, latitude, mariner, multitude, nuisance, permanence, revolve, soothe, stranded, volatile	8
2	arduous, attain, coexist, conceive, dubious, ego, elastic, endeavor, engrave, excavate, jagged, locale, mold, outright, periphery, plaster, shovel, skeletal, terrestrial, vicious	14
3	absurd, anemia, aristocracy, aristocrat, attire, craze, enlarge, excess, feminine, hallmark, pad, predominant, reputable, rouge, signify, strap, tangle, vanity, vie, vulgar	20
4	attic, chunk, civic, descent, din, dissatisfy, fuss, gourmet, hence, intrinsic, kettle, ministry, ordeal, outspoken, overwork, particular, pungent, snore, soundly, superintendent	26
5	alternate, apologetic, benign, char, clarify, distress, dogged, ensue, gasp, negotiate, overdose, persuasion, relay, reluctance, restate, sesame, sip, verge, wary, waver	32
6	ashore, contradict, counterpart, devoid, diverge, elude, embryo, fend, fictitious, gazette, homogeneous, obstruct, plunge, prolong, publicize, sparse, surplus, theorize, verify, vigorous	38
7	altar, arthritis, botany, credible, deceased, deception, decipher, dung, dusk, gratify, hone, mash, ornate, pneumonia, psychic, psychotic, scope, sinister, strife, therapeutic	44
8	congested, courier, deform, etiquette, exclusive, freight, garment, insomnia, intuitive, liable, obsess, overboard, premium, privilege, propel, socialize, suppress, tram, unsettle, warp	50
9	artery, deterioration, elusive, forage, impede, induce, inseparable, invalid, magnify, mainstream, microbe, negligible, paralysis, pest, prevail, respiration, rupture, savage, stun, susceptible	56
10	accumulate, aerial, apparatus, avalanche, consistency, convection, discharge, intact, mortal, omen, overcast, poignant, ranger , rubble, seclude, sideways, sob, sober, speck, upbringing	62
11	advocate, authorize, civilian, commodity, conquest, disclose, dynamics, enroll, envious, euphoria, festive, jolly, lentil, marshal, morale, prophecy, sage, senate, sentiment, unrest	68
12	adorn, bliss, butler, cramp, dilapidated, evoke, farewell, faucet, filth, flaw, grin, housekeeping, mound, numb, reckless, slate, stool, testament, timber, valve	74
13	certify, collaborate, compile, counteract, curb, diagnose, enact, federation, gross, humane, intolerable, needy, onset, pledge, prohibit, rash, render, smallpox, transmit, vow	80
14	camouflage, contemplate, contend, cot, enlist, frontier, handbook, hesitant, lush, marrow, outfit, paw, quiver, splendid, stray, substantial, torch, tract, vigil, weary	86
15	adhere, administer, compassionate, contaminate, deficiency, epidemic, hazard, imperative, intestines, manifest, metabolic, overcrowded, paramount, practitioner, provision, replenish, sterile, upgrade, viable, voluntary	92

Unit	Target Words	Page
16	amid, backstage, billionaire, brute, clumsy, collide, culprit, evacuate, flammable, mob, premature, resent, satire, scrutiny, segregate, subject, testify, tumult, underestimate, uproar	98
17	accelerate, anew, defect, dreary, duplicate, electromagnetic, electron, glide, ingenious, innovation, innovative, launch, meteorological, meteorology, penetrate, propulsion, simulate, spur, stimulate, tenacious	104
18	beforehand, centigrade, chatter, concerto, condense, cove, deteriorate, exterior, freeway, hearty, hospitable, manor, monastery, nursery, outstretched, parcel, profile, vivacious, winding, zip	110
19	airway, Almighty, advent, constellation, definitive, equate, inhale, invoke, lunar, novelty, outmoded, personalize, pertain, primal, psychiatric, psychiatry, reflex, seizure, session, utensil	116
20	adhesive, adverse, dependency, dump, eternal, fluctuate, fro, inclusion, intermediate, intermittent, mentor, phoenix, photosynthesis, pollen, regain, reverse, swarm, texture, tickle, vibrant	122
21	abolish, amend, aspire, censor, charter, constitution, cosmopolitan, disseminate, flatter, infamous, lame, limp, outburst, pathological, phenomenal, poll, remorse, secrecy, tackle, trance	128
22	coward, delete, firsthand, earnest, ethnic, exclude, fluent, imperial, inclusive, legislature, linguistic, monolingual, nationality, patriot, prosecute, racial, solemn, solidarity, tact, undermine	134
23	allocate, appetizing, blizzard, cavity, clockwise, concentric, courtesy, crisp, discord, frigid, generate, glacial, interchange, locker, multicultural, omission, oversee, pierce, replicate, wavy	140
24	abide, conversion, cram, defer, export, fume, habitual, justify, output, overpopulation, patent, penalize, petroleum, prototype, scrap, sector, subscribe, subsist, suspend, synthesis	146
25	acrobat, advocacy, communal, fluid, harmonize, industrious, inventive, judicial, Mandarin, metropolitan, mimic, misguided, rehearse, scorn, sensory, staple, statute, veteran, villain, vine	152
26	constrain, depot, emulate, forefinger, guts, inherent, intimidate, janitor, moist, nope, prod, ransom, restrain, saliva, spit, sprint, stunt, tolerant, vampire, yawn	158
27	analogy, ancestry, archer, conspiracy, deputy, earl, fragrant, funnel, hereditary, hymn, invert, prey, procession, prophet, sarcastic, seasoning, sodium, tyranny, tyrant, vinegar	164
28	adjoining, allege, arch, assemble, casualty, erect, foul, hectare, heighten, hospitality, mansion, outnumber, overjoyed, pasture, petition, renovate, revise, slab, terrace, turf	170
29	analogous, binoculars, bulk, comprise, depict, dual, Fahrenheit, fulfill, grove, ore, outback, outweigh, paradox, pier, shortcut, tariff, thermometer, tilt, vice versa, whereabouts	176
30	amber, charcoal, columnist, courteous, credentials, crickets, delta, detergent, euphemism, expire, granite, gravel, haunt, liberal, maze, moss, peck, pebble, reservoir, streak	182
Index		188

Introduction

About the Vocabulary

The 600 words in each book of this series along with the additional target words presented in the appendices included in the first three books of the series are the most useful words in English. They were found by analysis of a collection of English course books from various levels in the primary, secondary and tertiary school systems. The words included in this series were chosen because they occurred many times in different levels of these materials. Because of the way
that they were chosen, these words have the following characteristics:

1 They are useful in both spoken and written English. No matter what English course you are studying, the words in these books will be of value to you.

2 Each word in these books is a high-frequency word. This means that the effort in learning the words is well repaid by the number of times learners have a chance to encounter or use them.

3 These books as a whole cover a large proportion of the words in any spoken or written text. They cover at least 80% of the words in newspapers and academic texts, and at least 90% of the words in novels. They also cover at least 90% of the words in conversation.

About the Books

The activities in these books are specially designed to make use of important learning conditions. Firstly, the words are introduced using sentence definitions and an example sentence. The activities that follow in the units encourage learners to recall the meanings and forms of the words. Some activities also make the learners think about the meaning of the words in the context of a sentence—a sentence different from the sentences that occurred in the introduction of the words. Moreover, each unit ends with a story containing the target words. While reading the story, the learners have to recall the meanings of the words and suit them to the context of the story. Such activities help learners develop a better understanding of a common meaning for a given word which fits the different uses.

Illustrations for each target word are provided to help learners visualize the word as it is being used in the example sentence. These word/image associations aim to help students grasp the meaning of the word as well as recall the word later.

It should be noted that words have more than one grammatical category. However, this series focuses on the word's most common form. This is mentioned to remind learners that just because a word is labeled and utilized as a noun in this series does not mean that it can never be used in another form such as an adjective. This series has simply focused on the word in the form that it is most likely to be expressed.

Supporting Learning with Outside Activities

A well-balanced language course provides four major opportunities for learning: learning through input, learning through output, deliberate learning, and fluency development. The highly structured activities in these books support all four types of learning opportunities. In addition, learning can further be supported through the following activities:

1 Have students create vocabulary cards with one word from the unit on one side of the card and the translation of the word in the student's first language on the other side. Students should use the cards for study in free moments during the day. Over several weeks, students will find that quick repeated studying for brief periods of time is more effective than studying for hours at one sitting.

2 Assign graded readers at students' appropriate levels. Reading such books provides both enjoyment as well as meaning-focused input which will help the words stick in students' memory.

3 Practice reading fluency to promote faster recall of word meaning for both sight recognition and usage. Compass Publishing's *Reading for Speed and Fluency* is a good resource for reading fluency material.

4 Include listening, speaking, and writing activities in classes. Reinforcement of the high-frequency vocabulary presented in this series is important across all the four language skills.

Author **Paul Nation**

Paul Nation is professor of Applied Linguistics in the School of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies at Victoria University of Wellington, New Zealand. He has taught in Indonesia, Thailand, the United States, Finland, and Japan. His specialist interests are language teaching methodology and vocabulary learning.



UNIT 1

Word List



alleviate [əlíːvièit] *v.*

To **alleviate** pain or suffering means to make it less intense or severe.

→ *She needed something to **alleviate** the pain in her back.*



astrology [əstrɑ́lədʒi] *n.*

Astrology is the study of the stars in the belief that they influence people's lives.

→ *Jack, who studies **astrology**, believes that the stars can predict the future.*



differentiate [dìfərénʃièit] *v.*

To **differentiate** things or people is to show the difference between them.

→ *It was hard to **differentiate** between the identical twins.*



disrupt [disrʌ́pt] *v.*

To **disrupt** something or someone is to prevent them from working.

→ *The loud crash **disrupted** the class lecture.*



equation [i(ː)kwéiʒən] *n.*

An **equation** is a math operation to determine the value of something.

→ *I used the Pythagorean theorem to solve the **equation**.*



err [əːr] *v.*

To **err** means to make a mistake.

→ *The pilot **erred** in his estimate of the time it would take to make the trip.*



erroneous [iróuniəs] *adj.*

When something is **erroneous**, it is incorrect or only partly correct.

→ *The child held the **erroneous** belief that time machines were real.*



frantic [frǽntik] *adj.*

If people or things are **frantic**, they behave in a wild way because they are frightened

→ *The cat became **frantic** when I tried to give it a bath.*



hull [hʌl] *n.*

The **hull** of a boat or tank is the main body of it.

→ *After the wreck at sea, the ship's **hull** was the last part to sink.*



inadvertent [inədvə́ːrtənt] *adj.*

When an action is **inadvertent**, it is done without realizing what you are doing.

→ *She made an **inadvertent** error when she knocked over the nail polish.*



improvise [imprəváiz] *v.*

To **improvise** something is to do it with whatever is available or without planning.

→ *There was no meat for the pizza, so we **improvised** with what was in the fridge.*



latitude [lǽtətjùːd] *n.*

The **latitude** of a place is its distance from the equator.

→ *The device was able to tell the traveler his exact **latitude**.*



mariner [mǽrənəːr] *n.*

A **mariner** is a sailor.

→ *The old **mariner** used his telescope to find the shore.*



multitude [mʌ́ltitjùːd] *n.*

A **multitude** of things or people is a very large number of them.

→ *A **multitude** of people were waiting at the airport.*



nuisance [njúːsəns] *n.*

A **nuisance** is a person or thing that is annoying or causes a lot of problems.

→ *The teenager considered her noisy little brothers to be quite a **nuisance**.*



permanence [pə́ːrmənəns] *n.*

The **permanence** of something is its ability to last forever.

→ *Poor results will threaten the **permanence** of the new teaching system.*



revolve [riválv] *v.*

To **revolve** around something is to keep it as the main feature or focus.

→ *My life **revolves** around sports.*



soothe [suːð] *v.*

To **soothe** means to calm someone who is angry or upset.

→ *The mother **soothed** her crying baby by rocking him in her arms.*



stranded [strǽndid] *adj.*

If someone is **stranded**, they are prevented from leaving a place.

→ *When the plane left, my sister and I were **stranded** in China.*



volatile [válətil] *adj.*

When something is **volatile**, it is likely to change suddenly and unexpectedly.

→ *The **volatile** volcano might explode at any moment.*

UNIT 2

Word List



arduous [ɑ́rdʒuəs] *adj.*

When something is **arduous**, it demands great effort or labor.

→ *The explorers began their **arduous** hike up the steep mountain.*



attain [ətéin] *v.*

To **attain** something means to gain or achieve it, often after a lot of effort.

→ *In two more years, I will **attain** my high school diploma.*



coexist [kòuigzíst] *v.*

To **coexist** with something means to exist with it in the same time and place.

→ *Our pets **coexist** at our home with little or no problems.*



conceive [kənsíːv] *v.*

To **conceive** something means to be able to imagine or believe it.

→ *The child could not **conceive** the actual size of the Earth.*



dubious [djúːbiəs] *adj.*

When something or someone is **dubious**, they are not considered honest.

→ *The police thought that the man's description of the crime was **dubious**.*



ego [íːgou] *n.*

An **ego** is a person's sense of their own worth.

→ *Kelly's **ego** made her think that she was some kind of a superhero.*



elastic [ilǽstik] *adj.*

Elastic is a rubber that stretches when it is pulled.

→ *He attached the **elastic** bungee to his legs before he jumped off the platform.*



endeavor [endévər] *n.*

An **endeavor** is an attempt to do something, especially something new or original.

→ *The company's new advertising **endeavor** ended in a horrible failure.*



engrave [ingréiv] *v.*

To **engrave** means to cut a design or words into the surface of something.

→ *The couple **engraved** their names onto the old pine tree.*



excavate [ékskəvèit] *v.*

To **excavate** means to dig on land and remove dirt to look for something.

→ *The team wishes to **excavate** the site in hopes of finding fossils.*



jagged [dʒægɪd] *adj.*

When something is **jagged**, it has a tough, uneven shape or edge.

→ *The swimmer was hurt when he fell on the **jagged** rocks.*



locale [loukæl] *n.*

A **locale** is a small area or place where something specific happens.

→ *The spa was the perfect **locale** for my mother to relax and enjoy her vacation.*



mold [mould] *n.*

A **mold** is a hollow container that is used to make certain shapes.

→ *Using a cupcake **mold** will ensure that they come out just right.*



outright [áutràit] *adj.*

When something is **outright**, it is open and direct.

→ *Everyone knew that the boy's story was an **outright** lie.*



periphery [pəri:fəri] *n.*

The **periphery** of an area, place, or thing is the edge of it.

→ *A beautiful floral pattern is on the **periphery** of the stationery.*



plaster [plæstər] *n.*

Plaster is a smooth paste that gets hard when it dries.

→ *He used **plaster** to fill in the cracks in the old walls.*



shovel [ʃʌvəl] *n.*

A **shovel** is a tool with a long handle that is used for digging.

→ *The boy grabbed his **shovel** and got all of the snow off of the sidewalk.*



skeletal [skélətl] *adj.*

When something is **skeletal**, it relates to bones in the body.

→ *We studied the **skeletal** system in anatomy class.*



terrestrial [təréstriəl] *adj.*

If something is **terrestrial**, it relates to Earth.

→ *There are billions of **terrestrial** life forms.*



vicious [víʃəs] *adj.*

When something or someone is **vicious**, they are violent and cruel.

→ *The **vicious** dog tried to bite the small child.*

UNIT 3

Word List



absurd [əbsə́:rd] *adj.*

If something or someone is **absurd**, they are ridiculous.

→ *That group of people making animal noises sounds completely **absurd**.*



anemia [əní:miə] *n.*

Anemia is a blood condition that causes a person to be pale and tired.

→ *When she first developed **anemia**, she became tired often.*



aristocracy [æ̀rəstɑ́krəsi] *n.*

The **aristocracy** is the highest class of people in certain societies.

→ *Most members of the **aristocracy** were very well-fed.*



aristocrat [ərístəkræ̀t] *n.*

An **aristocrat** is a person who is of the highest class in certain societies.

→ *The **aristocrat** did not need a job because his family was wealthy.*



attire [ətáiər] *n.*

Attire is nice or special clothing.

→ *Everyone wore their best **attire** to the president's daughter's wedding.*



craze [kreiz] *n.*

A **craze** is a brief and popular activity or object.

→ *Wearing bright red socks was a **craze** when I was in high school.*



enlarge [enlɑ́:rdʒ] *v.*

To **enlarge** something means to make it bigger.

→ *The classrooms were **enlarged** over the summer to make room for more students.*



excess [ékses] *n.*

An **excess** is an amount of something that is more than needed or wanted.

→ *Because it never got cold that winter, many stores had an **excess** of coats.*



feminine [fémənin] *adj.*

If something is **feminine**, then it has qualities that are commonly related to women.

→ *Many of the older people thought his long hair made him look too **feminine**.*



hallmark [hɔ́:lmɑ̀:rk] *n.*

A **hallmark** is a unique characteristic of something.

→ *Different types of pasta and tomato sauces are **hallmarks** of Italian food.*



pad [pæd] *n.*

A **pad** is a thick piece of soft material used to protect or clean things.

→ *Football players wear shoulder **pads** to keep them safe.*



predominant [pridάmənənt] *adj.*

If something is **predominant**, then it is the most important, common or strongest.

→ *Before cars were invented, horses were the **predominant** method of travel.*



reputable [répjətəbəl] *adj.*

If someone or something is **reputable**, then they have a good reputation.

→ *The service from the less than **reputable** company made her angry.*



rouge [ruːʒ] *n.*

Rouge is a red powder or cream used as makeup on the cheeks or lips.

→ *Even when she didn't wear **rouge**, her cheeks appeared red.*



signify [signəfài] *v.*

To **signify** means to be a symbol of something.

→ *A red octagon is used to **signify** to stop.*



strap [stræp] *n.*

A **strap** is a thin long piece of fabric used to fasten, carry, or hold something.

→ *She put the **strap** of her purse over her shoulder and walked out of the door.*



tangle [tæŋgəl] *n.*

A **tangle** is something or many things twisted together.

→ *The laces of his shoes were in such a **tangle** that he could not untie them.*



vanity [vænəti] *n.*

Vanity is excessive pride or love of one's own appearance or things one has done.

→ *Her **vanity** won't allow her to pass a mirror without looking at herself.*



vie [vai] *v.*

To **vie** for something means to compete against others for it.

→ *The three boys **vied** for the prize in the chemistry contest.*



vulgar [vʌ́lgər] *adj.*

If something or someone is **vulgar**, then they are rude or lacking in style.

→ *Her **vulgar** behavior got her into trouble with her parents.*

UNIT 4

Word List



attic [ætik] *n.*

An **attic** is a room just below a house's roof.

→ *There were two windows in their **attic**.*



chunk [tʃʌŋk] *n.*

A **chunk** is a thick, solid piece of something.

→ *When they broke open the rock, they saw it was filled with **chunks** of gold.*



civic [sivik] *adj.*

If something is **civic**, then it is related to a town or city, especially its government.

→ *Most of the important **civic** buildings are located downtown.*



descent [disent] *n.*

A **descent** is a movement downwards.

→ *During the space shuttle's **descent**, the Earth became larger and larger.*



din [din] *n.*

A **din** is loud, unpleasant, and extended noise.

→ *The **din** of the rusty machinery made the factory a horrible place to work.*



dissatisfy [dissætisfai] *v.*

To **dissatisfy** someone means to fail to please them.

→ *He was **dissatisfied** with his meal.*



fuss [fʌs] *n.*

A **fuss** is excited or annoyed behavior that is not useful in any way.

→ *The child made an awful **fuss** because she didn't want to go to bed.*



gourmet [guərmei] *adj.*

If food is **gourmet**, then it is nicer and more expensive than regular food.

→ *In order to get a **gourmet** meal, you have to eat at an expensive restaurant.*



hence [hens] *adv.*

If something happens **hence**, then it happens as a result of something.

→ *John forgot the key. **Hence**, we couldn't open the door.*



intrinsic [intrinsik] *adj.*

If something is **intrinsic**, then it is related to the basic nature of that thing.

→ *Paper money has no **intrinsic** value. It is useful simply because society says it is.*



kettle [ketl] *n.*

A **kettle** is a large metal pot used for boiling liquids or cooking food.
→ *The soup was being cooked in a large **kettle**.*



ministry [ministri] *n.*

A **ministry** is a government department.
→ *The **Ministry** of Trade is responsible for taxing imports and exports.*



ordeal [ɔ:rdi:əl] *n.*

An **ordeal** is a bad experience.
→ *Driving in the snowstorm was an **ordeal** she'd never forget.*



outspoken [àutspoukkən] *adj.*

If someone is **outspoken**, then they are not afraid to say what they think.
→ *She was an **outspoken** critic about the new banking laws.*



overwork [ouvərwə:rk] *v.*

To **overwork** someone means to make them tired with too much work.
→ *After working for three weeks with only one day of rest, Judy was **overworked**.*



particular [pərtikjələr] *adj.*

If something is **particular**, then it is a single, important part of a group of things.
→ *The dress shop didn't have the **particular** dress she was looking for.*



pungent [pʌndʒənt] *adj.*

If something is **pungent**, then it tastes or smells strong and sharp.
→ *The garlic made the soup taste so **pungent** that the chef wouldn't serve it.*



snore [snɔ:r] *v.*

To **snore** means to make a loud noise each time a sleeping person breathes.
→ *It was impossible to get to sleep because my husband **snored**.*



soundly [sàundli] *adv.*

If something is done **soundly**, then it is done in the best or most complete way.
→ *The nearest opponent was ten meters behind. She won the race **soundly**.*



superintendent [su pərintendənt] *n.*

A **superintendent** is a person who runs a certain department or building.
→ *The **superintendent** decided to close the schools because of the weather.*

UNIT 5

Word List



alternate [ɔ́:ltərnèit] *v.*

To **alternate** means to switch back and forth between two things.

→ *The best exercise **alternates** muscle and heart strengthening.*



apologetic [əpɑ̀lədʒétik] *adj.*

If someone is **apologetic,** they are sorry about something.

→ *The boy felt **apologetic** after losing his sister's favorite toy.*



benign [bináin] *adj.*

If something or someone is **benign,** they do not hurt anyone.

→ *Many spiders look scary, but most are actually **benign.***



char [tʃɑ:r] *v.*

To **char** means to burn something so that it turns black.

→ *While Frank went inside to get the mustard, he accidentally **charred** the hotdogs.*



clarify [klǽrəfài] *v.*

To **clarify** means to make something easier to understand by explaining it.

→ *Drew tried to **clarify** all the functions of Michelle's new computer.*



distress [distrés] *n.*

Distress is the feeling of being upset or worried.

→ *Failing a class caused the student a lot of **distress**.*



dogged [dɔ́(:)gid] *adj.*

When someone's actions are **dogged,** they try hard to continue something.

→ *Her dad bought her a new jacket after her **dogged** requests for one.*



ensue [insú:] *v.*

To **ensue** means to happen after something.

→ *After a few minutes of lightening, thunder **ensued**.*



gasp [gæsp] *v.*

To **gasp** means to make a noise by quickly breathing in when surprised.

→ *John always **gasps** when watching a scary movie.*



negotiate [nigóuʃièit] *v.*

To **negotiate** means to try to make an agreement through discussion.

→ *Mario and Joe took a long time **negotiating** the contract between the companies.*



overdose [óuvərdòus] *n.*

An **overdose** is an instance of taking or having too much of something.

→ *John's skin was burned from an **overdose** of sunshine.*



persuasion [pərswéiʒən] *n.*

Persuasion is the act of making someone do or believe something.

→ *The **persuasion** of his argument convinced the customer to buy the laptop.*



relay [ríːlei] *n.*

A **relay** is a race in which teams of runners or swimmers race against each other.

→ *Jerry was the fastest on his team, so he ran the last part of the **relay**.*



reluctance [rilʌ́ktəns] *n.*

Reluctance is a feeling of not wanting to do something.

→ *Jesse took out the trash with great **reluctance**.*



restate [riːstéit] *v.*

To **restate** something means to say it again or in a different way.

→ *Mrs. Jones **restated** the test question to the class.*



sesame [sésəmi] *n.*

Sesame is an herb that is grown for its small seeds and its oil.

→ *I used the buns with the **sesame** seeds on them.*



sip [sip] *v.*

To **sip** something means to drink a small amount at a time.

→ *Liza relaxed on the beach, **sipping** fruit juice through a straw.*



verge [vəːrdʒ] *n.*

The **verge** is the point at which something is about to happen.

→ *Joan was on the **verge** of leaving her house when the phone rang.*



wary [wɛ́əri] *adj.*

If someone is **wary**, they are cautious or mistrusting.

→ *She was **wary** of going to school because she hadn't done her homework.*



waver [wéivəːr] *v.*

To **waver** is to be unable to decide between two choices.

→ *I **wavered** between eating the apple or the cake for a snack.*

UNIT 6

Word List



ashore [əʃɔ́:r] *adv.*

If something goes **ashore**, it goes from water to the land.

→ *After a long day of fishing, Glen pulled his boat **ashore**, so it wouldn't float away.*



contradict [kɑ̀ntrədíkt] *v.*

To **contradict** means to state the opposite of what someone else has.

→ *Ken was always fighting with his little sister because she kept **contradicting** him.*



counterpart [káuntərpɑ̀:rt] *n.*

A **counterpart** is something that is very similar to something else in what it does.

→ *Our manager will meet our rival company's **counterpart** later today.*



devoid [divɔ́id] *adj.*

When something or someone is **devoid** of a thing, they are missing it.

→ *The movie was **devoid** of any violence, so it was a perfect movie for the family.*



diverge [divə́:rdʒ] *v.*

To **diverge** is to become different or to follow a different direction.

→ *The road **diverged** into two paths that led to our houses.*



elude [ilú:d] *v.*

To **elude** means to avoid being caught by something.

→ *The rabbit **eluded** the wolf by hiding in a bush.*



embryo [émbriòu] *n.*

An **embryo** is a human or animal that is still growing inside its mother.

→ *Some doctors say that what a mother eats has a big effect on her **embryo**.*



fend [fend] *v.*

To **fend** off something means to push it away and avoid it.

→ *Dave spent all night **fending** off bugs instead of sleeping.*



fictitious [fiktíʃəs] *adj.*

When something is **fictitious**, it is made up and not real.

→ *The author said that the characters in her book were completely **fictitious**.*



gazette [gəzét] *n.*

A **gazette** is a newspaper.

→ *Alice wants to write for a **gazette** when she's older.*



homogeneous [hòuməʤíːniəs] *adj.*

If something is **homogeneous**, it is made up of things which are all the same.

→ *All of the houses on Victor's block were boring and **homogenous**.*



obstruct [əbstrʌ́kt] *v.*

To **obstruct** something means to get in its way.

→ *The car broke down on the road and **obstructed** traffic for hours.*



plunge [plʌnʤ] *v.*

To **plunge** means to move down into something very quickly.

→ *The water in the pool was very cold, but the boy **plunged** in anyway.*



prolong [proulɔ́ːŋ] *v.*

To **prolong** means to make something last for a longer time.

→ *Sandy walked slowly across the beach, trying to **prolong** her lunch break.*



publicize [pʌ́bləsàiz] *v.*

To **publicize** is to make something get a lot of attention.

→ *The company **publicized** the job positions in the newspaper.*



sparse [spɑːrs] *adj.*

If something is **sparse**, there is not very much of it in a big area.

→ *Rob spent Saturday in his garden, clearing out the **sparse** weeds.*



surplus [sə́ːrplʌs] *n.*

A **surplus** is an extra amount of something.

→ *The store sold their **surplus** items on sale.*



theorize [θíːəràiz] *v.*

To **theorize** means to develop ideas about something.

→ *They enjoyed **theorizing** about how things worked.*



verify [vérəfài] *v.*

To **verify** means to find out if something is true.

→ *Julian called the movie theater to **verify** that the movie started at nine.*



vigorous [vígərəs] *adj.*

If something or someone is **vigorous**, they use a lot of energy.

→ *Henry uses **vigorous** exercise to keep himself in shape.*

UNIT 7

Word List



altar [ɔ́:ltər] *n.*

An **altar** is a table used in churches.

→ *The **altar** had many lit candles on it.*



arthritis [ɑ:rθráitis] *n.*

Arthritis is an illness causing pain and swelling in a person's joints.

→ *Agatha couldn't play the piano anymore because of her **arthritis**.*



botany [bɑ́təni] *n.*

Botany is the study of plants.

→ *Gardens are the best places for **botany**.*



credible [krédəbəl] *adj.*

If something or someone is **credible**, they can be believed or trusted.

→ *Dick gave a **credible** reason for being late and didn't get in any trouble.*



deceased [disí:st] *adj.*

If someone is **deceased**, they are dead.

→ *We visited the graves of our **deceased** grandparents.*



deception [disépʃən] *n.*

Deception is the act of lying or tricking someone.

→ *The magic looked very real, but it was only **deception**.*



decipher [disáifər] *v.*

To **decipher** writing is to figure out what it says.

→ *My teacher complained that she couldn't **decipher** my essay.*



dung [dʌŋ] *n.*

Dung is solid waste material produced by animals.

→ *There was cow **dung** all over the field.*



dusk [dʌsk] *n.*

Dusk is the time in the evening when it begins to get dark.

→ *After **dusk**, Hannah would catch fireflies in the park.*



gratify [grǽtəfài] *v.*

To **gratify** someone means to please them.

→ *Bonnie was **gratified** after receiving her gift from her parents.*



hone [houn] *v.*

To **hone** something is to improve it and make it very good.

→ *Lisa **honed** her chess skills by hours and hours of practice.*



mash [mæʃ] *v.*

To **mash** something is to crush it so that it is soft.

→ *We **mashed** the hard potatoes and served them for dinner.*



ornate [ɔ:rnéit] *adj.*

If something is **ornate**, it is decorated with a lot of fancy things.

→ *Kim's prom dress was very expensive since it was so **ornate**.*



pneumonia [njumóunjə] *n.*

Pneumonia is a dangerous illness causing the lungs to fill with liquid.

→ *Elaine got **pneumonia** after playing outside in the rain without a coat.*



psychic [sáikik] *adj.*

When someone is **psychic**, they know what will happen or what people think.

→ *I think my grandmother has **psychic** abilities because she can predict anything.*



psychotic [saikátik] *adj.*

If someone is **psychotic**, they have a very serious mental illness.

→ *The **psychotic** patient believed he saw things that weren't real.*



scope [skoup] *n.*

The **scope** of something is how many people or things it relates to.

→ *Modern history has a wide **scope**.*



sinister [sinistə:r] *adj.*

If something or someone is **sinister**, they are evil.

→ *Bad guys in most movies have **sinister** laughs.*



strife [straif] *n.*

Strife is disagreement or fighting between people or groups.

→ *There was a lot of **strife** between Jim and Lisa about what TV show to watch.*



therapeutic [eèrəpjú:tik] *adj.*

If something is **therapeutic**, it helps to cure a disease or makes you healthier.

→ *After a stressful day of working, Phoebe would take a **therapeutic** bath.*

UNIT 8

Word List



congested [kəndʒèstid] *adj.*

If something is **congested**, it is full or blocked.

→ *Tom didn't get home until after dark because the road was so **congested**.*



courier [kúriər] *n.*

A **courier** is someone who takes and delivers mail or packages.

→ *Before trains, most **couriers** used horses to travel.*



deform [difɔ́:rm] *v.*

To **deform** something means to change it from its correct or original shape.

→ *The computer program **deformed** the building's picture into an unreal sight.*



etiquette [étikèt] *n.*

Etiquette is the group of rules about how to be polite.

→ *When in Asian countries, bowing is a form of **etiquette**.*



exclusive [iksklú:siv] *adj.*

If something is **exclusive**, it is expensive and only for rich people.

→ *The golf course was so **exclusive** that most people hadn't even heard of it.*



freight [freit] *n.*

Freight is a set of items carried on a train, boat, or airplane.

→ *Trade ships only carried valuable **freight** like silk and spices.*



garment [gɑ́:rmənt] *n.*

A **garment** is a piece of clothing.

→ *The business man had all of his **garments** cleaned before the important meeting.*



insomnia [insɑ́mniə] *n.*

Insomnia is a condition in which a person has difficulty sleeping.

→ *Nate's **insomnia** prevented him from getting enough rest.*



intuitive [intjú:itiv] *adj.*

Intuitive is knowing about something without naturally having support or proof.

→ *Rhonda had an **intuitive** feeling that Shane wasn't coming to school today.*



liable [láiəbəl] *adj.*

If something is **liable** to happen, it is very likely that it will happen.

→ *During the summer months, hikers in the forest are **liable** to see deer and elk.*



obsess [əbsés] *v.*

To **obsess** about something means to think about it all of the time.

→ *After watching the Star Wars movies, Ike **obsessed** about becoming a Jedi.*



overboard [óuvərbɔ̀:rd] *adv.*

When something is **overboard**, it is over the side of a boat and in the water.

→ *Tom and Gary slipped on the wet floor and fell **overboard**.*



premium [prí:miəm] *n.*

A **premium** is a payment that is higher than average.

→ *Tony paid for **premium** gas because it made his car run the best.*



privilege [prívəlidʒ] *n.*

A **privilege** is a special right given to only a certain person or group of people.

→ *Only the best employee had the **privilege** of parking in that spot.*



propel [prəpél] *v.*

To **propel** something means to push or move it somewhere.

→ *The strong wind **propelled** the leaf through the air and across the street.*



socialize [sóuʃəlàiz] *v.*

To **socialize** is to have a good time with people.

→ *I like to **socialize** with my classmates after school.*



suppress [səpres] *v.*

To **suppress** something means to prevent it from happening.

→ *She **suppressed** her urge to scream because she didn't want to be noticed.*



tram [træm] *n.*

A **tram** is a vehicle like a streetcar that runs on electricity above ground.

→ *I took the **tram** to Eighth Avenue.*



unsettle [ʌnsétl] *v.*

To **unsettle** someone means to make them anxious or worried.

→ *The dark clouds in the sky **unsettled** Beth.*



warp [wɔ:rp] *v.*

To **warp** means to become bent into the wrong shape.

→ *The woman put the clock above the fireplace, and the heat **warped** it.*

UNIT 9

Word List



artery [á:rtəri] *n.*

An **artery** is a tube that takes blood from the heart to the rest of the body.

→ *Eating healthily keeps your **arteries** clean, so blood can flow with ease.*



deterioration [ditìəriəréiʃən] *n.*

Deterioration is the act of becoming worse.

→ *The lack of care led to the **deterioration** of the house.*



elusive [ilú:siv] *adj.*

If something or someone is **elusive**, they are hard to find.

→ *The **elusive** fish only came out at night.*



forage [fɔ́:ridʒ] *v.*

To **forage** means to look around for food.

→ *Many animals hide food in the fall since little can be **foraged** in winter.*



impede [impí:d] *v.*

To **impede** something means to keep it from moving or going forward.

→ *The barrier **impeded** our ability to get closer to the building.*



induce [indjú:s] *v.*

To **induce** something means to make it happen.

→ *Running without good shoes may **induce** leg pain.*



inseparable [insépərəbəl] *adj.*

If two things are **inseparable**, they can't be separated.

→ *Denise and Diana have been **inseparable** since they first met.*



invalid [invælid] *adj.*

If something is **invalid**, it is not correct.

→ *The way to winning debates is to avoid **invalid** arguments.*



magnify [mægnəfài] *v.*

To **magnify** something means to make it look bigger than it really is.

→ *Astronomers use telescopes to **magnify** far-away stars.*



mainstream [méinstrì:m] *n.*

The **mainstream** is a group of ideas that are considered normal and accepted.

→ *Before punk rock music became part of the **mainstream**, only a few people liked it.*



microbe [máikroub] *n.*

A **microbe** is a very small living thing that often makes people sick.

→ *The first step in curing a disease is finding the **microbe** that causes the disease.*



negligible [néglidʒəbəl] *adj.*

If something is **negligible**, it is extremely small and not important.

→ *The amount she owed was **negligible**. It was less than ten cents.*



paralysis [pərǽləsis] *n.*

Paralysis is the loss of the ability to move all or part of your body.

→ *His **paralysis** meant that he had to use a wheelchair to get around.*



pest [pest] *n.*

A **pest** is an animal or insect that hurts plants or food.

→ *Many farmers put up scarecrows to keep **pests** off of their corn.*



prevail [privéil] *v.*

To **prevail** means to be accepted or very common.

→ *Unfortunately, injustice still **prevails** in the country's court system.*



respiration [rèspəréiʃən] *n.*

Respiration is the act of breathing.

→ *Artificial **respiration** is the best thing to do if someone stops breathing.*



rupture [rʌ́ptʃəːr] *v.*

To **rupture** means to tear or burst open.

→ *Sarah put too much water into the balloon, and it **ruptured**.*



savage [sǽvidʒ] *adj.*

If something or someone is **savage**, they are very violent or cruel.

→ *Wild animals are very **savage** when defending their babies.*



stun [stʌn] *v.*

To **stun** someone means to make them unable to speak due to surprise or shock.

→ *Tim fell off the swing and was too **stunned** to cry.*



susceptible [səséptəbəl] *adj.*

If one is **susceptible** to something like disease, they are easily harmed by it.

→ *Not eating enough vegetables makes you more **susceptible** to getting sick.*

UNIT

10 Word List



accumulate [əkjúːmjəlèit] *v.*

To **accumulate** something is to collect a lot of it over time.

→ *The mail **accumulated** in their mailbox while they were on vacation.*



aerial [ɛ́əriəl] *adj.*

When something is **aerial**, it relates to being in the air or flying.

→ *The **aerial** photographer took pictures from the air balloon.*



apparatus [æpərǽitəs] *n.*

An **apparatus** is a device used for a particular purpose.

→ *The campers had an **apparatus** that showed them their exact location.*



avalanche [ǽvəlæ̀ntʃ] *n.*

An **avalanche** is a large amount of snow, ice, and rock falling off a mountain.

→ *The **avalanche** destroyed the mountain village.*



consistency [kənsístənsi] *n.*

Consistency is the state of always behaving in the same way.

→ *Her **consistency** in archery meant that our team had a chance to win.*



convection [kənvékʃən] *n.*

Convection is the flow of hot air through gas or liquid.

→ *The weather changed because of **convection** in the atmosphere.*



discharge [distʃɑ́ːrdʒ] *v.*

To **discharge** someone is to allow them to leave from a place, usually a hospital

→ *I was **discharged** from the hospital after three days.*



intact [intǽkt] *adj.*

When something is **intact**, it is complete and not damaged.

→ *Despite being over ten years old, my father's model ship is still **intact**.*



mortal [mɔ́ːrtl] *adj.*

When a person is **mortal**, they cannot live forever.

→ *All people are **mortal**.*



omen [óumən] *n.*

An **omen** is a sign of what will happen in the future.

→ *He thought that seeing a black cat in the street was an **omen** of bad luck.*



overcast [óuvərkæst] *adj.*

When the sky is **overcast**, it is full of clouds and is not sunny.

→ *The sky was **overcast** in the morning, but by noon it was bright again.*



poignant [pɔ́inyənt] *adj.*

When something is **poignant**, it causes a very strong feeling of sadness.

→ *The girls cried at the end of the **poignant** movie.*



ranger [rèindʒə:r] *n.*

A **ranger** is a person who protects the forest or parks.

→ *Peter wanted to be a **ranger** because he liked spending time outside.*



rubble [rʌ́bəl] *n.*

Rubble is piles of broken stone and wood created after a building is destroyed.

→ *There was **rubble** all over the city after the earthquake.*



seclude [siklú:d] *v.*

To **seclude** someone means to keep them away from other people.

→ *She was **secluded** on an island for over a year.*



sideways [saidweiz] *adv.*

If something moves **sideways**, then it moves to or from the side.

→ *Jim turned **sideways** in order to slow down and stop his snowboard.*



sob [sɑb] *v.*

To **sob** is to cry loudly.

→ *I **sobbed** when my youngest daughter got married.*



sober [sóubə:r] *adj.*

When something or someone is **sober**, they are serious and calm.

→ *After the funeral, everybody felt very **sober**.*



speck [spek] *n.*

A **speck** is a very small mark or amount.

→ *A **speck** of blood appeared where the mosquito bit him.*



upbringing [ʌ́pbriŋiŋ] *n.*

An **upbringing** is the way that someone is taught to behave by their parents.

→ *He had a strict **upbringing** and was never allowed to watch television.*

UNIT

11 Word List



advocate [ædvəkèit] *v.*

To **advocate** a plan or idea is to support or suggest it in public.

→ *The group **advocated** increased spending on education and schools.*



authorize [ɔ́:əràiz] *v.*

To **authorize** something means to give permission for it.

→ *The mayor **authorized** the construction of a new statue in the park.*



civilian [siviljən] *n.*

A **civilian** is someone who is not in the military.

→ *It was Todd's job to keep **civilians** from entering the army facility.*



commodity [kəmádəti] *n.*

A **commodity** is something that can be bought or sold.

→ *Fran's uncle made most of his money trading **commodities**.*



conquest [kάŋkwest] *n.*

A **conquest** is an event by which one country takes over another country.

→ *After the **conquest**, the people of the small city had no freedom.*



disclose [disklóuz] *v.*

To **disclose** something means to tell it to someone else.

→ *John came home late, so he had to **disclose** his activities to his wife.*



dynamics [dainæmiks] *n.*

The **dynamics** of a situation are the way that parts of it affect each other.

→ *A good psychologist needs to know a lot about the **dynamics** of brain disorders.*



enroll [enróul] *v.*

To **enroll** in something is to put one's name on a list as a member of a group.

→ *The students had to **enroll** in the class one semester in advance.*



envious [énviəs] *adj.*

When someone is **envious**, they want something that another person has.

→ *They were **envious** of their neighbor's front yard.*



euphoria [ju:fɔ́:riə] *n.*

Euphoria is a feeling of extreme happiness.

→ *The athlete felt **euphoria** after he won the important game.*



festive [fèstiv] *adj.*

When something is **festive**, it is happy and related to a party or celebration.

→ *Dean's favorite part of Christmas is the **festive** clothing that people wear.*



jolly [dʒάli] *adj.*

When someone is **jolly**, they are cheerful and happy.

→ *My grandmother's **jolly** attitude always made me smile.*



lentil [lèntl] *n.*

Lentils are very small beans that people cook and eat.

→ *Danni made her special soup with **lentils** when her husband was sick.*



marshal [mά:rʃəl] *v.*

To **marshal** a group means to assemble them in order.

→ *The students were **marshaled** outside and put into groups.*



morale [mouræl] *n.*

Morale is the amount of hope that people have during a difficult situation.

→ *To improve our family's **morale**, mom suggested going on a picnic.*



prophecy [prάfəsi] *n.*

A **prophecy** is a prediction about what will happen in the future.

→ *Some people believe that **prophecies** are actually true.*



sage [seidʒ] *n.*

A **sage** is someone who is very wise.

→ *Hal always visited the local **sage** for help with love.*



senate [sènət] *n.*

A **senate** is a part of the government in some countries.

→ *Everybody liked Caroline and chose her to speak for them in the **senate**.*



sentiment [sèntəmənt] *n.*

A **sentiment** is an opinion based on your feelings.

→ *Tess told everyone at the table her **sentiments** about eating meat.*



unrest [ʌnrést] *n.*

Unrest is a state of anger about something among the people in a place.

→ *High taxes caused much of the **unrest** that led to the Revolutionary War.*

UNIT 12

Word List



adorn [ədɔ́:rn] *v.*

To **adorn** something means to make it more beautiful by decorating it.

→ *Small glass beads **adorned** the vase.*



bliss [blis] *n.*

Bliss is a state of complete happiness.

→ *Every time he sees his girlfriend, he feels a sense of **bliss**.*



butler [bʌ́tlər] *n.*

A **butler** is the most important male servant in a wealthy house.

→ *Whenever he needed something, he rang a bell, and the **butler** appeared.*



cramp [kræmp] *n.*

A **cramp** is a strong pain caused by a muscle after a lot of physical use.

→ *After the marathon, Jenny got a terrible **cramp** in her calf muscle.*



dilapidated [dilǽpədeitid] *adj.*

When a building is **dilapidated**, it is old and in bad condition.

→ *Paint peeled off of the old **dilapidated** apartment building.*



evoke [ivóuk] *v.*

To **evoke** a memory or emotion means to make it occur.

→ *The picture **evoked** memories of when grandmother was a girl.*



farewell [fɛ̀ərwél] *n.*

A **farewell** is an instance of saying goodbye or a way to say it.

→ *She got on the plane after we said our **farewells**.*



faucet [fɔ́:sit] *n.*

A **faucet** is a device that controls the flow of a liquid or gas.

→ *Turn off the **faucet** when you are done brushing your teeth.*



filth [filθ] *n.*

Filth is a large amount of dirt or dirty things that disgust you.

→ *There was tons of **filth** and trash on the shore of the river.*



flaw [flɔ:] *n.*

A **flaw** is a mistake in something that causes it to be less effective or correct.

→ *We discovered a major **flaw** in the metal chain.*



grin [grin] *v.*

To **grin** means to smile broadly.

→ *That joke makes me **grin** every time I hear it.*



housekeeping [háuskì:pin] *n.*

Housekeeping is the maintenance of a house or an establishment like a hotel.

→ ***Housekeeping** is not much fun, but it has to be done.*



mound [maund] *n.*

A **mound** of something is a large pile of it.

→ *There was a **mound** of clothes on the messy teenager's floor.*



numb [nʌm] *adj.*

When a body part is **numb**, it does not have any feeling.

→ *After holding my hand under the icy water, my fingers went **numb**.*



reckless [réklis] *adj.*

When people are **reckless**, they act in an unsafe way.

→ *The **reckless** driver posed a threat to everyone else on the road.*



slate [sleit] *n.*

Slate is a dark grey rock that can easily be split into layers.

→ *The roof of the church was made of **slate**.*



stool [stu:l] *n.*

A **stool** is a seat with legs but no support for a person's arms and back.

→ *I don't find **stools** very comfortable to sit on.*



testament [téstəmənt] *n.*

A **testament** to something shows that it exists or is true.

→ *The beautiful performance was a **testament** to the singer's natural talents.*



timber [timbə:r] *n.*

Timber is wood that is used for building houses and making furniture.

→ *Trees in this area are grown specifically to be used for **timber**.*



valve [vælv] *n.*

A **valve** is a device attached to a pipe that controls the flow of liquid or air.

→ *The mechanic removed the dirt to clear the engine **valve**.*

UNIT 13

Word List



certify [sə́:rtəfài] *v.*

To **certify** something means to confirm that its results are true.

→ *The photograph on her passport **certified** that she was indeed Jolene Sawyer.*



collaborate [kəlǽbərèit] *v.*

To **collaborate** means to work together on something.

→ *When they **collaborated**, they managed to finish their chores early.*



compile [kəmpáil] *v.*

To **compile** things means to collect a variety of them into a group.

→ *She **compiled** a list of people who she wanted to attend her birthday party.*



counteract [kàuntərǽkt] *v.*

To **counteract** something means to act against it in order to reduce or stop it.

→ *Medicine is supposed to **counteract** illnesses.*



curb [kə:rb] *v.*

To **curb** something means to prevent it from happening or increasing.

→ *She **curbed** her anger by listening to a relaxing song.*



diagnose [dáiəgnòus] *v.*

To **diagnose** someone means to identify the medical condition they have.

→ *Several of the children were **diagnosed** with the flu.*



enact [inǽkt] *v.*

To **enact** something means to make it into a law.

→ *The council **enacted** a law that would only allow buses to drive downtown.*



federation [fèdəréiʃən] *n.*

A **federation** is a group of states or businesses working for a common cause.

→ *The United Nations is a **federation** designed to prevent war, disease, and famine.*



gross [grous] *adj.*

If something is **gross**, then it is disgusting.

→ *The food was so **gross** that the dog couldn't eat it without feeling sick.*



humane [hju:méin] *adj.*

If something is **humane**, then it is good and kind.

→ *Helping build homes for poor people is very **humane**.*



intolerable [intálərəbəl] *adj.*

If something is **intolerable**, then it is so bad that people cannot bear it.

→ *The weather was so **intolerable** that I had to put on my warmest clothes.*



needy [ni:di] *adj.*

If someone is **needy**, they are very poor.

→ *After he lost his job, he became very **needy**.*



onset [ánsèt] *n.*

The **onset** of something unpleasant is the beginning of it.

→ *At the **onset** of the battle, the enemy wasn't prepared for such a large attack.*



pledge [pledʒ] *v.*

To **pledge** means to make a promise to do something.

→ *Her mother **pledged** that she would find her daughter's lost kitten.*



prohibit [prouhíbit] *v.*

To **prohibit** something means to not allow it.

→ *She **prohibited** the students from speaking until their work was done.*



rash [ræʃ] *n.*

A **rash** is an infected area of the skin with redness, bumps, itching, or dryness.

→ *The new perfume left a horrible **rash** on my skin.*



render [rendər] *v.*

To **render** something means to make it become something else.

→ *His report was **rendered** unimportant by the release of new information.*



smallpox [smɔ́:lpàks] *n.*

Smallpox is a disease that causes tiny bumps on the skin and high fevers.

→ *When she saw the tiny bumps, she thought her son might have **smallpox**.*



transmit [trænsmít] *v.*

To **transmit** something means to pass it from one person or place to another.

→ *The radio tower **transmits** a signal to all the radios in a 20-kilometer radius.*



vow [vau] *v.*

To **vow** means to make a promise to do something.

→ *Before they are allowed to work, all senators must **vow** to never accept bribes.*

UNIT

14 Word List



camouflage [kæməflà:ʒ] *n.*

Camouflage is something used to hide people and things.

→ *The green and brown **camouflage** was best used for hiding in forests and jungles.*



contemplate [kɑ́ntəmplèit] *v.*

To **contemplate** something means to think about it.

→ *Mark took a moment to **contemplate** the math problem before solving it.*



contend [kənténd] *v.*

To **contend** with something means to struggle to overcome it.

→ *Stacy had to **contend** with a learning disability throughout high school.*



cot [kɑt] *n.*

A **cot** is a small portable bed.

→ *At the camp, the boys' cabin was lined with **cots**.*



enlist [enlist] *v.*

To **enlist** means to join the military.

→ *In their final year at school, the students were asked to **enlist** in the military.*



frontier [frʌntiə:r] *n.*

A **frontier** is a border between two regions or countries.

→ *A fence was built along the **frontier** where the river curved.*



handbook [hǽndbùk] *n.*

A **handbook** is an item that gives specific information or instructions.

→ *If you look at the **handbook**, it will tell you which wires to connect to the TV.*



hesitant [hézətənt] *adj.*

If someone is **hesitant**, then they are not sure or slow in acting or speaking.

→ *Though he knew the answer, he was **hesitant** to say it because he might be wrong.*



lush [lʌʃ] *adj.*

If something is **lush**, then it is full of a variety of large, healthy plants.

→ *The **lush** jungle was filled with plants, trees, and vines.*



marrow [mǽrou] *n.*

Marrow is the soft substance in the center of bones.

→ *Dissolved **marrow** is a common ingredient in soups.*



outfit [áutfit] *n.*

An **outfit** is a set of clothes worn together, often for a certain job or event.

→ *Kelly's new **outfit** made her look so glamourous.*



paw [pɔ:] *n.*

A **paw** is an animal's foot that has claws or soft bottoms.

→ *The kitten cleaned its **paws** with its tongue.*



quiver [kwivər] *v.*

To **quiver** means to tremble or shake.

→ *The flame on the candle **quivered** whenever someone opened or closed a door.*



splendid [splêndid] *adj.*

If something or someone is **splendid**, then they are very good.

→ *From his head down to his shoes, his clothes looked **splendid**.*



stray [strei] *v.*

To **stray** means to go in a wrong direction and often become lost.

→ *He found himself lost because he had **strayed** from the tour group.*



substantial [səbstænʃəl] *adj.*

If something is **substantial**, then it is of great importance, size, or value.

→ *The bank said that he owed it a **substantial** amount of money.*



torch [tɔ:rtʃ] *n.*

A **torch** is a stick with one end on fire that can be carried in order to give light.

→ *He grabbed a piece of wood and stuck it in the fire in order to make a **torch**.*



tract [trækt] *n.*

A **tract** is a large area of land.

→ *On the other side of the mountains was a long **tract** of forest.*



vigil [vidʒəl] *n.*

A **vigil** is a period of watchful attention at night for a specific purpose.

→ *He had a **vigil** in front of the tomb for three days.*



weary [wiəri] *adj.*

If someone is **weary**, then they are tired.

→ *Jane was **weary** after a long day of work.*

UNIT 15

Word List



adhere [ədhiər] *v.*

To **adhere** means to act in the way that a rule or agreement says is right.

→ *If the new employees wish to succeed, they must **adhere** to the boss's rules.*



administer [ədministər] *v.*

To **administer** means to take responsibility for organizing something.

→ *The teacher's assistant will **administer** the test.*



compassionate [kəmpæʃənit] *adj.*

When people are **compassionate**, they feel pity and sympathy for others.

→ *The **compassionate** nurse tried to make the sick man feel comfortable.*



contaminate [kəntæmənèit] *v.*

To **contaminate** something means to put dirty or harmful chemicals into it.

→ *The lake was **contaminated** when pollutants entered into the water.*



deficiency [difiʃənsi] *n.*

A **deficiency** is a lack of something, especially something that is needed.

→ *Your snack has a **deficiency** of any real nutrients.*



epidemic [èpədémik] *n.*

An **epidemic** is an outbreak of a disease that spreads quickly.

→ *It was difficult to stop the flu **epidemic**.*



hazard [hǽzərd] *n.*

A **hazard** is something that could be dangerous to a person's health or safety.

→ *Smoking cigarettes poses many health **hazards**.*



imperative [impérətiv] *adj.*

When something is **imperative**, it is extremely important and must be done.

→ *It was **imperative** for him to find a job.*



intestines [intéstinz] *n.*

Intestines are tubes through which food passes after it leaves the stomach.

→ *Whatever you eat goes into your **intestines**.*



manifest [mǽnəfèst] *v.*

To **manifest** means to make something visible or obvious.

→ *The holiday season **manifested** joy in the children.*



metabolic [mètəbɑ̀lik] *adj.*

When something is **metabolic,** it relates to a person's or animal's metabolism.

→ *People who have a low **metabolic** rate will gain weight.*



overcrowded [òuvərkráudid] *adj.*

When a place is **overcrowded,** it has too many people or things in it.

→ *The lobby was **overcrowded** with people.*



paramount [pærəmàunt] *adj.*

When something is **paramount,** it is more important than anything else.

→ *The safety of passengers must be **paramount** when designing a car.*



practitioner [præktíʃənər] *n.*

A **practitioner** is a doctor.

→ *She made an appointment with the **practitioner** to treat her cough.*



provision [prəvíʒən] *n.*

The **provision** of something is the act of giving it to people in need or want.

→ *That department is responsible for the **provision** of emergency supplies.*



replenish [riplénij] *v.*

To **replenish** something means to make it full or complete again.

→ *We planted nearly one hundred seeds to **replenish** the garden after the fire.*



sterile [stéril] *adj.*

When something is **sterile,** it is completely clean and free from germs.

→ *The hospital room looked quite **sterile**.*



upgrade [ʌ̀pgréid] *v.*

To **upgrade** something means to improve it or make it more efficient.

→ *He **upgraded** to a real fancy car.*



viable [váiəbəl] *adj.*

When something is **viable,** it is capable of doing what it is intended to do.

→ *Her method of solving the math problem seemed **viable**.*



voluntary [vɑ́ləntèri] *adj.*

When something is **voluntary,** it is done by choice but is not required.

→ *Many people attended the **voluntary** boat safety class.*

UNIT 16

Word List



amid [əmid] *prep.*

If something is **amid** something else, then it is in the middle of it.

→ *The bee was busily flying **amid** the flowers in the garden.*



backstage [bækstèidʒ] *adv.*

If something happens **backstage**, it occurs behind a theater's stage.

→ *After the show, the director went **backstage** and thanked the actors.*



billionaire [biljənɛ̀ər] *n.*

A **billionaire** is someone who has at least one billion dollars.

→ *The sale of his inventions made the inventor a **billionaire**.*



brute [bru:t] *n.*

A **brute** is someone who behaves or looks like a violent animal.

→ *My older brother can act like a **brute** when he doesn't get his way.*



clumsy [klʌ́mzi] *adj.*

If someone is **clumsy**, then they are awkward in handling things.

→ *The businessman was **clumsy** and dropped his work files.*



collide [kəlaid] *v.*

To **collide** with something means to hit into it while moving.

→ *The two cars **collided** with each other because their drivers were not careful.*



culprit [kʌ́lprit] *n.*

A **culprit** is someone who did a crime or other bad deed.

→ *The police were still searching for the **culprit** from the robbery.*



evacuate [ivækjuèit] *v.*

To **evacuate** means to leave a place of danger to a place of safety.

→ *During the flood, many families were **evacuated** to higher ground.*



flammable [flæməbəl] *adj.*

If something is **flammable**, then it is able to catch on fire.

→ *Be careful with that blanket near the candle. It is extremely **flammable**.*



mob [mɑb] *n.*

A **mob** is a large crowd of people that often wants to cause violence.

→ *The copier was destroyed by a **mob** of angry workers.*



premature [prì mətʃúər] *adj.*

If something is **premature**, then it is done too early or before the proper time.

→ *Mark's celebration was **premature** because the ball hadn't fallen in the hole.*



resent [rizént] *v.*

To **resent** something means to have bad feelings about it.

→ *She **resented** the fact that she had never been able to play an instrument.*



satire [sǽtaiər] *n.*

A **satire** is a work of art that uses humor and irony to make fun of something.

→ *This book is a **satire** of what life was like in the army.*



scrutiny [skrú:təni] *n.*

Scrutiny is the careful examination of something.

→ *A scientist should always practice **scrutiny** with their work.*



segregate [ségrigèit] *v.*

To **segregate** something means to place it in a group apart from other things.

→ *In gym class, the children were **segregated** into two groups: boys and girls.*



subject [səbdʒékt] *v.*

To **subject** someone to something means to force them to do or experience it.

→ *The officers **subjected** everyone to a careful search before they left the plane.*



testify [téstəfài] *v.*

To **testify** means to give evidence as a witness.

→ *The judge listened while the victim **testified** about the robbery.*



tumult [tjú:mʌlt] *n.*

A **tumult** is a loud and confused noise made by a large crowd of people.

→ *She couldn't hear her friend over the **tumult** of the other excited guests.*



underestimate [ʌ̀ndəréstəmèit] *v.*

To **underestimate** something or someone means to think they are not important.

→ *We lost the game because we **underestimated** the other team's skill.*



uproar [ʌ́prɔ̀:r] *n.*

Uproar is loud noise caused by people who are very angry or upset.

→ *The fans made a great **uproar** when their team lost the game.*

UNIT 17

Word List



accelerate [æksélərèit] *v.*

To **accelerate** means to increase in speed.

→ *When he stepped on the gas pedal, the motorcycle **accelerated**.*



anew [ənjú:] *adv.*

If you do something **anew**, you do it again and in a different way.

→ *Though he had failed his driving test, he decided to try it **anew**.*



defect [difekt] *n.*

A **defect** is a part of something that is wrong or missing.

→ *All these bottles have a **defect** and must be sent back to the warehouse.*



dreary [dríəri] *adj.*

If something is **dreary**, then it is dull, dark, and lifeless.

→ *After the fire, this section of forest is rather **dreary**.*



duplicate [djú:pləkèit] *v.*

To **duplicate** something means to copy it.

→ *She **duplicated** her friend's movements like she was in front of a mirror.*



electromagnetic [ilèktroumægnétik] *adj.*

If something is **electromagnetic**, it is related to electricity and magnetic fields.

→ *Different colors of light come from different levels of **electromagnetic** energy.*



electron [iléktran] *n.*

An **electron** is a particle in all atoms that has a negative electric charge.

→ *The number of **electrons** in an atom determines the substance the atoms make.*



glide [glaid] *v.*

To **glide** means to fly on extended wings with little or no effort.

→ *When the wind is blowing, birds can **glide** easily through the sky.*



ingenious [indʒí:njəs] *adj.*

If someone is **ingenious**, then they are very smart.

→ *Charles was the only person **ingenious** enough to repair the plane's engines.*



innovation [inouvéiʃən] *n.*

An **innovation** is a product or an idea that is new or very original.

→ *Mrs. Johnson made a great **innovation** to the company's business plan.*



innovative [inouvèitiv] *adj.*

If something or someone is **innovative,** they can think in creative ways.

→ *Since Peter was so **innovative**, he was chosen to lead the science team.*



launch [lɔ:ntʃ] *v.*

To **launch** something means to make it go into motion.

→ *The boat **launched** from the dock and floated down the river.*



meteorological [mi:tiərəlάdʒikəl] *adj.*

If something is **meteorological,** it is concerned with the science of weather.

→ *The thunderstorm was so large that it became a great **meteorological** event.*



meteorology [mi:tiərάlədʒi] *n.*

Meteorology is the science that studies the weather.

→ *In order to understand the weather, you have to study **meteorology**.*



penetrate [pénətrèit] *v.*

To **penetrate** something means to enter into it.

→ *The knife easily **penetrated** the surface of the orange.*



propulsion [prəpʌ́lʃən] *n.*

Propulsion is the force that moves something forward.

→ *The **propulsion** lifted the rocket into the sky.*



simulate [simjəlèit] *v.*

To **simulate** something means to copy its actions or characteristics.

→ *The French language teacher could **simulate** the accent of a French citizen.*



spur [spə:r] *v.*

To **spur** someone means to urge them into action.

→ *The coach's speech **spurred** her team into playing the best game of their lives.*



stimulate [stimjəlèit] *v.*

To **stimulate** something means to cause or to increase activity in it.

→ *Doctors sometimes use electric shock to **stimulate** a patient's heartbeat.*



tenacious [tənéiʃəs] *adj.*

If someone is **tenacious,** then they do not easily give up.

→ *I'm sure that he'll finish that difficult sale. He is very **tenacious**.*

UNIT 18

Word List



beforehand [bifɔ́rhæ̀nd] *adv.*

If something is done **beforehand**, then it is done in advance.

→ *He packed his luggage **beforehand**, so he was able to leave right away.*



centigrade [séntəgrèid] *n.*

If a temperature is **centigrade**, it is scaled, so water freezes at 0° and boils at 100°.

→ *During the spring time, the temperature gets as warm as 26 degrees **centigrade**.*



chatter [tʃætər] *v.*

To **chatter** means to talk quickly about unimportant things.

→ *The children **chattered** in the back of the classroom.*



concerto [kəntʃə́rtou] *n.*

A **concerto** is music for a solo instrument and played with an orchestra.

→ *The piano **concerto** has a section in which only the piano plays.*



condense [kəndéns] *v.*

To **condense** a gas means to make it a liquid.

→ *The cool air made tiny drops of water **condense** on the tops of the grass.*



cove [kouv] *n.*

A **cove** is a part of land where it curves inward around the sea.

→ *They hid the boat in a small **cove** on the south side of the island.*



deteriorate [ditíəriərèit] *v.*

To **deteriorate** means to become steadily worse.

→ *The nation's economy continued to **deteriorate** despite the politicians' efforts.*



exterior [ikstíəriər] *n.*

An **exterior** is the outside surface of something.

→ *The **exterior** of the nut was hard and woody, but the inside was soft and delicious.*



freeway [fríːwèi] *n.*

A **freeway** is a road with no stops where cars travel at high speeds.

→ *Once you get on the **freeway**, it only takes an hour to drive to my parent's farm.*



hearty [hɑ́ːrti] *adj.*

If someone or something is **hearty**, then they are loud and happy.

→ *The grandmother ended her story with a **hearty** laugh that pleased her grandchild.*



hospitable [hάspitəbəl] *adj.*

If someone is **hospitable**, they are friendly to strangers.

→ *At dinner, Dad was very **hospitable** to my friends.*



manor [mænə:r] *n.*

A **manor** is a large house with many rooms.

→ *The **manor** had over forty rooms in addition to beautiful gardens.*



monastery [mάnəstèri] *n.*

A **monastery** is a building in which monks live.

→ *The monks at this **monastery** are famous for their bread and music.*



nursery [nə́:rsəri] *n.*

A **nursery** is a room where babies and children sleep, play, or are cared for.

→ *The children kissed their parents goodnight and went upstairs to the **nursery**.*



outstretched [àutstrétʃt] *adj.*

If something is **outstretched**, then it is extended to its full length.

→ *The cat stood on its back legs with its front legs **outstretched**.*



parcel [pά:rsəl] *n.*

A **parcel** is a package of things to be carried or mailed somewhere.

→ *The **parcel** looked like it had been stepped on by someone.*



profile [próufail] *n.*

A **profile** is an outline of a face, usually as seen from the side.

→ *The drawing of Olivia's **profile** came out very well.*



vivacious [vivéiʃəs] *adj.*

If someone is **vivacious**, they are talkative and cheerful.

→ *Everyone at the party was very **vivacious** and having a good time.*



winding [wáindiŋ] *adj.*

If something is **winding**, then it follows a twisting course.

→ *The **winding** river turned and looped around the bases of the hills.*



zip [zip] *v.*

To **zip** something means to close it with a zipper.

→ *She **zipped** her backpack closed after putting her books inside it.*

UNIT 19

Word List



airway [ɛ̌ərwèi] *n.*

An **airway** is the passage by which air reaches a person's lungs.

→ *Since he was sick, mucus would occasionally get stuck in his **airway**.*



Almighty [ɔːlmáiti] *n.*

The **Almighty** is a name for a god in a religion.

→ *Before eating, they thanked the **Almighty** for their food.*



advent [ædvent] *n.*

An **advent** is the arrival or beginning of an important person, thing, or event.

→ *During the **advent** of radio, very few programs actually played music.*



constellation [kɑ̀nstəléiʃən] *n.*

A **constellation** is a group of stars with a recognizable shape.

→ *That **constellation** in the shape of a square is named after a flying horse.*



definitive [difínətiv] *adj.*

If something is **definitive**, then it is the most official.

→ *This library has the **definitive** collection of books on ancient Egypt.*



equate [ikwéit] *v.*

To **equate** one thing with another is to compare them and consider them very similar.

→ *She **equated** the man's messy appearance with a lack of responsibility.*



inhale [inhéil] *v.*

To **inhale** means to take air or a smell into the lungs.

→ *The camper **inhaled** the cool and fresh mountain air and felt relaxed.*



invoke [invóuk] *v.*

To **invoke** something is to mention it to support an argument or ask for help.

→ *Before going into battle, the soldier **invoked** the name of his god for protection.*



lunar [lúːnər] *adj.*

If something is **lunar**, then it is related to the moon.

→ *During a **lunar** eclipse, Earth's shadow darkens the moon's surface.*



novelty [nɑ́vəlti] *n.*

A **novelty** is something that is new, original, or strange.

→ *Ice cream was a **novelty** for him since he rarely had any.*



outmoded [àutmóudid] *adj.*

If something is **outmoded**, then it is no longer in fashion or use.

→ *Black and white television sets are **outmoded**.*



personalize [pə́:rsənəlàiz] *v.*

To **personalize** something means to design it to meet a person's unique needs.

→ *He **personalized** the woman's exercises to give her a better workout.*



pertain [pərtéin] *v.*

To **pertain** to something means to be related or connected to it.

→ *All of the lawyer's questions **pertained** to events around the night of the crime.*



primal [práiməl] *adj.*

If something is **primal**, then it is very basic or related to the origin of something.

→ *Cooking the food over the camp fire felt like a **primal** way of making a meal.*



psychiatric [sàikiǽtrik] *adj.*

If something is **psychiatric**, then it is related to mental illness or its treatment.

→ *The doctor said the patient might have a **psychiatric** problem.*



psychiatry [saikáiətri] *n.*

Psychiatry is the study and treatment of mental illness.

→ *Studying **psychiatry** has taught me a lot about mental illness.*



reflex [ri:fleks] *n.*

A **reflex** is an unconscious action in which a body part responds to an event.

→ *There was a **reflex** when the doctor hit his knee with a rubber hammer.*



seizure [sí:ʒər] *n.*

A **seizure** is sudden illness in which the body loses control and shakes.

→ *Bright flashing lights can cause **seizures** in children.*



session [séjən] *n.*

A **session** is a meeting at a regular time in order to discuss and solve an issue.

→ *Every three months the managers met in a **session** to discuss regional sales.*



utensil [ju:ténsəl] *n.*

A **utensil** is a common tool or container.

→ *It seemed that a fork was the wrong **utensil** for trying to eat the soup.*

UNIT 20

Word List



adhesive [ædhí:siv] *n.*

An **adhesive** is a substance used for sticking things together.

→ *The carpenter used an **adhesive** to hold the two pieces of wood together.*



adverse [ædvə́:rs] *adj.*

If something is **adverse**, then it is harmful.

→ *Not eating healthy foods can have an **adverse** effect on your health.*



dependency [dipéndənsi] *n.*

A **dependency** is a strong need for someone or something.

→ *The child still has a **dependency** on her mother.*



dump [dʌmp] *v.*

To **dump** something means to throw it away or get rid of it.

→ *She **dumped** the garbage into the trash can.*



eternal [itə́:rnəl] *adj.*

If something is **eternal**, then it lasts forever.

→ *She said that her love for him was **eternal**.*



fluctuate [flʌ́ktʃuèit] *v.*

To **fluctuate** means to rise and fall in number or amount.

→ *Prices for gasoline have been **fluctuating** all month.*



fro [frou] *adv.*

If something moves to and **fro**, it moves backward and forward or side to side.

→ *Her long hair went to and **fro** as she swung on the swing.*



inclusion [inklú:ʒən] *n.*

Inclusion is the act of including someone or something in a group.

→ *Her **inclusion** into the photo club was well received.*



intermediate [intərmí:diit] *adj.*

If something is **intermediate**, then it is in the middle of two levels, places, or times.

→ *He selected the **intermediate** ski hill to begin his afternoon of skiing.*



intermittent [intərmítənt] *adj.*

If something is **intermittent**, then it happens in a way that is not constant.

→ *It was hard to focus because **intermittent** noises came from the workers outside.*



mentor [mɛ́ntɔːr] *n.*

A **mentor** is a person with experience or knowledge who advises someone.

→ *The students each chose a **mentor** to help them with the experiment.*



phoenix [fíːniks] *n.*

A **phoenix** is an imaginary bird that burned to ashes and was reborn.

→ *Some believe the **phoenix** is a symbol for rebirth and a new beginning.*



photosynthesis [fòutousíntəsis] *n.*

Photosynthesis is the process in which plants change sunlight and air.

→ *The chemical in plants that makes them green is used in **photosynthesis**.*



pollen [pálən] *n.*

Pollen is the tiny yellow powder made in the flowers of plants.

→ *During the spring, the **pollen** in the air makes some people become sick.*



regain [rigéin] *v.*

To **regain** something means to get it back.

→ *The battery **regained** its power after being recharged.*



reverse [rivə́ːrs] *v.*

To **reverse** means to change to the opposite direction.

→ *They **reversed** their direction after seeing the sign.*



swarm [swɔːrm] *n.*

A **swarm** is a group of flying insects.

→ *A beautiful **swarm** of butterflies filled the summer sky.*



texture [tékstʃər] *n.*

Texture is the quality of something that can be known by its touch.

→ *The **texture** of her skin was very soft and smooth.*



tickle [tíkəl] *v.*

To **tickle** someone is to touch them in a way that causes laughter.

→ *The mother **tickled** the little boy's foot, and he screamed with laughter.*



vibrant [váibrənt] *adj.*

If something is **vibrant**, then it is bright and full of color.

→ *Their new shirts were a **vibrant** shade of red.*

UNIT 21

Word List



abolish [əbáliʃ] *v.*

To **abolish** something means to put an end to it, such as a system or law.

→ *President Lincoln **abolished** slavery in the US.*



amend [əmènd] *v.*

To **amend** something means to change it to improve or make it accurate.

→ *The countries were in agreement that the treaty needed to be **amended**.*



aspire [əspáiər] *v.*

To **aspire** means to have a strong desire to achieve or do something.

→ *George **aspired** to be a doctor from a young age.*



censor [sénsər] *v.*

To **censor** information means to remove it if it is rude or rebellious.

→ *To protect innocent people, the location of the bomb was **censored**.*



charter [tʃáːrtər] *n.*

A **charter** is a document that describes the rights of an organization or group.

→ *The company **charter** explained that all employees had to pay a tax.*



constitution [kànstətjúːʃən] *n.*

A **constitution** is a document of principles for a government.

→ *The country's **constitution** said a prime minister could only serve three terms.*



cosmopolitan [kàzməpálətən] *adj.*

When a place is **cosmopolitan**, it is full of people from many different places.

→ *There are dozens of different types of restaurants in a **cosmopolitan** city.*



disseminate [disémənèit] *v.*

To **disseminate** information or knowledge means to distribute it.

→ *The organization **disseminates** information about the dangers of smoking.*



flatter [flǽtər] *v.*

To **flatter** people means to praise them in an effort to please them.

→ *He was just **flattering** me when he said that my new dress looked gorgeous.*



infamous [infəməs] *adj.*

When someone is **infamous**, they are well known for something bad.

→ *That news channel is **infamous** for presenting biased information.*



lame [leim] *adj.*

If one is **lame**, they cannot walk properly due to an injury to the leg or foot.
→ *The terrible accident left many people dead and several others* ***lame****.*



limp [limp] *v.*

To **limp** means to walk with difficulty because someone's leg or foot is hurt.
→ *After the injury, the player* ***limped*** *off of the field.*



outburst [áutbə:rst] *n.*

An **outburst** is a sudden, strong expression of an emotion.
→ *There was an* ***outburst*** *of cheers when the comedian took the stage.*



pathological [pæθəlάdʒikəl] *adj.*

When a behavior is **pathological**, it is extreme, unacceptable, and uncontrollable.
→ *The* ***pathological*** *liar could not even tell the truth about unimportant matters.*



phenomenal [finάmənl] *adj.*

When something is **phenomenal**, it is unusually great.
→ *The child's ability to play the piano is nothing short of* ***phenomenal****.*



poll [poul] *n.*

A **poll** is a survey in which people give their opinions about important things.
→ *The* ***poll*** *showed that many people support the plan to stop gang violence.*



remorse [rimɔ́:rs] *n.*

Remorse is a strong feeling of sadness and regret.
→ *When I realized what I did, I felt* ***remorse*** *for my actions.*



secrecy [sí:krəsi] *n.*

Secrecy is the behavior of keeping things secret.
→ *The* ***secrecy*** *of the big organization made the government nervous.*



tackle [tækəl] *v.*

To **tackle** something means to deal with it in a determined and efficient way.
→ *Such social problems need to be* ***tackled*** *right away.*



trance [træns] *n.*

A **trance** is a a state where people seem asleep and have no control of themselves.
→ *The woman's powerful eyes often put men in a* ***trance****.*

UNIT 22

Word List



coward [kauərd] *n.*

A **coward** is a person who lacks courage to do risky or dangerous things.

→ *A firefighter cannot be a **coward**. They have to be able to act quickly.*



delete [dilíːt] *v.*

To **delete** something means to remove or erase written material.

→ *Several lines had been **deleted** from her speech.*



firsthand [fə́ːrsthǽnd] *adj.*

If something is **firsthand**, then it is from an original source.

→ *If you want **firsthand** knowledge, ask someone who saw it.*



earnest [ə́ːrnist] *adj.*

If someone is **earnest**, then they are honest.

→ *The child was very **earnest** when she told her mother how she broke the dish.*



ethnic [éənik] *adj.*

If something is **ethnic**, then it is related to a group with a similar culture.

→ *Many sections of the city are home to different **ethnic** communities.*



exclude [iksklúːd] *v.*

To **exclude** someone means to not accept them into a group.

→ *Carol was **excluded** from the contest because her friend was a judge.*



fluent [flúːənt] *adj.*

If someone is **fluent** in a language, then they are able to speak it very well.

→ *She was so **fluent** in German that you'd have thought she was from Germany.*



imperial [impíəriəl] *adj.*

If something is **imperial**, then it is of, or related to an empire.

→ *These old **imperial** coins were once used in the Roman Empire.*



inclusive [inklúːsiv] *adj.*

If something is **inclusive**, then it is open to all groups and people in society.

→ *A more **inclusive** event would have allowed children to attend.*



legislature [lédʒisleitʃəːr] *n.*

A **legislature** is the section of a government that makes laws.

→ *The senator had served ten years in the national **legislature**.*



linguistic [liŋgwistik] *adj.*

If something is **linguistic**, then it is concerned with language.

→ *A **linguistic** way of studying culture focuses on words within that culture.*



monolingual [mánəliŋgwəl] *adj.*

If someone is **monolingual**, then they speak only one language.

→ *In today's global economy, being **monolingual** limits your opportunities.*



nationality [næʃənæləti] *n.*

Nationality is an identity based on the nation from which you come.

→ *His **nationality** is German, but he speaks French, Spanish, and Korean.*



patriot [péitriət] *n.*

A **patriot** is someone who loves, supports, and defends their country.

→ *Every year young **patriots** join their countries' militaries.*



prosecute [prásəkjù:t] *v.*

To **prosecute** someone means to take legal action against them.

→ *They were **prosecuted** for fishing in the river without a permit.*



racial [réiʃəl] *adj.*

If something is **racial**, then it is related to a race or races.

→ *The differences between **racial** groups are physical characteristics and culture.*



solemn [sáləm] *adj.*

If something is **solemn**, then it is serious and honest.

→ *The professor preferred a **solemn** relationship between him and his students.*



solidarity [sàlədærəti] *n.*

Solidarity is a union formed from common responsibilities or interests.

→ *All the citizens came together in a show of **solidarity** to create change.*



tact [tækt] *n.*

Tact is the ability to avoid offending people when dealing with problems.

→ *Since both sides would not agree, it required someone with **tact** to make peace.*



undermine [ʌndərmáin] *v.*

To **undermine** someone means to betray or weaken their efforts or authority.

→ *The documents helped to **undermine** the workers' trust in their bosses' honesty.*

UNIT 23

Word List



allocate [ǽləkèit] *v.*

To **allocate** something means to put it aside for a certain purpose or person.

→ *The government **allocated** $100 million to aid the disaster relief effort.*



appetizing [ǽpitàiziŋ] *adj.*

When food is **appetizing**, it looks and smells very good.

→ *The **appetizing** plate of cookies was gone in half an hour.*



blizzard [blízərd] *n.*

A **blizzard** is a severe snow storm with strong winds.

→ *We did not dare to go outside during the terrible **blizzard**.*



cavity [kǽvəti] *n.*

A **cavity** is a hole or space in something.

→ *There was a small **cavity** in the wall of the cave where an animal lived.*



clockwise [klɑ́kwàiz] *adv.*

If something moves **clockwise**, it moves in a circle in the same direction as a clock.

→ *Turn the screw **clockwise** to tighten it.*



concentric [kənsέntrik] *adj.*

When circles or rings are **concentric**, they have the same center.

→ *The target was a series of **concentric** circles.*



courtesy [kɔ́:rtəsi] *n.*

Courtesy is the excellence of manners or social conduct.

→ *Jenna always behaves with great **courtesy** when people visit her home.*



crisp [krisp] *adj.*

When food is **crisp**, it is hard or has a hard surface in a way that is pleasant.

→ *My favorite snack is a bag of **crisp**, delicious potato chips.*



discord [dísko:rd] *n.*

Discord is disagreement or fighting between people.

→ *There was much **discord** between the experts on the talk show.*



frigid [frídʒid] *adj.*

When something is **frigid**, it is extremely cold.

→ *We decided not to go on the hike because the weather was too **frigid**.*



generate [dʒénərèit] *v.*

To **generate** something means to cause it to develop or begin.

→ *The mayor promised to **generate** new jobs and programs to help the poor.*



glacial [glèiʃəl] *adj.*

When something is **glacial**, it relates to large masses of ice that move slowly.

→ *Penguins thrive in the **glacial** regions of Antarctica.*



interchange [intərtʃèindʒ] *n.*

An **interchange** of ideas between people is a discussion of each person's idea.

→ *There was an **interchange** of ideas between the groups.*



locker [lάkər] *n.*

A **locker** is a small cabinet with a lock where people store their possessions.

→ *I keep my school books in my **locker**.*



multicultural [mʌltikʌ́ltʃərəl] *adj.*

When something is **multicultural**, it relates to many different cultures.

→ *Everyone was welcomed to attend the **multicultural** celebration.*



omission [oumíʃən] *n.*

An **omission** is something that has been left out or not done.

→ *Mike was upset because of the **omission** of his name during the ceremony.*



oversee [ouvərsíː] *v.*

To **oversee** something means to make sure that it is being done properly.

→ *His job was to **oversee** the progress of the construction project.*



pierce [piərs] *v.*

To **pierce** something means to make a hole in it using a sharp object.

→ *The arrow **pierced** the target in the very center.*



replicate [repləkèit] *v.*

To **replicate** something is to do it in the exact same way as someone before.

→ *I would love to **replicate** my father's achievements in school.*



wavy [wéivi] *adj.*

When something is **wavy**, it is not straight but has a series of curves.

→ *The child drew **wavy** lines all over the piece of paper.*

UNIT 24

Word List



abide [əbáid] *v.*

To **abide** by something, like a rule, means to obey it.

→ *If you want to play the game with us, you must be willing to **abide** by our rules.*



conversion [kənvə́:rʒən] *n.*

Conversion is the act of changing something into a different state or form.

→ *The city discussed the **conversion** of the parking lot into a skateboard park.*



cram [kræm] *v.*

To **cram** things means to put them into a place that can barely contain them.

→ *He **crammed** all of his shirts into the top drawer of the dresser.*



defer [difə́:r] *v.*

To **defer** means to arrange for an action to happen at a later time.

→ *The girl was very sleepy, so she chose to **defer** her bath until morning.*



export [ikspɔ́:rt] *v.*

To **export** products means to sell them to other countries.

→ *The United States **exports** many cereals and grains.*



fume [fju:m] *n.*

Fumes are unhealthy smoke and gases that are made by fires or chemicals.

→ *The engine put unpleasant, black **fumes** into the air.*



habitual [həbítʃuəl] *adj.*

When something is **habitual**, it is a behavior that a person usually does or has.

→ *The man was a **habitual** liar who was incapable of being honest with the police.*



justify [dʒʌ́stəfài] *v.*

To **justify** something means to show or prove that it is necessary.

→ *The government tried to **justify** its decision to bring the country into a war.*



output [áutpùt] *n.*

Output is the amount of something that a person or thing produces.

→ *The boss hired more workers to increase the factory's **output** of products.*



overpopulation [òuvərpɑ̀pjuléiʃən] *n.*

Overpopulation is the state of having too many people in an area.

→ *The organization is concerned with **overpopulation** of the world.*



patent [pætənt] *n.*

A **patent** is a right to be the only person allowed to make or sell a new product.

→ *He quickly established a **patent** for his brilliant invention.*



penalize [pi:nəlàiz] *v.*

To **penalize** someone means to punish him or her.

→ *The team was **penalized** when they broke the rules.*



petroleum [pitróuliəm] *n.*

Petroleum is a liquid natural resource from which many fuels are made.

→ *The **petroleum** at that factory is used to make gasoline.*



prototype [próutətàip] *n.*

A **prototype** is a new machine that is not ready to be made in large quantities.

→ *He introduced his **prototype** to the motorcycle company.*



scrap [skræp] *n.*

A **scrap** of something is a small amount of it.

→ *Chris liked to use many **scraps** of paper when thinking up ideas.*



sector [séktə:r] *n.*

A **sector** is a part of a country's economy in a specific type of industry.

→ *We learned about just a few of the factories within the manufacturing **sector**.*



subscribe [səbskráib] *v.*

To **subscribe** to something is to agree or to concur with it.

→ *She **subscribed** to the view that musical education should be kept in schools.*



subsist [səbsíst] *v.*

To **subsist** means to have the food, water, and money needed to stay alive.

→ *Some people are forced to **subsist** on only a few dollars a month.*



suspend [səspend] *v.*

To **suspend** something means to delay or stop it from happening for a while.

→ The oil company ***suspended*** production until it was sure the factory was safe.



synthesis [sínəəsis] *n.*

A **synthesis** is a combination of different ideas or styles.

→ *The band's music was a **synthesis** of many different musical genres.*

UNIT

25 Word List



acrobat [ækrəbæt] *n.*

An **acrobat** is a person who entertains people by doing amazing physical things.

→ *There were **acrobats** at the circus that did impressive and complicated jumps.*



advocacy [ædvəkəsi] *n.*

Advocacy is the act of supporting or recommending something.

→ *Janine's strong **advocacy** for the event made people want to attend.*



communal [kəmjúːnl] *adj.*

If something is **communal**, it involves a group of people.

→ *On the weekends, Theo and his son picked up trash in the **communal** park.*



fluid [flúːid] *adj.*

If something is **fluid**, it is smooth and moves gracefully.

→ *Boris was a famous ballet dancer because people admired his **fluid** movements.*



harmonize [hάːrmənàiz] *v.*

To **harmonize** means to make different things go well together.

→ *The sweet and sour flavors of the dish **harmonized** well and tasted great.*



industrious [indʌ́striəs] *adj.*

If someone is **industrious**, they work hard.

→ *Dennis was very **industrious**, so he never had problems finding a job.*



inventive [invéntiv] *adj.*

When someone is **inventive**, they are good at creating new things.

→ *The **inventive** student built a robot to help her with her chores.*



judicial [dʒuːdíʃəl] *adj.*

If something is **judicial**, it is related to judges or courts of law.

→ *The laws changed the way the **judicial** system was structured.*



Mandarin [mændərin] *n.*

Mandarin is one of the two main Chinese languages.

→ *Although John's parents both spoke **Mandarin**, he could only speak English.*



metropolitan [mètrəpάlitən] *adj.*

If something is **metropolitan**, it relates to a large city.

→ *All of the **metropolitan** excitement of New York City made Rufus nervous.*



mimic [mímik] *v.*

To **mimic** something means to copy the way it sounds or moves.

→ *The hunter **mimicked** a duck's call and shot the two ducks that called back.*



misguided [misgáidid] *adj.*

When something is **misguided**, it is based on bad judgment or wrong beliefs.

→ *The snake bit Molly during her **misguided** attempt to grab it.*



rehearse [rihə́:rs] *v.*

To **rehearse** means to practice and prepare for a performance in front of people.

→ *Vick's band **rehearsed** all week before their first show.*



scorn [skɔ:rn] *v.*

To **scorn** someone means to behave without respect toward them.

→ *The criminal was **scorned** by everyone in the community.*



sensory [sénsəri] *adj.*

If something is **sensory**, it is related to the senses.

→ *Iris and Eric preferred the **sensory** thrill of watching movies in the theater.*



staple [stéipəl] *adj.*

If something is **staple**, it is standard or basic.

→ *Hamburgers, steaks and hotdogs are **staple** foods to cook on a grill.*



statute [stǽtʃu:t] *n.*

A **statute** is a law that is official and has been written down.

→ *The new **statute** made it illegal to walk dogs in the park.*



veteran [vétərən] *n.*

A **veteran** is someone who has a lot of experience doing something.

→ *Hank was the team **veteran** and had played in more games than anyone else.*



villain [vílən] *n.*

A **villain** is an evil person who breaks the law or hurts others.

→ *The **villain** escaped with half of my family's valuables.*



vine [vain] *n.*

A **vine** is a plant that has long, twisting stems and climbs upward.

→ *The branches of the trees were covered with **vines**.*

UNIT

26 Word List



constrain [kənstréin] *v.*

To **constrain** something means to limit its development.

→ *Jim cannot join us because he is **constrained** by previous plans.*



depot [di:pou] *n.*

A **depot** is a bus or train station.

→ *He waited for his mother to arrive at the **depot**.*



emulate [émjəlèit] *v.*

To **emulate** people means to imitate them because they are greatly admired.

→ *As a small boy, he always tried to **emulate** his big brother.*



forefinger [fɔ́:rfiŋgər] *n.*

The **forefinger** is the finger between one's thumb and middle finger.

→ *He shouted, "There it is!" and pointed with his **forefinger**.*



guts [gʌts] *n.*

The **guts** are all the organs inside a person or animal.

→ *The doctor can tell you every process that happens in one's **guts**.*



inherent [inhíərənt] *adj.*

When something is **inherent**, it is a natural part of something else.

→ *Sweating is an **inherent** bodily function when exercising.*



intimidate [intímədèit] *v.*

To **intimidate** means to frighten others.

→ *My dad **intimidates** my friends whenever they visit.*



janitor [dʒǽnətər] *n.*

A **janitor** is a person who makes repairs and takes care of a building.

→ *The school **janitor** cleaned up the messy cafeteria.*



moist [mɔist] *adj.*

When something is **moist**, it is slightly wet.

→ *The ground is still **moist** from the rain last night.*



nope [noup] *adv.*

Nope is an informal way of saying "no."

→ *He asked if I had any money, and I had to say, "**Nope**."*



prod [prɑd] *v.*

To **prod** means to push someone or something with a finger or pointed object.
→ *The bully **prodded** me in the chest with his finger.*



ransom [rænsəm] *n.*

A **ransom** is a sum of money paid to a kidnapper to set the person free.
→ *He kidnapped the prince and demanded $1 million as **ransom**.*



restrain [rɪstréɪn] *v.*

To **restrain** someone or something means to use physical strength to stop them.
→ *Mike **restrained** Allen from reaching the door.*



saliva [səláɪvə] *n.*

Saliva is the watery liquid in people's mouths that helps in digestion.
→ *The baby could not keep the **saliva** from dripping out of its mouth.*



spit [spɪt] *v.*

To **spit** means to force liquid from one's mouth.
→ *He emerged from the pool and **spit** water from his mouth.*



sprint [sprɪnt] *v.*

To **sprint** means to run very fast over a short distance.
→ *The kids didn't want to be late to class, so they **sprinted** to the bus stop.*



stunt [stʌnt] *n.*

A **stunt** is something that is done in order to get attention or publicity.
→ *The man jumped over the cars as a promotional **stunt**.*



tolerant [tɑ́lərənt] *adj.*

When people are **tolerant**, they are approved of because they accept others.
→ *The **tolerant** leader thought that everyone was equal regardless of race.*



vampire [væmpaɪər] *n.*

A **vampire** is a fictional monster that sleeps in a coffin and sucks people's blood.
→ *The **vampire** snuck up on the woman and bit her in the neck.*



yawn [jɔːn] *v.*

To **yawn** means to open one's mouth wide and breathe in air.
→ *The child **yawned** and stretched her arms before bed for the night.*

UNIT 27

Word List



analogy [ənælədʒi] *n.*

An **analogy** is a connection made between things to show that they are similar.

→ *The doctor made an **analogy** between the human heart and a water pump.*



ancestry [ænsestri] *n.*

A person's **ancestry** is the series of people from whom a person descended.

→ *We studied our **ancestry** and found out that we are related to royalty.*



archer [ɑ:rtʃər] *n.*

An **archer** is a person who uses a bow and arrows.

→ *The expert **archer** hit the target every time.*



conspiracy [kənspirəsi] *n.*

A **conspiracy** is a secret plan made by a group of people to do something illegal.

→ *Some people think that there was a **conspiracy** to kill American president John Kennet*



deputy [dépjəti] *n.*

A **deputy** is the second-highest-ranking person in a business or government.

→ *While the sheriff was ill, the **deputy** took over his duties.*



earl [ə:rl] *n.*

An **earl** is a nobleman from Britain.

→ *The **Earl** of Canterbury lived in a huge mansion.*



fragrant [fréigrənt] *adj.*

When something is **fragrant**, it has a pleasant smell.

→ *The girl picked delicious berries and **fragrant** flowers.*



funnel [fʌnl] *n.*

A **funnel** is an object with a wide top and a narrow bottom for pouring liquids.

→ *The worker used a **funnel** when he poured the oil into the engine.*



hereditary [hirédətèri] *adj.*

If something is **hereditary**, it is a trait passed onto children from their parents.

→ *The **hereditary** disease affected three generations of children.*



hymn [him] *n.*

A **hymn** is a religious song that often praises a god.

→ *The book was filled with **hymns** that the worshippers sang.*



invert [invə́:rt] *v.*

To **invert** something means to turn it upside down.

→ *He **inverted** the bicycle to make repairs on the wheels.*



prey [prei] *n.*

Prey is the animals that are hunted and eaten by another creature.

→ *The lion ran as fast as he could to catch his **prey**.*



procession [prəséʃən] *n.*

A **procession** is a group of people who walk or drive in a line during a public event.

→ *The **procession** all celebrated when they reached the end.*



prophet [prɑ́fit] *n.*

A **prophet** is a person chosen by a god to give the god's message to people.

→ *Harold believed that he was one of the **prophets** of his god.*



sarcastic [sɑ:rkǽstik] *adj.*

When something is **sarcastic**, it is the opposite of what is actually meant.

→ *She hurt her mother's feelings with her constant **sarcastic** remarks.*



seasoning [sí:zəniŋ] *n.*

Seasoning is a mix of salt, herbs, and spices that improves the taste of food.

→ *This steak tastes bland. Maybe I'll add some **seasoning** to it.*



sodium [sóudiəm] *n.*

Sodium is an element that can be used to make substances such as salt.

→ ***Sodium** and chloride combine to make table salt.*



tyranny [tírəni] *n.*

A **tyranny** is a cruel and unfair government in which one person has power.

→ *His **tyranny** was impossible to live under.*



tyrant [táiərənt] *n.*

A **tyrant** is someone who treats people in a cruel, harsh, and unfair way.

→ *Our boss is a **tyrant**. He makes us work long hours for little pay.*



vinegar [vínigər] *n.*

Vinegar is a strong liquid made from sour wine that is used in cooking.

→ *Be careful because too much **vinegar** will ruin the recipe.*

UNIT

28 Word List



adjoining [ədʒɔ́iniŋ] *adj.*

If something is **adjoining**, it is next to or joined with a building, or room.

→ *I couldn't sleep because the people in the **adjoining** room were loud.*



allege [əlédʒ] *v.*

To **allege** something is to say that it is true without offering proof.

→ *The little girl had **alleged** that her older brother hid her favorite doll.*



arch [ɑ:rtʃ] *n.*

An **arch** is a curved opening formed under a structure such as a bridge or doorway.

→ *The **arch** of the bridge was not high enough for the tall boat to pass underneath.*



assemble [əsémbəl] *v.*

To **assemble** means to get together in one place.

→ *The parents **assembled** to discuss ways to improve their children's education.*



casualty [kæʒuəlti] *n.*

A **casualty** is a person killed or injured in a war or an accident.

→ *The only **casualty** in the car accident was a woman who broke her arm.*



erect [irékt] *v.*

To **erect** something means to build it.

→ *The king **erected** two towers on the north and south sides of his castle.*



foul [faul] *adj.*

If something is **foul**, then it is not pleasant or enjoyable.

→ *He wouldn't let his dog drink from the water because it had a **foul** smell.*



hectare [héktɛər] *n.*

A **hectare** is a unit of measure equal to 10, 000 square meters.

→ *His family farm covered many **hectares**.*



heighten [háitn] *v.*

To **heighten** an emotion means to increase the intensity of it.

→ *The pleasant music **heightened** their enjoyment of the wonderful dinner.*



hospitality [hɑ̀spitǽləti] *n.*

Hospitality is friendly behavior and entertainment given to guests or strangers.

→ *The travelers were amazed at the **hospitality** given them by the hotel's staff.*



mansion [mǽnʃən] *n.*

A **mansion** is a large and expensive home.

→ *The **mansion** had thirty bedrooms, two kitchens, and a pool.*



outnumber [àutnʌ́mbər] *v.*

To **outnumber** a group means to have a greater number than it.

→ *The girls **outnumbered** the boys at the school by four to one.*



overjoyed [òuvərdʒɔ́id] *adj.*

If someone is **overjoyed**, then they are extremely happy.

→ *He was **overjoyed** by the news of his promotion.*



pasture [pǽstʃər] *n.*

A **pasture** is an area of land covered with grass for animals to use as food.

→ *The sheep were taken to a **pasture** where there was more grass.*



petition [pitíʃən] *n.*

A **petition** is a written request asking an authority to do something.

→ *The citizens all signed a **petition** asking the mayor to repair the sidewalks.*



renovate [rénəvèit] *v.*

To **renovate** a building means to repair it or build new structures on it.

→ *The old fire station was **renovated** into an apartment building.*



revise [riváiz] *v.*

To **revise** something means to change or update it to make it better.

→ *When the editor discovered certain facts were wrong, he **revised** the book.*



slab [slæb] *n.*

A **slab** is a large, thick, flat piece of stone, concrete, metal, or wood.

→ *I looked at various **slabs** of stone to decorate my house.*



terrace [terəs] *n.*

A **terrace** is an open area that is connected to a house or an apartment.

→ *In the afternoons, she liked to sit on the **terrace** and check her email.*



turf [tə:rf] *n.*

Turf is a section of grass and the dirt in which it grows.

→ *After the game, the **turf** looked ragged.*

UNIT 29

Word List



analogous [ənǽləgəs] *adj.*

If something is **analogous** to another thing, then it is like it in certain ways.

→ *The relationship with his teacher was **analogous** to that of a son and mother.*



binoculars [bənɑ́kjələrz] *n.*

Binoculars are a device used for seeing things that are far away.

→ *He could see the ship on the horizon only if he used his **binoculars**.*



bulk [bʌlk] *n.*

The **bulk** of something is its great size.

→ *The large elephant moved its **bulk** with legs as strong as tree trunks.*



comprise [kəmpráiz] *v.*

If something **comprises** something else, it consists of or is made up of it.

→ *Our school's football team is mostly **comprised** with seniors.*



depict [dipíkt] *v.*

To **depict** something means to show or portray it, often using art.

→ *The statue's face **depicted** the general's determination and courage.*



dual [djúːəl] *adj.*

If something is **dual**, then it is made up of two parts.

→ *The room had a **dual** function. It was a living room, but at night it was a bedroom.*



Fahrenheit [fǽrənhàit] *n.*

Fahrenheit temperature is a scale where water freezes at 32° and boils at 212°.

→ *When the temperature dropped to 32° **Fahrenheit**, it started snowing.*



fulfill [fulfíl] *v.*

To **fulfill** something means to achieve or finish it.

→ *The professor did not **fulfill** his promise not to miss a single class.*



grove [grouv] *n.*

A **grove** is a small group of trees.

→ *All the trees in this **grove** are apple trees.*



ore [ɔːr] *n.*

Ore is the raw form of rock or material from which a valuable metal is taken.

→ *The factory melted the **ore** and used it to make iron products.*



outback [áutbæ̀k] *n.*

The **outback** is the wild inland region of Australia where very few people live.

→ *Many Australian farmers use the **outback** to raise cattle.*



outweigh [àutwéi] *v.*

To **outweigh** something means to exceed it in value, amount, or importance.

→ *Finding a warm place to sleep **outweighed** the need to find something to eat.*



paradox [pǽrədɑ̀ks] *n.*

A **paradox** is a true statement or real event that seems illogical.

→ *The **paradox** of her work was that the less she worked, the more she got done.*



pier [piər] *n.*

A **pier** is a structure that extends into a body of water.

→ *If you want to catch bigger fish, then go to the far end of the **pier**.*



shortcut [ʃɔ́:rtkʌ̀t] *n.*

A **shortcut** is a route that is shorter than the main route.

→ *We got to the house first because we took a **shortcut** through the forest.*



tariff [tærif] *n.*

A **tariff** is a tax or fee paid on certain imports or exports.

→ *Our **tariff** on imported wool makes foreign wool more expensive.*



thermometer [θərmɑ́mitə*r*] *n.*

A **thermometer** is a device that measures temperature.

→ *The **thermometer** outside the window indicated that it was a hot day today.*



tilt [tilt] *v.*

To **tilt** something means to tip it into a sloping position.

→ *She **tilted** her glass and almost spilled some of the wine inside.*



vice versa [vàisivə́:rsə] *adv.*

If a statement is **vice versa**, then its two main ideas are switched with one another.

→ *Students learn from their teachers, and **vice versa**.*



whereabouts [hwɛ́ərəbàuts] *n.*

The **whereabouts** of someone or something is the place where they are.

→ *The police looked for the lost dog, but its **whereabouts** were still unknown.*

UNIT 30

Word List



amber [æmbər] *n.*

Amber is a hard, yellowish material that comes from trees.

→ *The necklace was made from pieces of **amber**.*



charcoal [tʃɑ́:rkòul] *n.*

Charcoal is a black material that is used as fuel for fire.

→ *There was burnt **charcoal** left on the ground from an old fire.*



columnist [kɑ́ləmnist] *n.*

A **columnist** is a writer who creates articles about a particular subject.

→ *The **columnist** won praise for his articles about life on the farm.*



courteous [kə́:rtiəs] *adj.*

When someone is **courteous**, they are polite and respectful.

→ *The mother asked her family to be **courteous** to their guests.*



credentials [kridénʃəlz] *n.*

Credentials are the proof of someone's experience or ability to do something.

→ *The mechanic hung his **credentials** on his office wall.*



cricket [krikit] *n.*

A **cricket** is an insect that makes loud noises, usually at night.

→ *In the country, we could see the stars and hear the **crickets** at night.*



delta [déltə] *n.*

A **delta** is flat area where a river splits into smaller rivers that flow into the sea.

→ *The archeologists found many ancient materials in the **delta** of the Nile River.*



detergent [ditə́:rdʒənt] *n.*

Detergent is soap that is used to clean clothes or dishes.

→ *My brother added too much **detergent** to the wash, and bubbles got all over the floor.*



euphemism [jú:fəmizəm] *n.*

A **euphemism** is a term that is used in place of a mean or unpleasant word.

→ *"Window maintenance officer" is a **euphemism** for a window washer.*



expire [ikspáiər] *v.*

To **expire** is to no longer be effective because its use has come to an end.

→ *The man's driver's license was going to **expire** in two days.*



granite [grænit] *n.*

Granite is a very hard type of rock that is often black or pink.

→ *The kitchen counter was made of **granite**.*



gravel [grævəl] *n.*

Gravel is a combination of small stones mixed with sand.

→ *The ground around the swing set was covered with **gravel**.*



haunt [hɔ:nt] *v.*

To **haunt** is to cause problems or negative thoughts over a long period of time.

→ *His thoughts about his scary dream **haunted** him for weeks.*



liberal [libərəl] *adj.*

When someone is **liberal**, they accept different ideas and people.

→ *My grandparents aren't as **liberal** as my parents.*



maze [meiz] *n.*

A **maze** is a system of paths that is complicated and easy to get lost in.

→ *We got lost in the **maze** in the garden.*



moss [mɔ(:)s] *n.*

Moss is a small green or yellow plant that grows on wet dirt, rocks, or tree trunks.

→ *Be careful not to slip on the **moss** that's covering those rocks.*



pebble [pébəl] *n.*

A **pebble** is a small, round stone.

→ *We threw **pebbles** into the lake to make the water splash.*



peck [pek] *v.*

When a bird **pecks**, it bites or hits something with its beak.

→ *The birds **pecked** at the seeds on the ground.*



reservoir [rézərvwà:r] *n.*

A **reservoir** is a place for storing water for a town to use.

→ *If it doesn't rain soon, the **reservoir** is going to dry up completely.*



streak [stri:k] *n.*

A **streak** is a long, thin mark that is easy to see.

→ *Her hair was brown except for a **streak** which she dyed blonde.*

Index

A

abide 146
abolish 128
absurd 20
accelerate 104
accumulate 62
acrobat 152
adhere 92
adhesive 122
adjoining 170
administer 92
adorn 74
advent 116
adverse 122
advocacy 152
advocate 68
aerial 62
airway 116
allege 170
alleviate 8
allocate 140
Almighty 116
altar 44
alternate 32
amber 182
amend 128
amid 98
analogous 176
analogy 164
ancestry 164
anemia 20
anew 104
apologetic 32
apparatus 62
appetizing 140
arch 170
archer 164
arduous 14
aristocracy 20
aristocrat 20
artery 56
arthritis 44
ashore 38
aspire 128
assemble 170
astrology 8
attain 14
attic 26
attire 20
authorize 68
avalanche 62

B

backstage 98
beforehand 110
benign 32
billionaire 98
binoculars 176
bliss 74
blizzard 140
botany 44
brute 98
bulk 176
butler 74

C

camouflage 86
casualty 170
cavity 140
censor 128
centigrade 110
certify 80
char 32
charcoal 182
charter 128
chatter 110
chunk 26
civic 26
civilian 68
clarify 32
clockwise 140
clumsy 98
coexist 14
collaborate 80
collide 98
columnist 182
commodity 68
communal 152
compassionate 92
compile 80
comprise 176
conceive 14
concentric 140
concerto 110
condense 110
congested 50
conquest 68
consistency 62
conspiracy 164
constellation 116
constitution 128
constrain 158
contaminate 92
contemplate 86
contend 86
contradict 38
convection 62
conversion 146
cosmopolitan 128
cot 86
counteract 80
counterpart 38
courier 50
courteous 182
courtesy 140
cove 110
coward 134
cram 146
cramp 74
craze 20
credentials 182
credible 44
crickets 182
crisp 140
culprit 98
curb 80

D

deceased 44
deception 44
decipher 44
defect 104
defer 146
deficiency 92
definitive 116
deform 50
delete 134
delta 182
dependency 122
depict 176
depot 158
deputy 164
descent 26
detergent 182
deteriorate 110
deterioration 56
devoid 38
diagnose 80
differentiate 8
dilapidated 74
din 26
discharge 62
disclose 68
discord 140
disrupt 8
dissatisfy 26
disseminate 128
distress 32
diverge 38
dogged 32
dreary 104
dual 176
dubious 14
dump 122
dung 44
duplicate 104
dusk 44
dynamics 68

E

earl 164
earnest 134

ego 14
elastic 14
electromagnetic ... 104
electron 104
elude 38
elusive 56
embryo 38
emulate 158
enact 80
endeavor 14
engrave 14
enlarge 20
enlist 86
enroll 68
ensue 32
envious 68
epidemic 92
equate 116
equation 8
erect 170
err 8
erroneous 8
eternal 122
ethnic 134
etiquette 50
euphemism 182
euphoria 68
evacuate 98
evoke 74
excavate 14
excess 20
exclude 134
exclusive 50
expire 182
export 146
exterior 110

F

Fahrenheit 176
farewell 74
faucet 74
federation 80
feminine 20
fend 38
festive 69
fictitious 38
filth 74
firsthand 134
flammable 98
flatter 128
flaw 74
fluctuate 122
fluent 134
fluid 152
forage 56
forefinger 158
foul 170
fragrant 164
frantic 8
freeway 110
freight 50
frigid 140
fro 122
frontier 86
fulfill 176
fume 146
funnel 164
fuss 26

G

garment 50
gasp 32
gazette 38
generate 141
glacial 141
glide 104
gourmet 26
granite 183
gratify 44
gravel 183
grin 75
gross 80
grove 176
guts 158

H

habitual 146
hallmark 20
handbook 86
harmonize 152
haunt 183
hazard 92
hearty 110
hectare 170
heighten 170
hence 26
hereditary 164
hesitant 86
homogeneous 39
hone 45
hospitable 111
hospitality 170
housekeeping 75
hull 8
humane 80
hymn 164

I

impede 56
imperative 92
imperial 134
improvise 9
inadvertent 8
inclusion 122
inclusive 134
induce 56
industrious 152
infamous 128
ingenious 104
inhale 116
inherent 158
innovation 104
innovative 105
inseparable 56
insomnia 50
intact 62
interchange 141
intermediate 122
intermittent 122
intestines 92
intimidate 158
intolerable 81
intrinsic 26
intuitive 50
invalid 56
inventive 152
invert 165
invoke 116

J

jagged 15
janitor 158
jolly 69
judicial 152
justify 146

K

kettle 27

L

lame 129
latitude 9
launch 105
legislature 134
lentil 69
liable 50
liberal 183
limp 129
linguistic 135
locale 15
locker 141
lunar 116
lush 86

M

magnify 56

mainstream 56
Mandarin 152
manifest 92
manor 111
mansion 171
mariner 9
marrow 86
marshal 69
mash 45
maze 183
mentor 123
metabolic 93
meteorological 105
meteorology 105
metropolitan 152
microbe 57
mimic 153
ministry 27
misguided 153
mob 98
moist 158
mold 15
monastery 111
monolingual 135
morale 69
mortal 62
moss 183
mound 75
multicultural 141
multitude 9

N

nationality 135
needy 81
negligible 57
negotiate 32
nope 158
novelty 116
nuisance 9
numb 75
nursery 111

O

obsess 51
obstruct 39
omen 62
omission 141
onset 81
ordeal 27
ore 176
ornate 45
outback 177
outburst 129
outfit 87
outmoded 117
outnumber 171
output 146
outright 15
outspoken 27
outstretched 111
outweigh 177
overboard 51
overcast 63
overcrowded 93
overdose 33
overjoyed 171
overpopulation 146
oversee 141
overwork 27

P

pad 21
paradox 177
paralysis 57
paramount 93
parcel 111
particular 27
pasture 171
patent 147
pathological 129
patriot 135
paw 87
pebble 183
peck 183
penalize 147
penetrate 105
periphery 15
permanence 9
personalize 117
persuasion 33
pertain 117
pest 57
petition 171
petroleum 147
phenomenal 129
phoenix 123
photosynthesis 123
pier 177
pierce 141
plaster 15
pledge 81
plunge 39
pneumonia 45
poignant 63
poll 129
pollen 123
practitioner 93
predominant 21
premature 99
premium 51
prevail 57
prey 165
primal 117
privilege 51
procession 165
prod 159
profile 111
prohibit 81
prolong 39
propel 51
prophecy 69
prophet 165
propulsion 105
prosecute 135
prototype 147
provision 93
psychiatric 117
psychiatry 117
psychic 45
psychotic 45
publicize 39
pungent 27

Q

quiver 87

R

racial 135
ranger 63
ransom 159
rash 81
reckless 75
reflex 117
regain 123
rehearse 153
relay 33
reluctance 33
remorse 129
render 81
renovate 171
replenish 93
replicate 141
reputable 21
resent 99
reservoir 183
respiration 57
restate 33
restrain 159
reverse 123
revise 171
revolve 9
rouge 21
rubble 63
rupture 57

S

sage 69
saliva 159
sarcastic 165
satire 99
savage 57

scope 45
scorn 153
scrap 147
scrutiny 99
seasoning 165
seclude 63
secrecy 129
sector 147
segregate 99
seizure 117
senate 69
sensory 153
sentiment 69
sesame 33
session 117
shortcut 177
shovel 15
sideways 63
signify 21
simulate 105
sinister 45
sip 33
skeletal 15
slab 171
slate 75
smallpox 81
snore 27
sob 63
sober 63
socialize 51
sodium 165
solemn 135
solidarity 135
soothe 9
soundly 27
sparse 39
speck 63
spit 159
splendid 87
sprint 159
spur 105
staple 153
statute 153
sterile 93
stimulate 105
stool 75
stranded 9
strap 21
stray 87
streak 183
strife 45
stun 57
stunt 159
subject 99
subscribe 147
subsist 147
substantial 87
superintendent 27
suppress 51
surplus 39
susceptible 57
suspend 147
swarm 123
synthesis 147

T

tackle 129
tact 135
tangle 21
tariff 177
tenacious 105
terrace 171
terrestrial 15
testament 75
testify 99
texture 123
theorize 39
therapeutic 45
thermometer 177
tickle 123
tilt 177
timber 75
tolerant 159
torch 87
tract 87
tram 51
trance 129
transmit 81
tumult 99
turf 171
tyranny 165
tyrant 165

U

underestimate 99
undermine 135
unrest 69
unsettle 51
upbringing 63
upgrade 93
uproar 99
utensil 117

V

valve 75
vampire 159
vanity 21
verge 33
verify 39
veteran 153
viable 93
vibrant 123
vice versa 177
vicious 15
vie 21
vigil 87
vigorous 39
villain 153
vine 153
vinegar 165
vivacious 111
volatile 9
voluntary 93
vow 81
vulgar 21

W

warp 51
wary 33
waver 33
wavy 141
weary 87
whereabouts 177
winding 111

Y

yawn 159

Z

zip 111